

THE UNIVERSITY
OF ILLINOIS
LIBRARY

G57
SP41b3

COMMERCE
READING
ROOM

BOOK-KEEPING AND ACCOUNTS.

BY THE SAME AUTHORS.

By SPICER and PEGLER.

PRACTICAL AUDITING.
AUDIT PROGRAMMES. (Third Edition.)
PRACTICAL BOOK-KEEPING AND COMMERCIAL KNOWLEDGE.
INCOME TAX IN RELATION TO ACCOUNTS. (Third Edition.)
INCOME TAX PROBLEMS.
KEY TO INCOME TAX PROBLEMS.
EXAMINATION NOTE BOOK FOR ACCOUNTANT STUDENTS. (Second Edition.)
UNDERWRITERS' ACCOUNTS. (Second Edition.)
TABLE A: A COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS. (Second Edition.)
THE MOTOR ACCOUNT BOOK AND REGISTER.
DE MORTUIS NIL NISI BONA.

By ERNEST EVAN SPICER, F.C.A.

AN OUTLINE OF THE MONEY MARKET.
THE ACCOUNTS OF AN EXECUTOR. (Third Edition.)
INTERNAL CHECK IN RELATION TO A MANUFACTURER'S BUSINESS. (Second Edition.)
RESERVES, ANNUITIES AND SINKING FUNDS. (Second Edition.)
INCOME TAX CLAIMS AND APPEALS. (Second Edition.)
A SUMMARY OF THE INCOME TAX PROVISIONS OF THE FINANCE (1909-10) ACT, 1910. (Second Edition.)
INCOME AND SUPER TAX, AND ITS LEGAL EVASION.
DISSOLUTION, AMALGAMATION AND RE-CONSTRUCTION ACCOUNTS.
DIVISIBLE PROFITS AND DIVIDENDS.
THE EXPORTATION OF BRITISH CAPITAL.

By ERNEST C. PEGLER, F.C.A.

SOME NOTABLE FRAUDS IN ACCOUNTS. (Second Edition.)
AN AUDIT OF TRUST ACCOUNTS.
STOCK EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS.
COMPARATIVE AND INTERIM ACCOUNTS.
THE PRINCIPLES OF AUDITING.

By RANKING, SPICER and PEGLER.

EXECUTORSHIP LAW AND ACCOUNTS. (Third Edition.)
MERCANTILE LAW.
PARTNERSHIP LAW.
ARBITRATION AND AWARDS.
THE BANKRUPTCY AND DEEDS OF ARRANGEMENT ACT, 1913.

By RANKING and SPICER.

A PRIMER OF COMPANY LAW.

BOOK - KEEPING AND ACCOUNTS.

BY

ERNEST EVAN SPICER, F.C.A.,

AND

ERNEST C. PEGLER, F.C.A.,

of the Firm of SPICER & PEGLER, Chartered Accountants, 60, Watling Street, E.C

THIRD EDITION.

15s. 6d. NET.

LONDON :

H. FOULKS LYNCH & CO., 9, FENCHURCH STREET, E.C.

—
1914.

[All rights reserved.]

PRINTED BY
WATERLOW BROS. & LAYTON, LIMITED,
24 & 25, BIRCHIN LANE, LONDON, E.C.

657
Sp41b3

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION.

THE demand for this Work has continued to be very gratifying, the Second Edition of over 3,000 copies having been exhausted in three years.

The present Edition has been thoroughly revised and brought completely up to date, and the forms of Railway Companies Accounts, prescribed under the Railway Companies (Accounts and Returns) Act, 1911, included. The Regulations of the Companies Act, 1913, affecting Private Companies, have also been dealt with.

A considerable amount of new material has been incorporated in the form of additional illustrations of points of importance, and in particular a complete form of the Directors' Report for the Statutory Meeting under § 65 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, has been provided.

Our thanks are due to numerous correspondents for pointing out minor errors or omissions in previous Editions.

ERNEST EVAN SPICER.

ERNEST C. PEGLER.

60, WATLING STREET,

LONDON, E.C.,

January, 1914.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY.

	PAGE
§ 1. The Theory of Double Entry ...	2
2. The Theory of Single Entry ...	3
3. The Advantages of Double Entry over Single Entry ...	3
4. The various kinds of Ledger Accounts ...	4
(a) Personal Accounts ...	4
(b) Impersonal Accounts ...	4
(c) Nominal Accounts ...	4
(d) Real Accounts ...	4
5. The Ascertainment of Profits under Single Entry ...	5
6. The Conversion of a set of books from Single Entry to Double Entry at a given date...	7
7. The Conversion of Single Entry to Double Entry from one period to another ...	7
(a) By Analysis ...	7
(b) By Total Accounts ...	14
8. The Distinction between Trading, Profit and Loss, and Appropriation Accounts ...	16
9. The Distinction between a Receipts and Payments Account and an Income and Expenditure Account ...	18
10. The various classes of Assets ...	21
(a) Fixed Assets ...	21
(b) Floating Assets...	21
(c) Wasting Assets ...	21
(d) Fictitious Assets ...	21
11. Form of Balance Sheet ...	21
12. The Distinction between Capital and Revenue ...	22
13. The Accounts of a Sole Trader ...	22

CHAPTER II.

CASH BOOKS, &c.

	PAGE
§ 1. Form of Cash Book for Mixed Cash and Bank Transactions...	29
2. Form of Cash Book when all Receipts are banked, and all Payments made by Cheque	30
3. Discounts	31
(a) Trade Discount...	31
(b) Cash Discount	31
4. Bank Reconciliation Statement	31
5. Petty Cash Book	32
6. The Imprest System	33

CHAPTER III.

THE JOURNAL.

§ 1. The Use of the Journal	36
2. The Form of Journal Entries	36
3. Day Books	38
4. Columnar Journals	39
5. The Rectification of Errors through the Journal	40

CHAPTER IV.

DEPRECIATION, RESERVES, SINKING FUNDS, &c.

§ 1. Definition of Depreciation, and the considerations necessary to determine its rate	43
2. The necessity of providing for Depreciation	44
3. The principal methods of providing for Depreciation	44
(a) The Fixed Instalment System	44
(b) The Reducing Instalment System	46
(c) The Annuity System	47
(d) The Depreciation Fund System	48
(e) The Insurance Policy System	50
(f) Revaluation	51

CHAPTER IV. (*continued*).DEPRECIATION, RESERVES, SINKING FUNDS, &c. (*continued*).

	PAGE
§ 4. Treatment of Repairs, Renewals and Replacements	51
5. Definition of Reserve and Reserve Fund	53
6. Reserves for Bad Debts	54
(<i>a</i>) By reserving on each Doubtful Debt	54
(<i>b</i>) By the Percentage System	54
7. Reserves for Discounts	55
8. The Operation of Sinking Funds for the Repayment of Loans ...	55
9. The Operation of Insurance Funds in Steamship Companies' Accounts	58
10. Secret Reserves	59
11. Outstanding Liabilities	60
12. Payments in Advance	62
13. Suspense Accounts	63

CHAPTER V.

GOODS ON SALE OR RETURN, CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNTS, &c.

§ 1. Treatment of Goods on Sale or Return... ..	65
(<i>a</i>) Where the goods sent out on Sale or Return are compara- tively small in number	65
(<i>b</i>) Where the Goods sent out on Sale or Return are consider- able in number	66
(<i>c</i>) Where the goods sent out on Sale or Return are consider- able in number and of considerable value	67
2. Distinction between Consignments and Goods sent out on Sale or Return	69
3. Account Sales	69
4. Entries in the Consignor's Books	70
5. Entries in the Consignee's Books	71
6. Account Current	73
7. Average Date	74
8. Joint Consignment Accounts	75
9. Accounts with Agents	77

CHAPTER VI.

BILLS OF EXCHANGE, PROMISSORY NOTES, &c.

§ 1. Definitions of:—	PAGE
(a) Bills of Exchange	80
(b) Promissory Notes	80
(c) Negotiable Instruments	81
(d) Days of Grace	81
2. Stamp Duties on Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes	82
3. Specimen Forms of Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes	82
4. Forms of Bill Books	86
(a) Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Books	86
(b) Bills Receivable and Payable Ledgers	88
(c) Bill Diary	90
5. Accommodation Bills	90
6. Dishonoured Bills, Retired Bills, Short Bills, &c.	95
(a) Dishonoured Bills	95
(b) Retired Bills	96
(c) Short Bills	96
(d) Discounted Bills	97
(e) Documentary Bills	97
(f) Rebated Bills	98

CHAPTER VII.

PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS.

§ 1. Partnership Deeds and their Relation to the Accounts	101
(a) Clauses Relating to Accounts in Partnership Deeds	101
(b) Rules Relating to Partnership Accounts in the absence of Agreement	103
2. The usual Adjustments necessary in Partnership Accounts	103
(a) Interest on Capital	103
(b) Interest on Drawings	104
(c) Partners' Salaries	104

CHAPTER VII. (*continued*).PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS (*continued*).

	PAGE
§ 3. Partners' Fixed Capital Accounts, Current Accounts and Loan Accounts	107
(a) Partners' Fixed Capitals and Current Accounts	107
(b) Partners' Loan Accounts	107
4. The Adjustment of Partnership Accounts under Single Entry ..	109
5. Goodwill in Partnership Accounts	112
(a) Definition of Goodwill	112
(b) Methods of treating Goodwill in the case of an Incoming Partner	112
(c) Goodwill affecting Outgoing Partners	116
(d) Life Assurance Policies to provide for part-payment of Goodwill	116
(e) Goodwill on the sale of a Partnership Business to a Company	118
(f) Treatment of the Goodwill Account in the books of a Partnership	118
6. Outgoing Partners	119
(a) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., by Instalments	119
(b) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's share of Capital, &c., with interest from date of the realisation of assets ...	120
(c) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., by way of an Annuity	122
7. Sleeping, Quasi, and Limited Partners	123
8. Dissolution of Partnerships	124
(a) The application of section 44 of the Partnership Act, 1890	124
(b) Formula for closing the Partnership books on Dissolution	126
(1) Where there is a profit on the realization of the assets	127
(2) Where liabilities are paid in full but there is a loss on the realization of the assets	128
(3) Where there is a loss on the realization of the assets, placing one Partner's Capital Account in debit temporarily, obliging him to bring in cash to that extent	129

CHAPTER VII. (*continued*).PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS (*continued*).

	PAGE
(4) Where there is a loss on the realization of the assets placing one Partner's Capital Account permanently in debit, he being insolvent, and the rule in <i>Garner v. Murray</i> being applied	130
(c) Dissolution of Partnership on agreed terms	132
(d) Dissolution of Partnership by Death or Bankruptcy	134
(e) The Conversion of a Private Firm into a Limited Company	136
§ 9. Joint Venture Accounts	140
(a) Where a separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture... ..	140
(b) Where no separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture	142
10. Miscellaneous Problems in Partnership Accounts	144
(a) Proportion of one Partner's Share borne personally by another	144
(b) Readjustment of Partners' Shares over a period of years..	145
(c) Readjustment in Accounts where Interest on Capital has been omitted	147
(d) Share of one Partner guaranteed at a fixed minimum ...	147

CHAPTER VIII.

COMPANY ACCOUNTS.

§ 1. The Distinction between Partnerships and Limited Liability Companies	151
2. Private Companies	153
3. The Memorandum and Articles of Association	154
(a) The Memorandum	154
(b) The Articles	155

CHAPTER VIII. (*continued*).COMPANY ACCOUNTS (*continued*).

	PAGE
§ 4. The Statutory Books and Returns	156
(a) Register of Members	156
(b) Register of Mortgages	156
(c) Annual List of Members and Summary Book	157
(d) Minute Book	160
(e) Register of Directors and Managers	160
(f) The Directors' Report for the Statutory Meeting	161
5. The Various Classes of Share Capital	164
(a) Preference Shares	164
(b) Ordinary Shares	164
(c) Founders' Shares or Deferred Shares	165
(d) The Distinction between Stock and Shares	165
6. The Application and Allotment of Shares	165
(a) Application Letters	165
(b) Application and Allotment Book	167
(c) Letters of Allotment and Regret	167
(d) Vendors' and Signatories' Shares	169
(e) Calls	169
(f) Return of Allotments	170
(g) Journal entries relating to the issue of Shares	170
(h) Shares issued at a Premium	171
7. The Share Books	172
(a) Share Ledger	172
(b) Register of Transfers	174
(c) Share Warrant Register	175
8. Preliminary and Formation Expenses	175
(a) Underwriting Commission	175
(b) Commission on placing Shares	176
9. Mortgages and Debentures	177
(a) Definition of Mortgage	177
(b) Definition of Debenture	178
(c) Debentures issued at a premium	179
(d) Debentures issued at a discount	179
(e) Debentures repayable at a premium	180
(f) Redemption of Debentures	181
(g) Debentures issued as collateral security for a Loan	181

CHAPTER VIII. (*continued*).COMPANY ACCOUNTS (*continued*).

	PAGE
§ 10. The Purchase of a Private Business by a Limited Company ...	182
(a) Entries in the Books	183
(b) Apportionment of Profit prior to Incorporation ...	188
11. Forfeited Shares	189
12. Bonus Shares	191
(a) Issue of Bonus Shares at par	191
(b) Issue of Bonus Shares at a premium	191
(c) Application of Bonus to payment of Calls	192
13. Payment of Interest out of Capital	193
14. The Preparation of a Company's Books and Accounts for Audit ...	194
15. The Balance Sheet and Accounts of a Company	195
(a) Form of the Accounts	195
(b) Contingent Liabilities	199
(c) Arrears of Cumulative Preference Share Dividend ...	199
16. The Amalgamation of Companies	200
17. The Absorption of one Limited Company by another	201
(a) Journal entries for Closing the Vendor Company's Books	201
(b) Journal entries for Opening Purchasing Company's Books	202
(c) Shares issued at premium valuation	203
(d) Treatment of Revenue Balances	204
(e) Treatment where Shares are partly called up	208
18. Reduction of Capital	209
(a) Writing off Capital not represented by available Assets ...	209
(b) Return of Capital out of Profits	211
(c) Other modes of Reduction	213
19. Reconstructions	213

CHAPTER IX.

TOTAL ACCOUNTS AND SECTIONAL BALANCING.

§ 1. Total Accounts	219
(a) Total Debtors' Account	219
(b) Total Creditors' Account	222
(c) Transfer Journal	223
(d) Columnar Books	225
2. Sectional Balancing or Self-balancing Ledgers	226
3. Errors in Balancing	229

CHAPTER X.

DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS, BRANCH ACCOUNTS, AND
FOREIGN EXCHANGE.

	PAGE
§ 1. Departmental Accounts	232
2. Branch Accounts	235
3. Wholesale Branches	235
4. Retail Branches	237
(a) Goods charged to Branches at selling price...	237
(b) Goods charged to Branches at cost price ...	241
(c) Goods charged out at cost, plus percentage...	243
5. Branches where the whole of the detail is recorded in the Branch	
Books	245
6. Foreign Exchange... ..	256
7. Foreign Branches	257
(a) Branches working on a fixed rate of exchange ...	257
(b) Branches working on a fluctuating rate of exchange ...	259
8. Foreign Mine Accounts	263

CHAPTER XI.

COST ACCOUNTS.

§ 1. The Principle of Cost Accounts	267
2. Contract Cost Accounts	268
(a) The Purchase Journal... ..	269
(b) Materials for Contract	269
(c) Materials for Store	270
(d) Materials returned from Contracts	270
(e) Plant used on Contracts	271
(f) Carriage of Materials	271
(g) Wages	271
(h) Establishment Charges	272
(1) Works Expenses	272
(2) Administration Expenses	272
(i) The Contract Ledger	273
(j) Taking Profit on Uncompleted Contracts	275
(k) The Reconciliation of the Cost Accounts with the Financial	
Books	279

CHAPTER XI. (*continued*).COST ACCOUNTS (*continued*).

	PAGE
§ 3. Output Cost Accounts	282
(<i>a</i>) Cost Sheets	282
(<i>b</i>) Production Accounts	284
(<i>c</i>) Working Accounts	286
4. Factory Cost Accounts	289
(<i>a</i>) Departmental Cost Accounts	289
(<i>b</i>) Multiple Cost Accounts	290
(<i>c</i>) Process Cost Accounts	290
5. Working Cost Accounts	291
6. Percentages in Trading Accounts	292

CHAPTER XII.

THE DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM.

§ 1. Definition of the Double Account System	296
2. Treatment of Capital Losses	297
3. Renewal and Depreciation Funds	297
4. Conversion of Capital	299
5. The Statutory Forms of Railway Companies' Accounts	301
6. The Statutory Forms of Gas Companies' Accounts	308
7. The Statutory Forms of Electric Light Companies' Accounts	310

CHAPTER XIII.

BANKRUPTCY, LIQUIDATION, AND RECEIVERSHIP ACCOUNTS.

§ 1. The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy	318
(<i>a</i>) Unsecured Creditors	319
(<i>b</i>) Creditors fully secured	319
(<i>c</i>) Creditors partly secured	319
(<i>d</i>) Liabilities on Bills Discounted other than Debtor's own Acceptances for value	320

CHAPTER XIII. (*continued*).BANKRUPTCY, LIQUIDATION, AND RECEIVERSHIP ACCOUNTS
(*continued*).

	PAGE
(e) Creditors for Rent, &c., recoverable by distress, and Preferential Creditors	321
(f) Valuation of Assets	321
(g) Book Debts	321
(h) The Deficiency Account	322
(i) Bankruptcy of Firms	323
§ 2. The Accounts of a Trustee in Bankruptcy	326
3. Deeds of Arrangement	327
4. The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs of a Company in Compulsory Liquidation	329
5. The Accounts of a Liquidator in Compulsory Liquidation	333
6. The Accounts of a Liquidator in Voluntary Liquidation	334
7. Return to Shareholders	336
8. The Accounts of a Receiver	337

CHAPTER XIV.

MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS.

§ 1. Hire-Purchase Agreements and Agreements to pay by Instalments	340
(a) Hire-Purchase Agreements	340
(b) Agreements to pay by Instalments	343
2. Mine Rents and Royalties	345
(a) Where the Minimum Rent exceeds the Royalty Rent	346
(b) Where the Royalty Rent exceeds the Minimum Rent	346
3. Fire Claims for Stock	348
4. Claims for Compensation	349
5. Treatment of Life Policy taken over in satisfaction of debt due	350
6. Treatment of Loose Plant and Tools on Revaluation	352
7. Voyage Accounts	355
8. Marine Insurance Accounts	357
9. Ledger Accounts for Investments	359

CHAPTER XIV. (*continued*).MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS (*continued*).

	PAGE
§ 10. Tabular Ledgers	361
(a) Purchase Day Book and Ledger combined	361
(b) Rental Ledger	363
(c) Electric Light, Gas or Water Rental Ledger	363
(d) Hotel Visitors' Ledger	364
(e) Plant Ledger	366
11. Loose-leaf and Card Ledgers	366
12. Stock Exchange Transactions	368
13. Outstanding Costs in the business of a Professional Man	371
14. Assurance Companies Accounts	373
15. Accounts of Charitable Institutions	380
(a) Specified forms of Accounts	380
(b) Columnar Cash Book	384
(c) Subscription Register	384
(d) Purchase Journal	385
16. Treatment of Share Profits	386

CHAPTER XV.

INTERNAL CHECKS.

§ 1. The Necessity of a sound System of Internal Check	388
2. Definition of Internal Check	388
3. Classification of Internal Checks	389
(a) Physical Checks	389
(b) Mechanical Checks	389
(c) Theoretical or Intellectual Checks	390
4. Cash... ..	391
(a) General Cash Receipts	391
(b) Travellers' Remittances	392
(c) General Cash Payments	394
(d) Authority for Payments, trade or otherwise	396

CHAPTER XV. (*continued*).INTERNAL CHECKS (*continued*).

	PAGE
(e) Wages	396
(1) Time-Workers	397
(2) Piece-Workers	397
(3) Time-Workers' Wages Sheets	398
(4) Piece-Workers' Wages Sheets	398
(5) Payment of Wages	399
(f) Petty Cash	399
§ 5. The Ledgers	400
(a) General Index to Ledgers	400
(b) Distinguishing Labels	401
(c) The Sub-division of Ledgers	401
(d) Loose-leaf Ledgers	402
(e) Sectional Balancing	403
(f) Statements	403
(g) Press Cuttings Index	403
(h) Bad Debts	404
6. Purchases	404
7. Purchase Returns	405
8. Sales	406
9. Sales Returns	407
10. Packages and Empties	407
(a) Packages charged up	408
(b) Packages not charged up	409
11. Cost Accounts	410
12. Stock	410
(a) Valuation	410
(1) Raw Materials	411
(2) Goods in course of manufacture	411
(3) Finished Goods	411
(b) Method of Stock-taking	412

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER I.

SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY.

§ 1.—THE THEORY OF DOUBLE ENTRY.

2.—THE THEORY OF SINGLE ENTRY.

3.—THE ADVANTAGES OF DOUBLE ENTRY OVER SINGLE ENTRY.

4.—THE VARIOUS KINDS OF LEDGER ACCOUNTS.

(a) Personal Accounts.

(b) Impersonal Accounts.

(c) Nominal Accounts.

(d) Real Accounts.

5.—THE ASCERTAINMENT OF PROFITS UNDER SINGLE ENTRY.

6.—THE CONVERSION OF A SET OF BOOKS FROM SINGLE ENTRY TO DOUBLE ENTRY AT A GIVEN DATE.

7.—THE CONVERSION OF SINGLE ENTRY TO DOUBLE ENTRY FROM ONE PERIOD TO ANOTHER.

(a) By Analysis.

(b) By Total Accounts.

8.—THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN TRADING, PROFIT AND LOSS, AND APPROPRIATION ACCOUNTS.

9.—THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN A RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNT AND AN INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT.

10.—THE VARIOUS CLASSES OF ASSETS.

(a) Fixed Assets.

(b) Floating Assets.

(c) Wasting Assets.

(d) Fictitious Assets.

11.—FORM OF BALANCE SHEET.

12.—THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN CAPITAL AND REVENUE.

13.—THE ACCOUNTS OF A SOLE TRADER.

CHAPTER I.

SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY.

§ 1.—The Theory of Double Entry.

The theory of Double Entry is *not* that for every debit there must be a credit, and *vice versâ*. That is a result of the system. Double Entry is that system of Book-keeping which takes advantage of the fact that every transaction that can be recorded in terms of account has two aspects: the one involving the receiving of a benefit by one account or accounts, and the other the yielding of that benefit by another account or accounts. The account that receives the benefit is debited, the account that yields the benefit credited; and so one gets as a result a debit for every credit.

It should be borne in mind that the yielding and receiving both take place in the same set of books, and refer to accounts and not to persons. For example: if A. B. & Co. receive cash from their debtor Jones, in A. B. & Co.'s books, Cash Account is debited, because it receives the benefit of the transaction, and Jones' Account is credited, because that account yields the benefit. If A. B. & Co. desire to write off depreciation, Depreciation Account will be debited and the Asset Account credited, and the same rule can be applied to every transaction. A complete grasp of the essential principles that underlie Double Entry is absolutely necessary before any real progress can be made in the study of the Science of Accounts.

As a result of the fact that every transaction is recorded from both points of view under Double Entry, a complete record of the impersonal aspects of all the transactions during a given period is obtained in addition to a record of the personal aspects.

The Double Entry system of Book-keeping is applicable to all classes of businesses, since every transaction involving money or money's worth possesses two aspects, and this system is the only one under which both can be properly recorded.

§ 2.—The Theory of Single Entry.

Single Entry only recognises the personal aspect of transactions, and as a result those not possessing such aspect are left entirely unrecorded ; consequently, the only books kept under strict Single Entry are personal ledgers. In practice, however, one usually finds a Cash Book in addition, though it is often merely a memorandum book.

§ 3.—The advantages of Double Entry over Single Entry.

As the result of the fact that a debit is made for every credit, and that the impersonal aspects of all transactions are recorded under Double Entry, that system affords the following advantages over Single Entry :—

(1) If all postings are complete at any given date, a list of the balances standing on the books can be drawn out. This list is called a *Trial Balance*. Since every debit should have a credit, the total of the debit balances should equal the total of the credit balances, and if this is so, the books may be taken to be arithmetically correct, apart from the possibility of compensating errors.

(2) Since the impersonal aspects of all transactions are recorded, those representing profit or loss during a given period can be collected together in a classified form, the excess of the total credits over the total debits representing the profit for the period, or the excess of the total debits over the total credits representing the loss. Consequently, it can be seen at a glance in what manner the profit or loss has been arrived at, and the various items in the account, which is usually called the Profit and Loss Account, can be compared with those of previous periods, so that the cause of the rise or the fall in profits can be ascertained.

(3) The arithmetical correctness of the balance of the Profit and Loss Account can be proved, apart from compensating errors, by the preparation of a *Balance Sheet*. This may be defined as a classified summary of the balances remaining open in a set of books after the collection of the nominal balances into one account, and including the balance of that account, so arranged, as to show the assets upon the

right-hand side, and the liabilities upon the left. The usual definition of a Balance Sheet as a statement of liabilities and assets is incomplete, as in many cases items are included on each side which cannot be described either as liabilities or assets.

(4) Owing to the fact that the books are subject to arithmetical test, the risk of fraud or its non-discovery is considerably lessened.

None of the above results can be obtained under Single Entry.

It must be pointed out, however, that a trial balance will not disclose compensating errors, and errors of omission and principle.

§ 4.—The various kinds of Ledger Accounts.

Ledger accounts may be divided into four classes—

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| (a) Personal. | (c) Nominal. |
| (b) Impersonal. | (d) Real. |

(a) Personal Accounts.

These Accounts record dealings with persons.

(b) Impersonal Accounts.

These record the aspect of transactions as they affect the business, and not as they affect persons.

(c) Nominal Accounts.

These are Impersonal Accounts relating to profit or loss, *e.g.* Sales, Salaries, Discounts.

(d) Real Accounts.

These are Impersonal Accounts relating to assets, *e.g.* Cash, Freehold Property, Plant and Machinery.

All debit balances may be said to represent in effect either assets, expenses or losses ; and all credit balances, liabilities, receipts or profits.

§ 5.—The ascertainment of Profits under Single Entry.

The *Capital* of an individual or a private firm is the term employed to signify the excess of assets over liabilities at a given date. It is obvious that if the capital at the close of a certain period, after the proper adjustment of withdrawals and additions, exceeds the capital at the commencement of that period, the excess will represent profit made during that period; and if there is a decrease, the decrease will represent loss. This is the principle upon which profit or loss is ascertained under Single Entry.

In order to ascertain the capital at any given date, a *Statement of Affairs* must be prepared. Schedules of debtors and creditors must be extracted from the personal ledgers, the creditors' balances being agreed with statements; the bank balance will be agreed with the pass book, and the cash-in-hand counted; stock will be taken; assets, such as Freehold Property and Plant, must be valued or estimated; and a schedule made of creditors for loans and of all creditors not appearing in the Bought Ledger, including outstanding expenses such as rent, &c., accrued to date. All known assets and liabilities being now obtained, the former will be set out on the credit side of the Statement of Affairs, and the latter on the debit, the difference—representing capital or deficiency, as the case may be—being inserted to close the account.

To ascertain profit during a given period, such a statement as the above must be drawn out at the commencement of the period, and a similar statement at the close. This will give the opening and closing capitals respectively. Assuming there have been no drawings or additions to capital in the meantime, the excess of the closing capital over the opening will represent the profit made during the period, the capital having increased to that extent. If the closing capital is less than the opening, the decrease will represent loss. Any drawings made during the period must be added to the closing capital, since had they not taken place the assets would have been greater to that extent; and any additions to capital during the period must be deducted.

ILLUSTRATION—

J. Jones drew out his last Statement of Affairs at 31st December, 1913, as follows:—

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS, 31st December, 1913.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Creditors	6,000	0	0	By Office Furniture	500	0	0
„ Bills Payable	500	0	0	„ Stock	2,000	0	0
„ Capital Account—being excess of assets over liabilities at this date	3,000	0	0	„ Debtors	4,500	0	0
				„ Bills Receivable	1,000	0	0
	£9,500	0	0	„ Cash	1,500	0	0
					£9,500	0	0

On 31st December, 1914, he finds his liabilities to be: Creditors £4,500, Bills Payable £700. And his assets: Office Furniture £450, Stock £1,500, Debtors £5,300, Bills Receivable £700, Cash £800. His drawings during that period have amounted to £450. What profit has he made?

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS, 31st December, 1914.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Creditors	4,500	0	0	By Office Furniture	450	0	0
„ Bills Payable	700	0	0	„ Stock	1,500	0	0
„ Capital Account—being excess of assets over liabilities at this date	3,550	0	0	„ Debtors	5,300	0	0
				„ Bills Receivable	700	0	0
	£8,750	0	0	„ Cash	800	0	0
					£8,750	0	0

	£	s.	d.
Capital 31st December, 1914	3,550	0	0
Add Drawings for the year	450	0	0
	4,000	0	0
Less Capital 31st December, 1913	3,000	0	0
Net Profit for year	£1,000	0	0

In cases where there are two or more partners, and it is required to prepare accounts by Single Entry, introducing interest on capital and similar adjustments, it is convenient to draw out a Statement of Profit, showing on the liability side the creditors, and the capitals at the commencement of the period, adding to, or deducting from, such capitals any additions thereto or deductions therefrom. On the credit side will be placed the assets, together with the drawings on current account of each partner. These drawings are added for the reason that they are in anticipation of profits, and had they not taken place the assets would have been correspondingly greater. The balance of the statement will then, if a credit, represent profit, and if a debit, loss. Such balance having been brought down, interest on capital and partners' salaries (if any)

should be charged, and the balance divided up between the partners in the proportions in which they are entitled to share profits or losses.

A Statement of Affairs should then be drawn up in exactly the same form as an ordinary Balance Sheet, showing the final balance to the credit of each partner after the adjustment of drawings, interest, salaries, profit, &c.

An illustration of this will be found in Chapter VII., Section 4, dealing with Partnership Accounts.

§ 6.—The conversion of a set of books from Single Entry to Double Entry at a given date.

A Statement of Affairs must be prepared, and journalised in the manner described in Section 7, and shown in the Illustration. The various assets and liabilities will be posted to their respective accounts in the Private Ledger, with the exception of the cash, which will be posted as a commencing balance in a new Cash Book provided with Discount columns. It will generally be found advisable to open new Bought and Sold Ledgers, the opening balances in which should agree with the totals shown in the Journal. Bought and Sold Day Books, Returns and Allowances Books, both Inwards and Outwards, and Bills Receivable and Payable Books should be opened.

Instructions should be given that no entries should be made in the Ledgers direct without having previously passed through a book of first entry. The system of accounts will then have been placed on a Double Entry basis.

§ 7.—The conversion of Single Entry to Double Entry from one period to another.

(a) By Analysis.

It has been shown that Single Entry Book-keeping only deals with Personal Accounts, and consequently to convert the system to Double

entry for a given period it is necessary to raise the Impersonal Accounts required by the latter system, and to transfer from Personal Accounts to Impersonal Accounts any items erroneously recorded in the former.

In practice it is generally found that where Single Entry is in use the books as a whole are in a state of confusion, and that no proper Statement of Affairs has ever been prepared. In such cases it is practically impossible to arrive at anything but an estimated result, and the first Balance Sheet prepared after the conversion to Double Entry is consequently not very satisfactory. But if the books have been kept properly by Single Entry, and proper Statements have been regularly prepared, it is quite possible to get highly satisfactory results, and further, to prove the profit as shown by the Statement of Affairs under Single Entry by the Profit and Loss Account prepared after the conversion of the books into Double Entry.

Presuming therefore that the books have been properly kept under the Single Entry system, and proper Statements have been regularly drawn up, the process to convert the books of John Jones from Single Entry into Double Entry, from 1st January, 1914, to 31st December, 1914, would be as follows:—

(1) The Statement of Affairs dated 31st December, 1913, would be produced, and a Journal entry made recording the items in this Statement, and these would be posted to a private Ledger which would now have to be opened. The Journal entry would be :

Sundries—Dr.

To Sundries—

debiting the various assets and crediting the liabilities and capital to separate accounts. This gives a starting point, and what remains to be done is to complete the Double Entry of the transactions of the particular year under review.

(2) Assuming no subsidiary books have been kept, the Sales Ledger will have to be carefully analysed, and from the analysis the impersonal aspect of the transactions recorded therein can be obtained in total.

On the Debit side of the Ledger will be found :—

- (a) The opening balances (which should agree with the figure shown in the opening Statement of Affairs).
- (b) Sales.
- (c) Special items, *e.g.* Dishonoured Bills, Transfers, &c.
- (d) Total.

On the Credit side of the Ledger will be found :—

- (a) Cash received from Debtors.
- (b) Discount Payable.
- (c) Returns Inwards and Allowances.
- (d) Bills Receivable.
- (e) Special items, *e.g.* Bad Debts, Transfers, &c.
- (f) Closing Balances.
- (g) Total.

The analysis sheets should be ruled to record the above particulars, and the cross-casting of the columns will not only test the analysis, but will also prove the casting of the Ledger itself.

These items will be posted to the credit and debit of the respective Impersonal Accounts, and also to a total Debtors' Account.

(3) The Bought Ledger will be analysed in a similar way.

From the Credit side of the Ledger will be obtained :—

- (a) The opening balances (which should agree with the figure shown in the opening Statement of Affairs).
- (b) Purchases.
- (c) Special items.
- (d) Total.

On the Debit side of the Ledger will be found :—

- (a) Cash paid to Creditors.
- (b) Discount Receivable.
- (c) Returns outwards and Allowances.

- (d) Bills Payable.
- (e) Special items (if any).
- (f) Closing balances.
- (g) Total:

These items will be posted to the debit and credit of their respective accounts, and also to a Total Creditors' Account.

(4) The Cash Book, assuming one has been kept, should be called over with the Bank Pass Book, and a reconciliation between the Cash and Bank Balances made.

(5) It will be found that many items appearing in the Cash Book have been left unposted, and many that have been posted have been posted to Personal instead of Impersonal Accounts. The former will be posted to Impersonal Accounts in the ordinary way, and the latter will be transferred to Impersonal Accounts. An illustration of this would be salaries posted to the debit of a Personal Account instead of to Salaries Account, or rent posted to the debit of the Landlord's Account instead of Rent Account. It will be found necessary to exercise considerable care in dealing with the cash postings to ensure accuracy of treatment.

Where the Cash Book is very incomplete, it will be found more convenient to analyse the receipts and payments, and raise a Total Cash Account, posting the various items therefrom to the respective accounts where necessary. Where no Cash Book has been kept, an analysis of the Bank Pass Book must be made in order to obtain the necessary particulars.

(6) The Double Entry will now be complete, and a Trial Balance can be got out to test the clerical accuracy of the work.

(7) The necessary reserves for bad debts, depreciation, accrued expenses, &c., and the adjustments for interest on capital, interest on loans and the like, should then be made.

(8) A final Trial Balance, Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet can then be prepared.

ILLUSTRATION—

Assuming the opening and closing figures to be the same as in the previous Illustration, the Journal entry embracing the opening Statement of Affairs would be as follows:—

JOURNAL.

1914. Jan. 1	Sundries—	To Sundries.	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
	Office Furniture	.. .. .	..	500	0	0			
	Stock .. .. .	.. .. .	..	2,000	0	0			
	Debtors .. .. .	.. .. .	..	4,500	0	0			
	Bills Receivable	.. .. .	..	1,000	0	0			
	Cash .. .. .	.. .. .	..	1,500	0	0			
		Creditors .. .. .	..				6,000	0	0
		Bills Payable .. .. .	..				500	0	0
		J. Jones: Capital Account	.. .. .				3,000	0	0
	Being Assets and Liabilities as at this date.								
				£9,500	0	0	£9,500	0	0

The following are the analyses of the personal and cash transactions:—

SALES LEDGER ANALYSIS—Debit side.

Opening Balances.			Sales.			Special Items.			Total.		
£4,500	0	0	£15,000	0	0	£50	0	0	£19,550	0	0

SALES LEDGER ANALYSIS—Credit side.

Cash.			Discount.			Returns, &c.			Bills Receivable.			Special Items.			Closing Balances.			Total.		
£11,000	0	0	£450	0	0	£200	0	0	£2,400	0	0	£200	0	0	£5,300	0	0	£19,550	0	0

SPECIAL ITEMS.

	£	s.	d.
Bad Debts	150	0	0
Transfer	50	0	0
	£200	0	0

BOUGHT LEDGER ANALYSIS—Credit side.

Opening Balances.			Purchases.			Total.		
£8,000	0	0	£10,000	0	0	£18,000	0	0

BOUGHT LEDGER ANALYSIS—Debit side.

Cash.			Discount.			Returns, &c.			Bills Payable.			Special Items.			Closing Balances.			Total.		
£8,500	0	0	£300	0	0	£150	0	0	£2,500	0	0	£50	0	0	£1,500	0	0	£18,000	0	0

Dr

TOTAL CASH ACCOUNT.

Cr.

				£	s.	d.					£	s.	d.
To Balance	..	..	..	1,500	0	0	By Creditors	..	..	..	8,500	0	0
„ Debtors	..	..	..	11,000	0	0	„ Bills Payable	..	..	..	2,300	0	0
„ Bills Receivable	..	..	..	2,650	0	0	„ Drawings	..	..	..	450	0	0
							„ Wages	..	..	..	2,050	0	0
							„ Rents, &c.	..	..	..	250	0	0
							„ Salaries	..	..	..	400	0	0
							„ Travelling	..	..	..	100	0	0
							„ Sundry Expenses	..	..	..	300	0	0
							„ Balance	..	..	..	800	0	0
				£15,150	0	0					£15,150	0	0
To Balance	..	..	..	£800	0	0							

Complete the necessary posting, and prepare Trial Balance, Trading, and Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet. The closing stock is £1,500, and depreciation is to be provided on Office Furniture at 10 % per annum.

Dr.

TOTAL DEBTORS' ACCOUNT.

Cr.

				£	s.	d.					£	s.	d.
To Balance..	..	..	..	4,500	0	0	By Cash	..	..	..	11,000	0	0
„ Sales	..	..	..	15,000	0	0	„ Discount	..	..	..	450	0	0
„ Dishonoured Bill	..	..	..	50	0	0	„ Returns and Allowances	..	..	..	200	0	0
							„ Bills Receivable	..	..	..	2,400	0	0
							„ Bad Debts	..	..	..	150	0	0
							„ Transfer to Bought Ledger	..	..	..	50	0	0
							„ Balance	..	..	..	5,300	0	0
				£19,550	0	0					£19,550	0	0
To Balance	..	..	..	£5,300	0	0							

Dr.

TOTAL CREDITORS' ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Cash	8,000	0	0	By Balance	6,000	0	0
„ Discount	300	0	0	„ Purchases	10,000	0	0
„ Returns and Allowances	150	0	0				
„ Bills Payable	2,500	0	0				
„ Transfer from Sales Ledger	50	0	0				
„ Balance.. .. .	4,500	0	0				
	<u>£16,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£16,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£4,500	0	0

Dr.

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Balance	1,000	0	0	By Cash	2,650	0	0
„ Debtors	2,400	0	0	„ Debtors, dishonoured bill	50	0	0
				„ Balance	700	0	0
	<u>£3,400</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£3,400</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
To Balance.. .. .	£700	0	0				

Dr.

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Cash	2,300	0	0	By Balance	500	0	0
„ Balance.. .. .	700	0	0	„ Creditors	2,500	0	0
	<u>£3,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£3,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£700	0	0

TRIAL BALANCE, 31st December, 1914.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Debtors	5,300	0	0				
Cash	800	0	0				
Bills Receivable	700	0	0				
Creditors					4,500	0	0
Bills Payable					700	0	0
Capital					3,000	0	0
Drawings	450	0	0				
Wages.. .. .	2,050	0	0				
Rent	250	0	0				
Salaries	400	0	0				
Travelling Expenses	100	0	0				
Sundry Expenses	300	0	0				
Discount Payable	450	0	0				
Returns Inwards	200	0	0				
Bad Debts	150	0	0				
Purchases	10,000	0	0				
Sales					15,000	0	0
Discount Receivable.. .. .					300	0	0
Returns Outwards					150	0	0
Stock at 1st Jan., 1914	2,000	0	0				
Office Furniture	500	0	0				
	<u>£23,650</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£23,650</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Closing Stock £1,500.

Depreciation on Office Furniture at 10 % per annum.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT for the year ending 31st December, 1914.

Dr.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Stock at 1st Jan., 1914 ..		2,000	0 0	By Sales	£15,000		
„ Purchases	£10,000			„ Less Returns	200		
„ Less Returns	150			„ Stock 31st Dec., 1914 ..		14,800	0 0
„ Wages		9,850	0 0			1,500	0 0
„ Gross Profit carried down..		2,050	0 0				
		2,400	0 0				
		£16,300	0 0			£16,300	0 0
To Rent, &c.		250	0 0	By Gross Profit brought down ..		2,400	0 0
„ Salaries		400	0 0	„ Discount Receivable		300	0 0
„ Travelling Expenses		100	0 0				
„ Sundry Expenses		300	0 0				
„ Discount Payable		450	0 0				
„ Bad Debts		150	0 0				
„ Depreciation		50	0 0				
„ Net Profit		1,000	0 0				
		£2,700	0 0			£2,700	0 0

Dr.

BALANCE SHEET, 31st December, 1914.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Creditors		4,500	0 0	By Office Furniture	£500		
„ Bills Payable		700	0 0	„ Less Depreciation	50		
„ Capital Account—Balance				„ Stock		450	0 0
1st Jan., 1914	£3,000			„ Debtors		1,500	0 0
„ Add Profit	1,000			„ Bills Receivable		5,300	0 0
„ Less Drawings	4,000			„ Cash at Bank		700	0 0
		450				800	0 0
		3,550	0 0				
		£8,750	0 0			£8,750	0 0

(b) By Total Accounts.

It is possible to raise a Trading and Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet from Single Entry Accounts by an analysis of the Cash Book only, since from the information which is given by Single Entry Books, and afforded by the analysis of the Cash Book, Total Accounts can be raised so that the figure of Sales and Purchases can be arrived at.

This system is not so correct as that which has been previously described, in which the whole of the books are analysed, since such items as Bad Debts, Allowances, &c., are not taken into consideration.

ILLUSTRATION—

T. Black, who keeps his books by single entry, instructs you to prepare his Balance Sheet as on 31st October, 1914, together with a Profit and Loss Account for the year ending on that date.

Upon analysing his Cash Book for that period you find the following, viz. :—

	£	s.	d.
Bank Balance, 1st November, 1913	400	0	0
Black's Drawings	750	0	0
Paid to Trade Creditors (including Bills Payable)	3,800	0	0
Wages	1,100	0	0
Salaries	500	0	0
Other Business Expenses	1,325	10	0
Received from Trade Debtors (including Bills Receivable)	5,364	10	0
Bank Balance, 31st October, 1914 (Overdraft)	150	0	0
Cash in hand do.	20	0	0
Receipts from Cash Sales	1,581	0	0

Black's Capital at 1st November, 1913, was £5,000.

Particulars of his other Assets and Liabilities are as follows, viz. :—

	1st Nov., 1913.			31st Oct., 1914.		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Stock on hand	1,930	0	0	2,500	0	0
Debtors	2,500	0	0	1,935	10	0
Creditors	2,200	0	0	700	0	0
Bills Receivable	500	0	0	700	0	0
Business Premises	2,000	0	0	2,000	0	0
Bills Payable	300	0	0			
Office Furniture	120	0	0	120	0	0

Reserve £150 for Doubtful Debts, and write off 5 per cent. depreciation on Business Premises and Office Furniture.

Dr.		CASH ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
	£ s. d.		£ s. d.		
To Balance	400 0 0	By Drawings	750 0 0		
„ Debtors and Bills Receivable	5,364 10 0	„ Creditors and Bills Payable	3,800 0 0		
„ Cash Sales	1,581 0 0	„ Wages	1,100 0 0		
„ Bank Overdraft	150 0 0	„ Salaries	500 0 0		
		„ Business Expenses	1,325 10 0		
		„ Cash in hand	20 0 0		
	<u>£7,495 10 0</u>		<u>£7,495 10 0</u>		
To Balance	£20 0 0	By Balance	£150 0 0		

Dr.		TOTAL DEBTORS AND BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
	£ s. d.		£ s. d.		
To Balance	3,000 0 0	By Cash	5,364 10 0		
„ Sales	5,000 0 0	„ Balance	2,635 10 0		
	<u>£8,000 0 0</u>		<u>£8,000 0 0</u>		
To Balance	£2,635 0 0				

Dr.		TOTAL CREDITORS AND BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
	£ s. d.		£ s. d.		
To Cash	3,800 0 0	By Balance	2,500 0 0		
„ Balance	700 0 0	„ Purchases	2,000 0 0		
	<u>£4,500 0 0</u>		<u>£4,500 0 0</u>		
		By Balance	£700 0 0		

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr.		FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31st OCTOBER, 1914.		Cr.	
		£	s. d.		
To Stock at 1st November, 1913..	..	1,980	0 0	By Cash Sales ..	£1,581 0 0
„ Purchases..	..	2,000	0 0	„ Credit Sales ..	5,000 0 0
„ Wages ..	..	1,100	0 0		6,581 0 0
„ Balance, being Gross Profit ..	..	4,001	0 0	„ Stock at 31st October, 1914 ..	2,500 0 0
		£9,081	0 0		£9,081 0 0
		£	s. d.		
To Salaries ..	..	500	0 0	By Gross Profit ..	4,001 0 0
„ Business Expenses ..	..	1,325	10 0		
„ Reserve for Doubtful Debts ..	..	150	0 0		
„ Depreciation on Business Premises ..	£100 0 0				
„ Depreciation on Office Furniture ..	6 0 0				
		106	0 0		
„ Net Profit ..	..	1,919	10 0		
		£4,001	0 0		£4,001 0 0

Dr.		BALANCE SHEET, 31st OCTOBER, 1914.		Cr.	
		£	s. d.		
To Sundry Creditors ..	700 0 0	850 0 0		By Business Premises ..	2,000 0 0
„ Bank Overdraft ..	150 0 0			„ Less Depreciation ..	100 0 0
„ Capital Account — Black—				„ Office Furniture ..	120 0 0
Balance at 1 Nov., 1913 ..	5,000 0 0			„ Less Depreciation ..	6 0 0
Add Profit ..	1,919 10 0				114 0 0
	6,919 10 0			„ Stock in hand ..	2,500 0 0
Less Drawings ..	750 0 0	6,169 10 0		„ Sundry Debtors ..	1,935 10 0
				„ Less Reserve for Doubtful Debts ..	150 0 0
					1,785 10 0
				„ Bills Receivable ..	700 0 0
					2,485 10 0
				„ Cash in hand ..	20 0 0
		£7,019 10 0			£7,019 10 0

§ 8.—Distinction between Trading, Profit and Loss, and Appropriation Accounts.

The *Trading Account* is in reality the name given to the first, the Profit and Loss Account that given to the second, and the Appropriation Account that given to the third sections respectively of the one general summary of the nominal accounts relating to profits or losses during a given period.

The balance of the Trading Account is the gross profit on trading, and represents the difference between the selling price and the prime cost of the goods sold after the adjustment of the opening and closing stocks. In order to keep the percentage of gross profit on turnover (or sales) constant as between one period and another for purposes of

comparison, it is usual to charge to Trading Account only those items of prime cost which vary directly with the turnover, such as manufacturing wages. Other items which are in effect prime cost, such as Rent of Factory, Repairs to Plant, &c., but which do not vary directly with the turnover, will in such cases be charged to the Profit and Loss Account.

The Trading Account is debited with the value of the Stock at the commencement of the period and with the Purchases; and in the case of a Manufacturing business, with the prime cost charges which vary with the output. It is then credited with the Sales and with the value of the Closing Stock taken upon a proper basis.

The question of bringing in the Closing Stock is important. If the account dealt with quantities only, the Stock on hand at commencement plus the purchases would exactly equal the sales plus stock on hand at the close; but generally the Trading Account deals with values only, and not with quantities, though strictly the quantities are presumed to balance in the manner just indicated.

It is important as regards any trading business to correctly ascertain the value of stock on hand at the date of balancing. Particulars of the stock should be taken in a systematic manner, and a value placed upon each item at cost or market price, whichever is lower; the various items after being so valued on the sheets will be cast, and the total figure arrived at will represent the stock value for the purposes of the account.

Where it is possible to deal with quantities this should be done, the Bought and Sold Day Books and Returns Books being ruled so that quantities of each particular class of goods dealt in can be recorded, separate books being utilised for each department. From the information so arrived at the record of the quantities of the particular class of goods dealt in can be utilised for purposes of verifying stock on hand as shown by the Trading Account, and to check a Quantity Stock Account which should be also kept.

Where Quantity Stock Accounts are kept these will be memorandum records showing the quantity of each kind of goods on hand at the commencement of a period and the further quantities received since on one

side of the account; while on the other side all goods of that kind going out will be recorded. The record enables the quantity of the particular stock on hand to be immediately ascertained, and if proper arrangements are made for keeping the account it acts as a continuous check on the warehouse in addition to a check on the Stock-taking.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is an example of the Trading Account of a Cotton Seed Department of a business:—

COTTON SEED TRADING ACCOUNT.

	Tons.	£	s.	d.		Tons.	£	s.	d.
To Stock on hand	15	116	5	0	By Sales	1,186	9,775	0	0
„ Purchases	1,200	9,600	0	0	„ Stock at close	65	536	5	0
„ Gross Profit.. ..		595	0	0					
	1,215	£10,311	5	0		1,215	£10,311	5	0

The *Profit and Loss Account* will be credited with the balance of gross profit brought from the Trading Account, together with other items of profit, such as Rents Receivable, Discounts Receivable, Profit on Sale of Investments, &c., and will be debited with the expenses of distribution and of carrying on the business generally, the final balance representing the net profit or loss for the period under review.

The *Appropriation Account* will be credited with the balance brought forward from the last account (if any), together with the net profit for the period. The final balance will be divided up according to the particular circumstances of each case.

It should be pointed out, however, that there is no definite rule as to the division between the Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts, and each case must be considered on its own merits. Consequently, the above remarks can only be regarded from a general point of view. Sometimes a Manufacturing Account or Working Account is utilised either in substitution for, or in addition to, a Trading Account.

§ 9.—Distinction between a Receipts and Payments Account and an Income and Expenditure Account.

A *Receipts and Payments Account* is a classified summary of the cash transactions during a given period.

An *Income and Expenditure Account* is in effect the Revenue Account of an individual or a non-trading concern. It is a classified summary of the transactions relating to profit or loss during a given period.

A Receipts and Payments Account, therefore, being only a statement of cash, will commence with the opening and close with the closing cash balance, and will include all receipts and payments, whether relating to the period under review or not, and whether of a capital or revenue nature, provided they are actually received or paid during the period in question.

The Income and Expenditure Account, however, will only include revenue items relating to the actual period it covers, irrespective of whether the same are received or paid within the period or not, and will consequently exclude all items relating to previous or subsequent periods, and all capital items.

In a Receipts and Payments Account it is usual to show the receipts on the debit side and the payments on the credit side, as in the case of a Cash Book. In an Income and Expenditure Account the Profit and Loss form is more generally used, the income appearing on the credit and the expenditure on the debit side of the account.

The balance of a Receipts and Payments Account will represent either the cash in hand or overdrawn. The balance of an Income and Expenditure Account will represent either the excess of income over expenditure for the period, or *vice versa*.

It cannot be too strongly pointed out that a Receipts and Payments Account is not a proper substitute for either an Income and Expenditure Account or any other form of Revenue Account, since the balance need not in any way indicate the result of the nominal transactions for the period.

In the case of a trading concern, although there may be a large cash balance at the end of the period, this may be due to capital receipts, or to fluctuations in debtors, creditors, stock, &c., and in effect a loss may have been sustained without the same being in any way disclosed.

Further items that have an important bearing on the result of the trading, such as reserves for bad debts, depreciation, &c., are wholly ignored.

Special kinds of Receipts and Payments Accounts are frequently prepared, as for example a Capital Receipts and Payments Account dealing with capital items only, or an Income Receipts and Payments Account dealing with revenue items only.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the Receipts and Payments Account for the Midland Bowling Club for the year ending 31st December, 1914 :—

RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1914.

RECEIPTS.				PAYMENTS.			

§ 10.—The various classes of Assets.

There are four classes of Assets, known respectively as Fixed, Floating, Wasting and Fictitious.

(a) *Fixed Assets* are those of a permanent nature, by means of which the business is carried on, and which are held for the purpose of earning income, and not for the purpose of sale, *e.g.* Land, Buildings, Plant, Leases, Goodwill.

(b) *Floating Assets* are those in which the business deals, and which are acquired for the purpose of sale, and the subsequent stages of the conversion of the same into cash, *e.g.* Stock, Book Debts, Cash.

(c) *Wasting Assets* are those of a fixed nature which are gradually consumed or exhausted in the process of earning income, *e.g.* a Mine, a Cemetery.

(d) *Fictitious Assets* is a term applied to items of expenditure not represented by present value. They may represent absolute losses not written off, but carried forward in the Balance Sheet, or expenditure of a deferred revenue nature the benefit of which is presumed to extend over a period of years. An example of the first is a debit balance of Profit and Loss, and of the second Preliminary Expenses.

§ 11.—Form of Balance Sheet.

In drawing up a Balance Sheet care should be taken to see that the assets are properly grouped under their respective classes, and sufficiently sub-divided to afford an outside observer a clear view of the state of affairs, which shall not misrepresent the true position of the concern. It is usual to start with the fixed assets, and follow on with the floating assets in their natural order of realization, though in some cases, particularly in banks, the reverse order is adopted.

Care should be exercised to separate tangible from intangible assets on the Balance Sheet. In this connection it should be noted that intangible assets are not necessarily fictitious, *e.g.* Goodwill, although intangible, is a fixed asset, assuming it is represented by actual value.

§ 12.—The distinction between Capital and Revenue.

Capital expenditure is that incurred for the purpose of creating or acquiring Fixed Assets by means of which to carry on the business, or incurred for the purpose of increasing the earning capacity of the business.

Revenue expenditure is that incurred for the purpose of carrying on the business and maintaining the Fixed Assets in a state of working efficiency.

Further consideration of the distinction between Capital and Revenue in connection with Renewals and Replacements will be found in Chapter IV.

§ 13.—The Accounts of a Sole Trader.

In preparing the Accounts of a Sole Trader the ascertained profit will be credited to the proprietor of the business. Frequently this will be carried to the Capital Account of the proprietor, but it is preferable to keep the Capital Account fixed, and deal with profits and drawings through a separate Current Account.

ILLUSTRATION—

Henry Williams commenced business on 1st February, 1914, with Cash at Bank £500. The following transactions took place during the month:—

1914.							£	s.	d.
Feb.	1.	Bought Goods from W. Martin	...	...	...	...	250	0	0
		Purchased Warehouse Fittings	...	...	...	...	40	0	0
	2.	Sold Goods to T. Crown	...	...	...	...	80	0	0
		Drew Cheque for Petty Cash	...	...	...	...	20	0	0
	3.	Paid W. Martin on Account	...	...	...	...	150	0	0
	4.	Sold Goods to W. Wilson	...	...	...	...	100	0	0
	5.	Received Cheque from T. Crown	...	...	...	...	77	0	0
		Allowed him Discount	...	...	...	...	3	0	0
	6.	Paid Wages	...	...	...	...	4	0	0

SOLD DAY BOOK.

Date.	Particulars.	Fo.	Amount.
1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 2	T. Crown	14	80 0 0
" 4	W. Wilson	15	100 0 0
" 9	L. Robinson	16	170 0 0
" 16	W. Wilson	15	180 0 0
" 22	T. Crown	14	130 0 0
			<u>£660 0 0</u>
			Fo. 3

BOUGHT DAY BOOK.

Date.	Particulars.	Fo.	Amount.
1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 1	W. Martin	17	250 0 0
" 10	F. Pearson	18	130 0 0
" 14	W. Martin	17	150 0 0
" 18	H. Wood	19	75 0 0
" 23	W. Martin	17	240 0 0
			<u>£845 0 0</u>
			Fo. 4

LEDGER.

Dr.	Fo. 1.	CAPITAL ACCOUNT.	Cr.
		1914. Feb. 1 By Cash	£ s. d. 500 0 0

Dr.		Fo. 2.		CURRENT ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
1914. Feb. 28	To Cash „ Balance	C.B. 1	£ s. d. 15 0 0 21 15 2 <u>£36 15 2</u>	1914. Feb. 28	By Net Profit Mar. 1 By Balance L. 20	£ s. d. 36 15 2 <u>£36 15 2</u> <u>£21 15 2</u>	

Dr.		Fo. 3.		SALES.				Cr.			
1914. Feb. 28	To Trading Account ..	L. 20	£ 740	s. 0	d. 0	1914. Feb. 19 " 28	By Cash " Sundries	C.B. 1 S.D.B. 1	£ 80 660	s. 0 0	d. 0 0
			<u>£740</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>				<u>£740</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Dr.		Fo. 4.		PURCHASES.		Cr.						
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.			£	s.	d.
Feb. 8	To Cash	C.B. 1		30	0	0	Feb. 28	By Trading Account ..	L. 20	992	1	7
" 15	" "	"		40	0	0						
" 24	" "	"		73	0	0						
" 28	" Petty Cash	L. 12		4	1	7						
	" Sundries	B.D.B. 1		845	0	0						
				£992	1	7				£992	1	7

Dr.		Fo. 5.		WAGES.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 6	To Cash	C.B. 1		4 0 0	Feb. 28	By Profit and Loss A/c	L. 20	16 0 0
" 13	" " " " "	"		4 0 0				
" 20	" " " " "	"		4 0 0				
" 27	" " " " "	"		4 0 0				
				<u>£16 0 0</u>				<u>£16 0 0</u>

Dr.		Fo. 6.		CARRIAGE.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 12	To Cash	C.B. 1		2 0 0	Feb. 28	By Profit and Loss A/c	L. 20	5 2 0
" 28	" Petty Cash ..	L. 12		3 2 0				
				<u>£5 2 0</u>				<u>£5 2 0</u>

Dr.		Fo. 7.		LIGHTING.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 28	To Cash	C.B. 1		5 0 0	Feb. 28	By Profit and Loss A/c	L. 20	5 0 0
				<u>£5 0 0</u>				<u>£5 0 0</u>

Dr.		Fo. 8.		RENT.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 28	To Cash	C.B. 1		8 0 0	Feb. 28	By Profit and Loss A/c	L. 20	8 0 0
				<u>£8 0 0</u>				<u>£8 0 0</u>

Dr.		Fo. 9.		DISCOUNT.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 28	To Sundries	C.B. 1		3 0 0	Feb. 24	By Sundries	C.B. 1	8 0 0
	" Profit and Loss A/c	L. 20		5 0 0				
				<u>£8 0 0</u>				<u>£8 0 0</u>

Dr.		Fo. 10.		GENERAL EXPENSES.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 28	To Petty Cash ..	L. 12		7 1 3	Feb. 28	By Profit and Loss A/c	L. 20	7 1 3
				<u>£7 1 3</u>				<u>£7 1 3</u>

Dr.		Fo. 11.		WAREHOUSE FITTINGS.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.				
Feb. 1	To Cash	C.B. 1		40 0 0				
				<u>£40 0 0</u>				

Dr.		Fo. 12.		PETTY CASH.			Cr.	
1914.				£ s. d.	1914.			£ s. d.
Feb. 2	To Cash	C.B. 1		20 0 0	Feb. 28	By General Expenses ..	L. 10	7 1 3
						" Carriage	L. 6	3 2 0
						" Purchases	L. 4	4 1 7
						" Balance		5 15 2
				<u>£20 0 0</u>				<u>£20 0 0</u>
Mar. 1	To Balance			£5 15 2				

<i>Dr.</i>		<i>Fo. 13.</i>		STOCK ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>
1914. Feb. 28	To Trading Account ..	L. 20	£ s. d. 325 0 0			

Dr.		Fo. 14.		T. CROWN.		Cr.	
1914.				£	s.	d.	
Feb. 2	To Goods	..	..	S.D.B. 1	80	0	0
" 22	" "	..	..	"	130	0	0
					£210	0	0
					£30	0	0
Mar. 1	To Balance	..	..		

Dr.		Fo. 15.		W. WILSON.		Cr.									
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.			£	s.	d.			
Feb. 4	To Goods	..	..	S.D.B. 1	100	0	0	Feb. 17	By Cash	..	..	C.B. 1	200	0	0
" 16	" "	..	..	"	180	0	0	" 28	" Balance	..	..		80	0	0
					<u>£280</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>						<u>£280</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Mar. 1	To Balance	..	..		£80	0	0								

<i>Dr.</i>		<i>Fo. 16.</i>		L. ROBINSON.		<i>Cr.</i>
1914. Feb. 9	To Goods	S.D.B. 1	£ s. d. 170 0 0			

Dr.		Fo. 17.		W. MARTIN.				Cr.					
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.		£	s.	d.		
Feb. 3	To Cash	C.B. 1		150	0	0	Feb. 1	By Goods	B.D.B. 1	250	0	0	
" 11	" Cash and Discount	"		100	0	0	" 14	" "	"	150	0	0	
" 25	" Cash	"		200	0	0	" 23	" "	"	240	0	0	
" 28	" Balance	"		190	0	0							
				<u>£640</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>					<u>£640</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
							Mar. 1	By Balance		£190	0	0	

<i>Dr.</i>	Fo. 18.	F. PEARSON.	<i>Cr.</i>
		1914. Feb. 10	By Goods B.D.B. 1
			£ s. d. 130 0 0

Dr.		Fo. 19.		H. WOOD.				Cr.													
1914. Feb. 21	To Cash and Discount	C.B. 1	<table><tr><td>£</td><td>s.</td><td>d.</td></tr><tr><td>75</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	£	s.	d.	75	0	0	1914. Feb. 18	By Goods	B.D.B. 1	<table><tr><td>£</td><td>s.</td><td>d.</td></tr><tr><td>75</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	£	s.	d.	75	0	0
£	s.	d.																			
75	0	0																			
£	s.	d.																			
75	0	0																			

TRIAL BALANCE.

Fo.		Dr.	Cr.
		£ s. d.	£ s. d.
1	Capital Account		500 0 0
2	Current Account	15 0 0	
3	Sales		740 0 0
4	Purchases	992 1 7	
5	Wages	16 0 0	
6	Carriage	5 2 0	
7	Lighting	5 0 0	
8	Rent	8 0 0	
9	Discount		5 0 0
10	General Expenses	7 1 3	
11	Warehouse Fittings	40 0 0	
12	Petty Cash	5 15 2	
C.B. 1	Cash at Bank	191 0 0	
17	W. Martin		190 0 0
18	F. Pearson		130 0 0
14	T. Crown	30 0 0	
15	W. Wilson	80 0 0	
16	L. Robinson	170 0 0	
		£1,565 0 0	£1,565 0 0

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr.	Fo. 20.		FOR MONTH ENDING 28TH FEBRUARY, 1914.		Cr.
To Purchases	L. 4	£ s. d. 992 1 7 72 18 5	By Sales	L. 3	£ s. d. 740 0 0 325 0 0
" Balance, being Gross Profit		£1,065 0 0	" Stock, 28th Feb., 1914	L. 13	£1,065 0 0
To Wages	L. 5	£ s. d. 16 0 0	By Gross Profit		£ s. d. 72 18 5
" Carriage	L. 6	5 2 0	" Discount	L. 9	5 0 0
" Lighting	L. 7	5 0 0			
" Rent	L. 8	8 0 0			
" General Expenses	L. 10	7 1 3			
" Net Profit, carried to Current Account	L. 2	36 15 2			
		£77 18 5			£77 18 5

BALANCE SHEET

Dr.			28TH FEBRUARY, 1914.		Cr.
To Capital Account—		£ s. d.	By Warehouse Fittings		£ s. d.
Balance 1st February, 1914		500 0 0	Stock		40 0 0
" Current Account—			" Sundry Debtors		325 0 0
Net Profit	£36 15 2		" Cash at Bank		280 0 0
Less Drawings	15 0 0		" Cash in hand		191 0 0
		21 15 2			5 15 2
" Sundry Creditors		320 0 0			
		£841 15 2			£841 15 2

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER II.

CASH BOOKS, &c.

- § 1.—FORM OF CASH BOOK FOR MIXED CASH AND BANK TRANSACTIONS.
- 2.—FORM OF CASH BOOK WHEN ALL RECEIPTS ARE BANKED, AND ALL PAYMENTS MADE BY CHEQUE.
- 3.—DISCOUNTS.
- (a) Trade Discount.
 - (b) Cash Discount.
- 4.—BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT.
- 5.—PETTY CASH BOOK.
- 6.—THE IMPREST SYSTEM.

CHAPTER II.

CASH BOOKS, &c.

§ 1.—Form of Cash Book for mixed Cash and Bank transactions.

Where possible all money received should be paid into the Bank, and all payments made by Cheque, for this minimises the risk of fraud. However, this is not always convenient, and consequently where this principle is not adopted it is absolutely essential to have such a form of Cash Book as will readily show at any time the balance at the Bank and the cash in hand or in the "Till."

ILLUSTRATION—

On 1st January, 1914, the following amounts were received:—

Cheque from J. Jones £20; Discount allowed £1.

Cash from F. Smith £40; Discount allowed £2.

Dividend on investment paid direct to Bank £10.

And the following payments were made:—

Paid T. Robinson by cheque £33; Discount allowed £1 10s.

Drew £20 from Bank for cash.

Paid Wages £18 from cash.

Private drawings of partner £10, from cash.

Paid £65 to Bank.

Record the above transactions in a convenient form of Cash Book, the commencing cash balances being £25 in hand and £300 at the bank.

Dr.					CASIL.					CONTRA.					Cr.				
Date.	Particulars.	Folio.	Dis- count.	Cash.	Bank.	Date.	Particulars.	Folio.	Dis- count.	Cash.	Bank.								
1914			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	1914			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.								
Jan. 1	To Balance ...			25 0 0	302 0 0	Jan. 1	By T. Robinson ..		1 10 0		33 0 0								
	„ J. Jones ...		1 0 0	20 0 0			„ Cash ...	Con.			20 0 0								
	„ F. Smith ...		2 0 0	40 0 0			„ Wages ...			18 0 0									
	„ Div. from In- vestment ...				10 0 0		„ Drawings ...			10 0 0									
	„ Bank ...	Con.		20 0 0			„ Bank ...	Con.		65 0 0									
	„ Cash ...	Con.			65 0 0		„ Balance ...			12 0 0	322 0 0								
			£ 3 0 0	105 0 0	375 0 0				£ 1 10 0	105 0 0	375 0 0								
	To Balance ..			12 0 0	322 0 0														

§ 3.—Discount.

Discount may be of two kinds—Trade or Cash.

(a) *Trade Discount* is an allowance made by one house to another in the same trade, usually taking the form of a fixed percentage off the catalogue or list price of each article. It varies greatly in different trades, and even on different articles in the same trade, and bears no relation to the payment of cash. In the selling firm's books it should be deducted in the Sales Day Book, and in the purchasing firm's books in the Bought Day Book, thus not entering into the respective ledgers at all.

(b) *Cash Discount* is an allowance made by the seller to the purchaser in consideration of the latter paying his account promptly or within a certain specified time—such time being called the period of credit. For the record of this discount special columns are inserted on each side of the Cash Book (*vide* previous illustrations), discount payable being recorded on the debit, and discount receivable on the credit, against the item of cash to which they relate. The discount will then be posted with the cash item to the personal account concerned. The discount columns will be cast and ruled off whenever the Cash Book is balanced, the total of the Debit column being posted to the debit of a Discount Payable Account, and the total of the Credit column to the credit of a Discount Receivable Account in the Impersonal Ledger. Sometimes, however, both items are posted to a General Discount Account.

§ 4.—Bank Reconciliation Statement.

At any given date, it seldom happens that the balance of the Cash Book exactly agrees with the balance of the Bank Pass Book, and the reason for this is that cheques may have been drawn in payment of accounts and entered in the Cash Book, which have not yet been presented for payment by the payee, or being country or foreign cheques have not passed through the Bank. In the same way, cheques may have been paid into the Bank and entered into the Cash Book, but not having been cleared no credit is found in the Pass Book. This being the case, it is

necessary to make a Reconciliation Statement between the Cash Book and Pass Book as follows:—Having called over the Cash Book receipts and payments with the Pass Book, and observed that all bank charges have been entered in the former, the items not ticked on either side in the Cash Book will represent those which have not yet passed through the Bank. Having made a list of these, the cheques outstanding should be deducted from the balance of the Pass Book, and the items not credited added; the result should then equal the balance shown by the Cash Book.

ILLUSTRATION—

RECONCILIATION OF BANK PASS BOOK WITH CASH BOOK.

Balance as per Pass Book	...	...	£20	0	0	£722	0	0
Less Cheques outstanding—Jones	...	...	32	0	0			
Smith	...	...	70	0	0			
Robinson	...	...				122	0	0
						600	0	0
Add Amounts not credited—Black	...	...	£40	0	0			
White	...	...	60	0	0			
						100	0	0
Balance as per Cash Book	...	...				£700	0	0

Note to Illustration—

If there is an overdraft at the Bank, the cheques outstanding will be added, and the amounts not credited deducted.

§ 5.—Petty Cash Book.

The best form of Petty Cash Book to adopt is that known as the “Columnar,” an example of which follows below. The Receipts from the Cash Book are entered in the Receipts column; the Payments are entered first into a Total column, and then extended into subsidiary columns under the most convenient headings. The Totals of the various columns are posted at each balancing period to the debit of the respective Impersonal Accounts, with the exception of the “Ledger” column, which is reserved for all items for which there is no specific subsidiary column, such items being posted in detail.

In such a case there is no necessity to keep a Petty Cash Account in the Impersonal Ledger, as the Petty Cash Book is regarded as forming

part of the Double Entry. Frequently, however, a Petty Cash Account is opened in the Impersonal Ledger, and all amounts paid to the Petty Cashier debited thereto. At regular intervals the analysis of the Petty Cash Expenditure will be journalised, the Petty Cash Account being credited and the various Expense Accounts debited. In this manner the Petty Cash Book becomes merely a Memorandum Book, and forms no part of the Double Entry.

PETTY CASH BOOK.

Receipts.	Folio in Cash Book.	Date.	PARTICULARS.	Voucher Number.	Total Payments.	Travelling Expenses.	Stationery.	Postage.	Sundry Expenses.	Ledger.	Folio.
£ s. d.		1914.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	
10 0 0	31	Jan. 1	Cash—								
			Envelopes	1	12 0		12 0				
			J. Jones—Bristol Expenses ...	2	3 10 6	3 10 6					
		2	Postage		2 0 0			2 0 0			
			Office Furniture—Stool ...	3	12 6					12 6	27
			Cleaning Carpets.	4	17 6				17 6		
					7 12 6	3 10 6	12 0	2 0 0	17 6	12 6	
			Balance		2 7 6	L. 49	L. 25	L. 19	L. 81		
£10 0 0					£ 10 0 0						
£2 7 6		3	Balance								

§ 6.—The Imprest System.

This phrase is applied to the method of keeping Cash or Petty Cash, whereby the Cashier is started with a fixed sum, and at each balancing period a cheque is handed him for the exact amount of his disbursements, thus bringing up the balance in hand to the original figure which was the starting balance, the idea being in the case of Petty Cash that the amount of the periodical disbursements is kept prominently before the notice of a responsible official.

The system is of particular utility where the Petty Cashier is a separate individual from the Cashier. The Petty Cash Book, whether it forms part of the Double Entry or is merely a Record Book, should always be thoroughly checked when expenditure is reimbursed, and should be ruled off or initialled up to that point. If proper supervision

is exercised over the Petty Cashier, the responsible official can always call upon him to produce vouchers for unreimbursed expenditure and cash, which together should equal the amount of the imprest. This may have the effect of saving a considerable amount of the responsible official's time, as he will always know what amount ought to be accounted for.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER III.

THE JOURNAL.

§ 1.—THE USE OF THE JOURNAL.

2.—THE FORM OF JOURNAL ENTRIES.

3.—DAY BOOKS.

4.—COLUMNAR JOURNALS.

5.—THE RECTIFICATION OF ERRORS THROUGH THE JOURNAL.

CHAPTER III.

THE JOURNAL.

§ 1.—The Use of the Journal.

One of the fundamental rules of Double Entry is that no items should be entered in the Ledger without first passing through some book of prime entry.

Up to within comparatively recent times there was only one book of prime entry, and that was the Journal, through which all entries were passed without exception. This still holds good to a large extent on the Continent, in countries where the Journal is legally necessary under the Code Napoleon; but in England, under modern systems of Book-keeping, the use of the Journal is largely dispensed with, its place being taken by separate subsidiary books for each class of transaction, *e.g.* Day Books, Bill Books, Returns Books, &c. It should be particularly noted, however, that these books are in themselves separate Journals, and the principle, as far as the Double Entry is concerned, remains the same, although the form is altered to reduce the amount of clerical labour.

The use of the Journal is now practically confined to recording—

- (1) Transactions for which there is no specific subsidiary book of prime entry.
- (2) Transfers.
- (3) Adjusting Entries.
- (4) Opening and Closing Entries.

§ 2.—The Form of Journal Entries.

No entry should be made in the Journal without an adequate explanation of its nature, and reference to any books or documents relating thereto. Such explanation is called *Narrative*. Unless this is inserted

it will often be found that even the Book-keeper has forgotten the origin of his entry, and considerable trouble may be occasioned thereby.

In addition to the illustrations given below, many other Journal entries dealing with specific subjects will be found throughout this volume.

ILLUSTRATION—

Record by Journal Entry purchase of Gas Engine, £300, from B. Jones & Co.

JOURNAL.

								£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Plant and Machinery Account	..	..	..	..	..	..	DR.	300	0	0	300	0	0
To B. Jones & Co.	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Being purchase of one Gas Engine.													

Record by Journal Entry transfer of £50 from B. Jones & Co.'s Account in the Bought Ledger to their Account in the Sold Ledger.

JOURNAL.

								£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
B. Jones & Co. ..	..	..	..	..	..	..	DR. BL 27	50	0	0	50	0	0
To B. Jones & Co.	..	..	..	..	..	..	SL 22						
Being balance of Bought Ledger Account transferred to Sold Ledger on													
Contra Account.													

Record by Journal Entry Interest at 5 per cent. per annum for one year on A. & F. Smith's Capitals of £1,000 and £500 respectively.

JOURNAL.

								£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Interest on Capital Account	..	..	..	..	..	..	DR.	75	0	0			
To Sundry Capital Accounts—													
A. Smith—5 % on £1,000	..	..	..	..	..	..	..				50	0	0
F. Smith—5 % on £500	..	..	..	..	..	..	..				25	0	0
Being interest at 5 per cent. per annum for the year ending 31st December, 1914, on Partners' Capitals respectively.													

Record by Journal Entry the opening entries of B. Smith, who started business on 1st January, 1914, with the following assets and liabilities:—

		£	s.	d.
Sundry Debtors	..	200	0	0
Bills Receivable	..	100	0	0
Cash at Bank	..	500	0	0
Stock	..	800	0	0
Sundry Creditors	..	150	0	0
Bills Payable	..	50	0	0

JOURNAL.

1914. Jan. 1		DR.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
	Sundries—							
	To Sundries—							
	Sundry Debtors		200	0	0			
	Bills Receivable		100	0	0			
	Stock		800	0	0			
	Cash		500	0	0			
	Sundry Creditors					150	0	0
	Bills Payable					50	0	0
	B. Smith: Capital Account					1,400	0	0
	Being Assets and Liabilities as at this date.							
			£1,600	0	0	£1,600	0	0

§ 3.—Day Books.

In order to minimise the labour which would otherwise be involved in journalising each transaction, various separate books are kept as stated in § 1, for the purpose of recording particular classes of transactions.

Of these the most important are the Bought and Sold Day Books, utilised for recording Purchases and Sales of the business.

The following is a suitable ruling for a Bought Day Book :—

BOUGHT DAY BOOK.

Ledger Folio.	Invoice No.	Particulars.	Details.	Amount.
			£ s. d.	£ s. d.
B 62	18	1st January, 1914. A. Wilson, Loughborough.		
		2 cwt. Souchong at 1s.	11 4 0	
		1 cwt. Cocoa at 2s.	11 4 0	
				22 8 0

The various items entered in the Bought Day Book will be posted to the credit of the person named, and periodically the double entry will be completed by posting the total of the book to the debit of Purchases Account.

The various items entered in the Sales Day Book will be posted to the debit of the person named, and periodically the double entry will be completed by posting the total of the book to the credit of Sales Account.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. Jones, of London, sold to S. Smith 10 bicycles at 10 guineas each, subject to 20 per cent. trade discount, and three extra parts at 10s. each net.

Make out an invoice subject to 5 per cent. discount cash in one month, and show the entry in the Sold Day Book.

INVOICE.

LONDON,

Date.....

S. SMITH,

Dr. TO A. JONES.

Terms: 5 % Cash at one month.

					£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To 10 Bicycles at £10 10s.	..	..	..	..	105	0	0			
Less Trade Discount 20 %	..	..	..	..	21	0	0			
								84	0	0
3 extra parts 10s. net-	..	..	..	..				1	10	0
								<u>£85</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>0</u>

E. & O. E.

SOLD DAY BOOK.

Ledger Folio.	No. of Invoice.	Particulars.	Details.	Amount.
			£ s. d.	£ s. d.
A 401	109	S. Smith.		
		10 Bicycles at £10 10s. £105		
		Less Trade Discount 21	84 0 0	
		3 extra parts at 10s.	1 10 0	85 10 0

§ 4.—Columnar Journals.

It is frequently convenient to have a form of Bought Journal that will record all invoices received by a business, whether they relate to purchases or expenses.

A total column is provided, and as many subsidiary columns as are necessary under the circumstances. Each invoice will be entered

ILLUSTRATION—

How would the following errors in the books of a business affect the accounts of the same?
Show corrective Journal entries:—

- £35 0 0 for goods sold to H. Jones posted to the debit of Charges.
63 1 2 cash posted to the credit of H. Brown, a partner, instead of to H. Brown, a customer.
12 1 9 posted to Office Expenses for the purchase of a safe.
1 5 6 posted to debit of Stationery, instead of to T. Wildsmith in payment of his account.
39 1 7 for wages to workmen for erecting the firm's new machinery, charged to Wages Account.
30 0 0 cost of repairing roof of a shed, charged to Buildings Account.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
H. Jones Dr.	35	0	0				
To Charges					35	0	0
Being transfer of amount posted to debit of Charges in error.							
H. Brown, Current Account Dr.	63	1	2				
To H. Brown					63	1	2
Being transfer of amount posted to credit of H. Brown's Current Account in error.							
Office Furniture Dr.	12	1	9				
To Office Expenses					12	1	9
Being transfer of charge to Furniture Account for Safe posted to Office Expenses Account in error.							
T. Wildsmith Dr.	1	5	6				
To Stationery					1	5	6
Being transfer of amount posted to Stationery Account in error.							
Plant and Machinery Dr.	39	1	7				
To Wages					39	1	7
Being Wages incurred in erecting new Machinery.							
Repairs Dr.	30	0	0				
To Buildings					30	0	0
Being cost of repairing roof of Shed charged to Buildings Account in error.							

The rectification of these errors will increase the profit by £57 8s. 10d.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER IV.

DEPRECIATION, RESERVES, SINKING FUNDS, &c.

- § 1.—DEFINITION OF DEPRECIATION, AND CONSIDERATIONS NECESSARY TO DETERMINE ITS RATE.
- 2.—THE NECESSITY OF PROVIDING FOR DEPRECIATION.
- 3.—THE PRINCIPAL METHODS OF PROVIDING FOR DEPRECIATION.
- (a) The Fixed Instalment System.
 - (b) The Reducing Instalment System.
 - (c) The Annuity System.
 - (d) The Depreciation Fund System.
 - (e) The Insurance Policy System.
 - (f) Revaluation.
- 4.—THE TREATMENT OF REPAIRS, RENEWALS AND REPLACEMENTS.
- 5.—DEFINITION OF RESERVE AND RESERVE FUND.
- 6.—RESERVES FOR BAD DEBTS.
- (a) By reserving on each Doubtful Debt.
 - (b) By the Percentage System.
- 7.—RESERVES FOR DISCOUNTS.
- 8.—THE OPERATION OF SINKING FUNDS FOR THE REPAYMENT OF LOANS.
- 9.—THE OPERATION OF INSURANCE FUNDS IN STEAMSHIP COMPANIES' ACCOUNTS.
- 10.—SECRET RESERVES.
- 11.—OUTSTANDING LIABILITIES.
- 12.—PAYMENTS IN ADVANCE.
- 13.—SUSPENSE ACCOUNTS.

CHAPTER IV.

DEPRECIATION, RESERVES, SINKING FUNDS, &c.

§ 1.—Definition of Depreciation, and the considerations necessary to determine its Rate.

Depreciation is the shrinkage in value of an asset from any cause during a given period.

It may be divided broadly into two classes—

(a) Internal.

(b) External.

Internal depreciation is that arising from the operation of any cause natural to or inherent in the asset itself, *e.g.* wear and tear in the case of Plant and Machinery.

External depreciation is that arising from the operation of forces apart from the asset itself, *e.g.* obsolescence in the case of Plant and Machinery; effluxion of time in the case of a Lease.

In estimating the average life of any asset in order to fix a rate of depreciation, the various forces operating to cause depreciation must be carefully distinguished. It is usually possible to forecast the internal depreciation, such as wear and tear, with reasonable correctness, given the necessary experience and knowledge of the business concerned; but the external forces (apart from effluxion of time, which can of course be calculated most exactly of all) are usually so erratic and variable in their nature that in many cases they are ignored until the actual loss caused thereby has been ascertained.

The term depreciation is usually understood to convey permanent shrinkage in value, temporary shrinkage being termed fluctuation.

§ 2.—The Necessity of Providing for Depreciation.

Depreciation, being a loss incident to the holding of certain assets for the purpose of earning income, should clearly be set off against such income as a working expense before the balance of divisible profit can be arrived at.

If the whole of the profits are withdrawn without providing for this loss, moneys will not have been accumulated out of revenue during the life of the asset for the purpose of replacing the same, and consequently, when that becomes necessary new capital will have to be found in order to do so.

Unless provision is made for depreciation the Balance Sheet cannot be said to represent a true and correct view of the state of affairs.

It is not considered necessary to discuss the question of Depreciation from a legal point of view as affecting limited companies, as this is outside the scope of the present volume. The matter is here dealt with from a point of view of financial prudence. The contention is that depreciation, taking place as it does irrespective of the results of the business, should be recorded in the books just as much as any other transaction, if those books are to show the true facts of the case.

§ 3.—The Principal Methods of Providing for Depreciation.

(a) The Fixed Instalment System:

Whereby a fixed rate per cent. on the original cost of the asset is written off each year so as to reduce the asset to nil or break-up value at the end of its life, repairs and small renewals being charged to Revenue.

The method is used in the case of short Leases; it is not, however, scientific for such terminable assets, in connection with which the expiration of the Capital Value is more correctly determined by the Annuity method referred to in § 3 (c).

Although the Reducing Instalment system is most frequently employed in connection with Plant and Machinery, there can be no doubt that the Fixed Instalment, or "Straight Line" method is the safest to

employ; the only difficulty in applying it being the calculation of depreciation on additions.

In order to calculate the depreciation charge under this system it is necessary to classify the machinery under effective life periods, separate accounts being utilised for each group having the same expectation of time of utility. The way in which the depreciation charge is ascertained and the asset account kept, is shown in the following illustration.

ILLUSTRATION—

Machinery and Plant, Class A, of ten years effective life, is acquired at the commencement of the year 1912 for £4,000.

Additions are made at the commencement of the years 1913 and 1914 of the value of £400 and £250 respectively.

Show the Asset Account depreciated by 10 per cent. per annum, and show how the depreciation is arrived at.

DEPRECIATION RECORD.

MACHINERY AND PLANT. CLASS A. TEN YEARS LIFE.

		1912.	1913.	1914.	1915.	1916.	1917.	1918.	Depreciation.	Jnl. Fo.	
		£	£	£	£	£	£	£	£		
1912	Book Value	4,000									
	Depreciation	400							400		1912
1913	Book Value	3,600	400								
	Depreciation	400	40						440		1913
1914	Book Value	3,200	360	250							
	Depreciation	400	40	25					465		1914
1915	Book Value	2,800	320	225							1915
&c.											&c.

MACHINERY AND PLANT.

CLASS A. TEN YEARS LIFE.

<i>Dr.</i>				<i>Cr.</i>			
1912.				1912.			
Jan. 1	To Cash	£	s. d.	Dec. 31	By Depreciation	£	s. d.
		4,000	0 0		„ Balance	400	0 0
						3,600	0 0
		£4,000	0 0			£4,000	0 0
1913.				1913.			
Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	Dec. 31	By Depreciation	£	s. d.
	„ Cash (Additions) ..	3,600	0 0		„ Balance	440	0 0
		400	0 0			3,660	0 0
		£4,000	0 0			£4,000	0 0
1914.				1914.			
Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	Dec. 31	By Depreciation	£	s. d.
	„ Cash (Additions) ..	3,560	0 0		„ Balance	465	0 0
		250	0 0			3,345	0 0
		£3,810	0 0			£3,810	0 0
1915.							
Jan. 1	To Balance	£3,345	0 0				

Notes to Illustration.

The Depreciation Record is not a Ledger Account, but is a statistical statement, the computation of which is essential if the depreciation is to be calculated on this system. The horizontal depreciation figures are totalled in the last column thereon and the figure to be journalised will be found therein.

Where the additions are not made at the beginning of the year, which will usually be the case, the first year's charge may require adjustment, *i.e.*, the last dated column may require depreciation to be calculated for part of a year. All past yearly columns will however subsequently require a full year's charge.

The resulting balances on the statement when added together should equal the balance on the Ledger Account concerned

(b) The Reducing Instalment System :

Whereby a fixed rate per cent. on the diminishing value of the asset is written off each year, so as to reduce the asset to break-up value at the end of its life, repairs and small renewals being charged to revenue.

This method is commonly used for Plant, Fixtures, Furniture, &c. It is very simple in operation, and the total charge to revenue in respect of depreciation and repairs is more level each year than under method (a), since while depreciation is heavy in the early years repairs will be lighter, the latter increasing as the former grows less ; whereas under (a) the charge for depreciation is constant, while repairs will tend to increase. It is desirable, however, under this system, to re-value from time to time, to ensure the effectiveness of the rate utilised.

ILLUSTRATION—

Balance of Plant Account at 1st January, 1912, £1,726.

Additions during 1912 £321, and 1913 £57.

Depreciation at 10 % per annum on the Reducing Instalment System.

Dr.				PLANT ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
1912.				1912.							
Jan. 1	To Balance ..	..	..	£	s.	d.	Dec. 31	By Depn. 10% on £1,726 0 0	£	s.	d.
Dec. 31	„ Additions ..	..	..	1,726	0	0		„ Balance ..	172	12	0
				321	0	0			1,874	8	0
				<u>£2,047 0 0</u>					<u>£2,047 0 0</u>		
1913.				1913.							
Jan. 1	To Balance ..	..	..	£	s.	d.	Dec. 31	By Depn. 10% on £1,874 8 0	£	s.	d.
Dec. 31	„ Additions ..	..	..	1,874	8	0		„ Balance ..	187	8	9
				57	0	0			1,743	19	3
				<u>£1,931 8 0</u>					<u>£1,931 8 0</u>		
1914.											
Jan. 1	To Balance ..	..	..	£1,743 19 3							

(c) The Annuity System :

Whereby the asset is regarded as earning a fixed rate of interest, and so much is written off each year as, after debiting the fixed rate per cent. upon the diminishing value, will reduce the asset to nil at the end of its life.

This is the most scientific system when investment is *not* desired outside the business, and is specially applicable to cases such as leases, where no additions are made to the asset during its life. It is not generally used for plant, since when additions are made from time to time, these would at once necessitate further calculations.

The interest debited to the asset account will be credited to revenue, and this item will diminish each year with the value of the asset, although the amount written off as depreciation remains constant. There will, therefore, be an increasing net charge to revenue in respect of the lease.

ILLUSTRATION—

Lease costing £600 for term of five years. Depreciation by the Annuity Method at 5 % per annum.

Dr.			LEASE ACCOUNT.			Cr.					
1910.			£	s.	d.	1910.			£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Cash		600	0	0	Dec. 31	By Depreciation		138	11	6
Dec. 31	„ Interest at 5%		30	0	0		„ Balance		491	8	6
			£630	0	0				£630	0	0
1911.			£	s.	d.	1911.			£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Balance		491	8	6	Dec. 31	By Depreciation		138	11	6
Dec. 31	„ Interest		24	11	5		„ Balance		377	8	5
			£515	19	11				£515	19	11
1912.			£	s.	d.	1912.			£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Balance		377	8	5	Dec. 31	By Depreciation		138	11	6
Dec. 31	„ Interest		18	17	5		„ Balance		257	14	4
			£396	5	10				£396	5	10
1913.			£	s.	d.	1913.			£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Balance		257	14	4	Dec. 31	By Depreciation		138	11	6
Dec. 31	„ Interest		12	17	9		„ Balance		132	0	7
			£270	12	1				£270	12	1
1914.			£	s.	d.	1914.			£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Balance		132	0	7	Dec. 31	By Depreciation		138	12	7
Dec. 31	„ Interest		6	12	0						
			£138	12	7				£138	12	7

NOTE.—The annual amount of depreciation under this system is calculated from actuarial tables compiled for the purpose. There will usually be differences arising from fractions of a penny which will be adjusted in the last year.

Dr.

DEPRECIATION AND INTEREST ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1910. Dec. 31	To Depreciation	£ s. d. 138 11 6	1910. Dec. 31	By Interest	£ s. d. 30 0 0
				„ P. & L.	108 11 6
		<u>£138 11 6</u>			<u>£138 11 6</u>
1911. Dec. 31	To Depreciation	£ s. d. 138 11 6	1911. Dec. 31	By Interest	£ s. d. 24 11 5
				„ P. & L.	114 0 1
		<u>£138 11 6</u>			<u>£138 11 6</u>
1912. Dec. 31	To Depreciation	£ s. d. 138 11 6	1912. Dec. 31	By Interest	£ s. d. 18 17 5
				„ P. & L.	119 14 1
		<u>£138 11 6</u>			<u>£138 11 6</u>
1913. Dec. 31	To Depreciation	£ s. d. 138 11 6	1913. Dec. 31	By Interest	£ s. d. 12 17 9
				„ P. & L.	125 13 9
		<u>£138 11 6</u>			<u>£138 11 6</u>
1914. Dec. 31	To Depreciation	£ s. d. 138 12 7	1914. Dec. 31	By Interest	£ s. d. 6 12 0
				„ P. & L.	132 0 7
		<u>£138 12 7</u>			<u>£138 12 7</u>

NOTE.—In practice this account might not be used, depreciation and interest being debited and credited respectively to their separate accounts, but it is shown here in order to illustrate the increasing charge each year to Profit and Loss.

(d) The Depreciation Fund System:

Whereby an equal amount is debited to the Profit and Loss Account each year, and credited to a Depreciation Fund Account, and an equivalent amount of cash is invested outside the business in gilt-edged securities, and allowed to accumulate at compound interest so as to produce the required amount at the completion of a given number of years.

This system is adopted where it is necessary to replace the asset at the end of its life, and to provide moneys *outside the business* for such purpose. This will avoid any disturbance of the financial position, such as might occur if large sums had to be withdrawn from the business at any particular moment.

ILLUSTRATION -

Lease costing £2,091 16s. 3d. for term of four years. Depreciation by the Depreciation Fund System at 3 % per annum.

Dr.

DEPRECIATION FUND ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1911. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 1,015 0 0	1910. Dec. 31	By P. & L. %	£ s. d. 500 0 0
			1911. Dec. 31	„ Cash: Interest	15 0 0
			„	„ P. & L. %	500 0 0
		<u>£1,015 0 0</u>			<u>£1,015 0 0</u>
1912. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 1,545 9 0	1912. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 1,015 0 0
			Dec. 31	„ Cash: Interest	30 9 0
			„	„ P. & L. %	500 0 0
		<u>£1,545 9 0</u>			<u>£1,545 9 0</u>
1913. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3	1913. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 1,545 9 0
			Dec. 31	„ Cash: Interest	46 7 3
			„	„ P. & L. %	500 0 0
		<u>£2,091 16 3</u>			<u>£2,091 16 3</u>
1914. Feb. 7	To Lease %	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3	1914. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3

Dr.

INVESTMENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1910. Dec. 31	To Cash	£ s. d. 500 0 0	1911. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 1,015 0 0
1911. Dec. 31	„ „	515 0 0			
		<u>£1,015 0 0</u>			<u>£1,015 0 0</u>
1912. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 1,015 0 0	1912. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 1,545 9 0
Dec. 31	„ Cash	530 9 0			
		<u>£1,545 9 0</u>			<u>£1,545 9 0</u>
1913. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 1,545 9 0	1913. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3
Dec. 31	„ Cash	546 7 3			
		<u>£2,091 16 3</u>			<u>£2,091 16 3</u>
1914. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3	1914. Feb. 7	By Cash	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3
		<u>£2,091 16 3</u>			<u>£2,091 16 3</u>

Dr.

LEASE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1910. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3	1914. Feb. 7	By Depreciation Fund ..	£ s. d. 2,091 16 3
		<u>£2,091 16 3</u>			<u>£2,091 16 3</u>

Dr.		NEW LEASE ACCOUNT.				Cr.
1914. Mar. 2	To Cash	£2,000	0	0		

Notes to Illustration.

- (1) For the sake of simplicity the investments have been taken at par, and interest has been brought in yearly, without deduction of Income Tax, and invested as received.
- (2) In many cases instructions are given to the Bank of England to reinvest the interest in the principal stock as and when received, in which cases the dividends are never actually received, a book entry debiting the Investment Account and crediting the Depreciation Fund Account being made to record the transaction.
- (3) In practice the Investment will never realise exactly the book value owing to market fluctuations which have, however, in this case been ignored.
- (4) The Depreciation Fund Account is finally disposed of by transferring the balance to the Lease Account, thus closing both accounts. This illustrates the fact that the provision for a depreciation fund is a charge against profits, and not an appropriation thereof.
- (5) Various terms are utilised in place of the phrase Depreciation Fund, *e.g.* Redemption Fund, Amortisation Fund, Sinking Fund, &c.

(e) The Insurance Policy System :

Whereby an Endowment Policy is taken out for the life of the Lease so as to produce the amount required at the end of the particular period.

A similar procedure is followed as in the case of the Depreciation Fund System, with the exception that the cash taken out of the business is not invested in gilt-edged securities, but paid over by way of premium to an Insurance Company.

It is advisable that the "Policy Account" should be maintained at the surrender value thereof, which in nearly all cases is the amount of the premiums paid (plus 2 % per annum compound interest), with the exception of the first premium, which is withheld by the Insurance Company to cover expenses.

This method is becoming increasingly popular now that the Insurance Companies have found it possible to give such favourable terms, for although the interest is lower than could be obtained by investing in gilt-edged securities, there is no risk of loss on realisation as there is under the Depreciation Fund System.

When the policy matures a greater sum will be received than that shown in the books to the debit of the Policy Account, since this has been maintained at the surrender value only. This profit will be debited to the Policy Account and credited to the Redemption Fund Account.

(f) Revaluation :

It is advisable to resort to this method of ascertaining the amount of depreciation to write off in the case of loose Tools, Plant which rapidly depreciates, Live Stock, Patents, Copyrights and similar assets. Should the revaluation disclose an appreciation brought about by additions from Revenue, as in the case of loose Tools and Plant in an Engineering business (the cost of which in the shape of materials and wages has been charged to the Trading Account), such appreciation should be carried to the credit of the Trading Account.

Where the appreciation has not been brought about by additions from Revenue, it will be of a capital nature, and if taken into consideration at all should be placed to the credit of a Special Reserve Account.

§ 4.—The Treatment of Repairs, Renewals and Replacements.

In considering the question of depreciation, distinction should be made between the cost of up-keep in the shape of repairs and small renewals, and the cost of large renewals or the entire replacement of the asset concerned.

In all cases the cost of up-keep should be charged to revenue in addition to the necessary provision for depreciation. The latter represents a shrinkage in the value of the asset which cannot be made good by repairs, but must ultimately involve the expenditure of large sums on account of replacement. The annual charge of depreciation enables this loss to be spread over the life of the asset, thus preventing the revenue of any one period being unduly burdened with the cost of replacement.

The current expenditure by way of repairs is necessary to preserve the life of the asset to the extent of its normal duration, this being the basis upon which the rate of depreciation is determined. Consequently it is essential that the cost of current repairs should be charged to revenue if the rate of depreciation is to be in reality adequate.

In the case of large renewals and replacements the book value of the original asset should have been reduced to nil or break-up value by the time such expenditure becomes necessary, if the rate of depreciation provided has been sufficient. This fact determines whether such expenditure can be justifiably charged to capital.

If there remains any book value over and above break-up value attaching to the asset to be replaced, only such proportion of the cost of replacement as will bring the book value of the asset to the current cost should be capitalised, the balance, which represents accumulated depreciation unprovided for in the past, being charged to revenue.

It is important to consider whether it is necessary to provide for future expenditure on repairs during the early years of the life of an asset, when, although the current expenditure is comparatively slight, it is known that the expenditure at a subsequent period will be considerable. (Where large sums are involved, the best method is to estimate the total expenditure on repairs during the life of the asset, and to average the same over that period. This will be done by raising a Maintenance Reserve Account, crediting thereto every year the estimated normal average charge which will be debited to revenue. The actual expenditure as and when it is made will be debited against the Maintenance Reserve Account, and the balance of that account carried forward in the Balance Sheet.

It may happen that this account will become temporarily in debit owing to excessive expenditure in any one period. If this is likely to be recouped during subsequent periods, it can be carried forward, but care should be taken to see that the average annual charge is sufficient for this purpose.

Dilapidations arising under a lease afford an illustration of expenditure on repairs which accrues at some subsequent period, but which it is nevertheless advisable to provide for during the life of the asset. The most convenient method of doing this is to estimate the dilapidations, and add the amount arrived at to the cost of the lease, for the purpose of calculating the amount of depreciation which should be written off each year, thus spreading the cost of the dilapidations over the whole period.

§ 5.—Definition of Reserve and Reserve Fund.

A Reserve is an amount set aside out of profits either for some specific purpose, such as to provide for bad debts, or for the general purpose of strengthening the business by way of accumulating working capital.

A Reserve Fund is a reserve either general or specific, represented by investments outside the business. Sinking Funds, Insurance Funds, and Depreciation Funds are instances of specific Reserve Funds.

It should be noted that there is a considerable diversity of opinion as to the exact meaning of the term Reserve Fund, and the phrase is frequently used where there are no specific investments representing such fund outside the business. There can be no question, however, that the use of the word "Fund" is generally understood to imply the corresponding existence of assets of a readily realizable nature, and in the opinion of the Authors the phrase should only be used where this is the case.

Specific Reserves which are provided against anticipated losses should be treated as charges on the profits, whereas General Reserves should be regarded as appropriations of profit.

Specific Reserves are usually shown in the Balance Sheet by way of deductions from the assets against which they are made, whereas General Reserves and Reserve Funds are shown on the liabilities side of the Balance Sheet.

§ 6.—Reserves for Bad Debts.

Actual bad debts not written off should be reserved for in full. Doubtful debts may be provided for in two ways:—

(a) By Reserving on each Doubtful Debt.

When the doubtful debts are not sufficiently numerous or of a sufficiently average size, reserve should be calculated separately on each doubtful debt, and the amount so arrived at debited to Profit and Loss Account and credited to Bad Debt Reserve Account.

(b) By the Percentage System.

In other cases it is usual to reserve by way of percentage on the outstanding debtors, the rate of which will be governed by past experience. Sometimes the percentage is calculated on the turnover, but this method is not recommended, inasmuch as the possible bad debts stand in direct relation to the outstanding debtors and not to the turnover. When the actual bad debts are written off, they should be charged against the Reserve Account, and when the accounts are prepared the balance of this Reserve Account should be increased to the amount of the percentage on the outstanding debtors by means of a further transfer from Profit and Loss.

ILLUSTRATION—

The outstanding debtors of a business at 1st January, 1913, are £20,000, and at 31st December, 1913, £25,000. Reserve is made for doubtful debts at 4% on the outstanding debtors. Bad debts written off during 1913 amount to £750. Show the Bad Debt Reserve Account for the year 1913, and the amount to be written off to Profit and Loss Account.

Dr.			BAD DEBT RESERVE ACCOUNT.			Cr.		
1913. Dec. 31	To Bad Debts	£ 750 0 0	1913. Jan. 1	By Balance 4% on £20,000	£ 800 0 0			
	„ Balance 4% on £25,000 ..	1,000 0 0	Dec. 31	„ P. & L. %	950 0 0			
		<u>£1,750 0 0</u>						
			1914. Jan. 1	By Balance	<u>£1,750 0 0</u>			
					£1,000 0 0			

§ 7.—Reserves for Discounts.

The question as to whether reserves should be made for discount on debtors and creditors is purely optional, the argument in favour of provision being that since it is known that a certain amount of discount will have to be allowed, reserve should be made accordingly in order that the debtors and creditors may stand in the Balance Sheet at the amount they are expected to realise or be paid ultimately in cash. On the other hand the argument against such provision is that discount being an allowance granted in consideration of cash being paid at a given date or within a certain specified time, the discount should fall in the same period as that in which the cash passes.

Where a reserve for discount is made, a Discount Reserve Account should be opened and worked in manner similar to a Bad Debt Reserve Account. The discount may either be calculated separately on each personal balance outstanding, or by way of a percentage on the total outstanding. This percentage can be arrived at by taking the average rate of discount allowed in previous periods on the sales and purchases respectively.

§ 8.—The Operation of Sinking Funds for the Repayment of Loans.

Such a fund works in precisely the same way as the Depreciation Fund described in § 3 (*d*). An equal amount is debited to the Profit and Loss Account each year, and credited to Sinking Fund Account, and an equivalent amount of Cash is invested outside the business in gilt-edged securities, and allowed to accumulate at compound interest, so as to produce the required amount at the end of the given period.

At the end of the time the investments will be realised and the loan repaid. This leaves the Sinking Fund still standing with a credit balance, which should be transferred to General Reserve Account, since

the particular purpose for which it was created has ceased to exist. Whereas formerly it was represented by specific investments, it will now be represented by the general assets of the business which will to that extent have been acquired out of profits. This illustrates the point that the provision of a Sinking Fund for the repayment of a liability is not a charge against profits, but an appropriation of them, thus marking its profound distinction in principle from a Depreciation Fund formed for the purpose of replacing an asset, the provision of which is a charge against profits.

The reason why the provision for such a Sinking Fund is debited against the Profit and Loss Account, is in order that moneys may be accumulated and set aside out of profits to repay the liability without having to provide capital moneys for that purpose.

It would be perfectly possible to accumulate funds outside the business for the repayment of any liability, by simply making annual investments out of cash without charge against the Profit and Loss Account at all, but in such a case the balance of the Profit and Loss Account would appear out of all proportion to the amount of profits which it would be prudent to distribute.

If a business distributes the whole of its profits, and at the same time makes these investments by annual instalments without forming a Sinking Fund for the redemption of its loan, the financial position might easily become seriously affected.

ILLUSTRATION—

On the 1st January, 1910, Debentures to the extent of £500 were issued, redeemable at par at the end of five years, and it was resolved that a Sinking Fund should be formed.

Show the Ledger Accounts for the five years, presuming that the interest received on the investments representing the Sinking Fund was at the rate of 5 per cent. on the cost, that Income Tax was ignored, and that the interest was received yearly, and immediately invested.

NOTE.—£180975 of £1 annually invested at 5 per cent. compound interest will produce £1 at the end of five years.

Dr.

SINKING FUND ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1910. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 90 9 9	1910. Dec. 31	By P. & L. Account ..	£ s. d. 90 9 9
1911. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 185 10 0	1911. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 90 9 9
			1911. Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account ..	90 9 9
				„ Cash (Interest) ..	4 10 6
		£185 10 0			£185 10 0
1912. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 285 5 3	1912. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 185 10 0
			1912. Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account ..	90 9 9
				„ Cash (Interest) ..	9 5 6
		£285 5 3			£285 5 3
1913. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ s. d. 390 0 3	1913. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 285 5 3
			1913. Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account ..	90 9 9
				„ Cash (Interest) ..	14 5 3
		£390 0 3			£390 0 3
1914. Dec. 31	To Reserve Account.. ..	£ s. d. 500 0 0	1914. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ s. d. 390 0 3
			1914. Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account ..	90 9 9
				„ Cash (Interest) ..	19 10 0
		£500 0 0			£500 0 0

Dr.

INVESTMENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1910. Dec. 31	To Cash	£ s. d. 90 9 9	1910. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 90 9 9
1911. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 90 9 9	1911. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 185 10 0
1911. Dec. 31	„ Cash	95 0 3			£185 10 0
		£185 10 0			£185 10 0
1912. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 185 10 0	1912. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 285 5 3
1912. Dec. 31	„ Cash	99 15 3			£285 5 3
		£285 5 3			£285 5 3
1913. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 285 5 3	1913. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ s. d. 390 0 3
1913. Dec. 31	„ Cash	104 15 0			£390 0 3
		£390 0 3			£390 0 3
1914. Jan. 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 390 0 3	1914. Dec. 31	By Cash	£ s. d. 390 0 3

Dr.

DEBENTURES.

Cr.

1914. Dec. 31	To Cash	£500 0 0	1910. Jan. 1	By Cash	£500 0 0
------------------	---------------	----------	-----------------	---------------	----------

Note to Illustration.

At the end of the fifth year, viz., 31st December, 1914, no amount of cash will be taken out of the business and invested, for the obvious reason that the Debentures are redeemable on that date. Thus the difference between the total of the Sinking Fund, £500, at 31st December,

1914, and the total amount of the investments, £390 0s. 3d., *i.e.* £109 19s. 9d, is made up as follows:—

Final instalment of Sinking Fund uninvested	..	..	£90	9	9
Interest on Investments uninvested..	..	..	19	10	0
					<hr/>
					£109 19 9

The calculation of the amount of the instalment will be made as follows:—

If £1 is produced at the end of five years by annual instalments of £180975 at 5 per cent. compound interest;

Then £500 is produced at the end of the same period by annual instalments of $£180975 \times 500 = £90$ 9s. 9d.

180975
500
<hr/>
90·487500
20
<hr/>
9·750000
12
<hr/>
9·000000
<hr/>

§ 9.—The Operation of Insurance Funds in Steamship Companies' Accounts.

Steamship Companies owning a fleet of vessels frequently insure either a part or the whole of their fleet themselves. There must be a sufficient number of ships to enable the law of average to apply, and consequently the practice is not applicable to companies owning a single ship, since in the event of a total loss the fund would not be sufficient to meet the claim.

It is usual to commence operations by insuring a line on each ship representing a proportion of its value, the remainder being insured outside, in order to avoid the risk of a heavy loss on any one ship swamping the Fund while it is small. As the Fund grows, the line is gradually increased.

An amount should be credited to the Insurance Fund Account each year equal to the insurance premiums that would have been payable had the insurance been effected outside, or slightly in excess thereof, the same being debited to the Voyage Accounts as insurance. An

equivalent amount should be invested outside the business in gilt-edged securities at compound interest. To the credit of the Insurance Fund Account will also be placed interest on the Investments representing the Fund, and Salvages, Refunds, &c. To the debit will be charged Losses, Re-insurances, and Expenses of administering the Fund, including loss on sale of Investments, if any.

No division of Insurance profits should be made until the Fund has reached such a position as to be sufficient to provide for any contingencies likely to arise. The circumstances to be taken into account are the number of ships in the fleet in order to ascertain the average risk, the nature of the voyages, and the condition of the vessels.

§ 10.—Secret Reserves.

This term is used in cases where a Reserve actually exists, which is not disclosed on the face of the Balance Sheet.

Secret Reserves may be formed in the following ways:—

- (1) By writing down assets such as Freehold Premises or Investments below their actual value.
- (2) By creating excessive Reserves for Bad Debts, &c.
- (3) By charging Expenditure to Revenue which is properly of a Capital nature.

The following objections may be made against this practice:—

- (1) The resulting Balance Sheet will not correctly represent the state of affairs, as the assets will be under-stated or the liabilities over-stated.
- (2) The Profit and Loss Account will not show the correct profit, and consequently the dividend declared may be less than would otherwise have been the case had the full profit been disclosed.
- (3) The practice lends itself to the manipulation of profits, and to improper dealings in the shares by the Directors.

On the other hand, the practice of creating Secret Reserves is undoubtedly advantageous in many instances, particularly in the case of Banks, since it enables the dividends to be maintained without violent fluctuation, and prevents the credit of the Bank being injured by the disclosure of extraordinary losses.

These arguments do not apply so strongly in the case of ordinary Trading Companies, but at the same time Secret Reserves are to a certain extent utilized, and the practice cannot be said to be an improper one, so long as the motives underlying it are *bonâ fide*, and the treatment is to the advantage of the Company generally.

Where the Asset Account is written down, it is inadvisable that it should be written off completely, as this would have the effect of eliminating all record of the asset from the books. A balance of some sort, however small, should remain.

An alternative method is to raise a Reserve Account in respect of the asset, instead of crediting the Asset Account itself. The asset will be shown net in the Balance Sheet.

§ 11.—Outstanding Liabilities.

It generally happens that at the date of balancing the accounts certain liabilities have been incurred which have not been entered in the books. Thus there may be rates due but not paid; rent due but not paid; charges for gas, water, electric light, or similar services, which have been rendered, but for which no account has been received.

Any such items must be taken into account, and this can be done in two ways, either by passing an entry through the Journal, debiting the nominal account concerned, and crediting an Outstanding Liabilities Account, or by adjusting the outstanding item in the nominal account itself. The latter method is that which is usually adopted, and the following illustration shows how the accounts are affected.

ILLUSTRATION—

The books of a manufacturer are closed at 31st December, and the following debit balances appear in the Trial Balance:—

Rent, Rates and Taxes	£765
Gas, Electric Light and Water	£112

One quarter's rent, amounting to £145 is due but not yet paid. A demand note for local rates for the half-year ending 31st March following, amounting to £90 has been received, but has not been paid. There are Outstanding Liabilities not yet brought into account in respect of gas, £16 3s. 0d.; water, £9.

Show the Nominal Accounts as they will appear when the books are closed off.

Dr.		RENT, RATES AND TAXES ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
		£	s.	d.			£	s.	d.
To	Balance	765	0	0	By	Profit and Loss Account	955	0	0
„	Balance Outstanding—								
	Rent	£145	0	0					
	Rates (1 Quarter) ..	45	0	0					
		190	0	0					
		£955	0	0			£955	0	0
					By	Balance	£190	0	0

Dr.		GAS AND ELECTRIC LIGHT ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
		£	s.	d.			£	s.	d.
To	Balance	112	0	0	By	Profit and Loss Account	137	3	0
„	Balance Outstanding—								
	Gas	£16	3	0					
	Water	9	0	0					
		25	3	0					
		£137	3	0			£137	3	0
					By	Balance	£25	3	0

It will be seen from the foregoing illustration that the charge to Profit and Loss Account is increased to the extent of the sum outstanding; and the balance brought down is, for the purpose of the Balance Sheet, treated as a liability.

When the charge is paid during the next period it will be debited to the Nominal Account, and will be compensated for by the credit entry, so that it is not charged to Profit and Loss Account again in the succeeding period.

The same principle can be applied to any Nominal Accounts; but, so far as purchases are concerned, it is better where possible to pass all the invoices through the Purchase Day Book during the period to which they relate.

Where the system of debiting the Nominal Accounts concerned and crediting a separate account is adopted, all the credits can be passed through an Outstanding Liabilities Account, which may be regarded as a Suspense Account for the purpose of adjusting the outstandings. In this case the items in the Suspense Account must, at the commencement of the succeeding period, be transferred to the Nominal Accounts.

§ 12.—Payments in Advance.

It is frequently the case that payments for expenses such as rent, rates, insurance, &c., made during a period, refer wholly or partly to a succeeding period. The treatment of such items is analogous to that of Outstanding Liabilities, and the following illustration shows the effect upon the accounts of adjusting them.

ILLUSTRATION—

The books of a manufacturer are closed at 31st December, and included in the Trial Balance is a debit balance of £260 for Rent, Rates and Taxes Account.

The sum of £40 for local rates for the half-year ending 31st March was paid on the 1st December.

Show the adjustment on the Nominal Account for the purpose of the Balance Sheet.

Dr.				RENT, RATES AND TAXES ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
				£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	
To Balance	..	..	..	260	0	0		By Balance—			
								One Quarter's Rates, paid in advance	20	0	0
								„ Profit and Loss Account	240	0	0
				£260	0	0			£260	0	0
To Balance	..	..	..	£20	0	0					

It will be seen from the foregoing illustration that the charge against profit for the current period is reduced by the amount chargeable to the succeeding period, and that this is brought down as a debit balance, and will appear upon the Balance Sheet as an asset, "Rates paid in advance." In the succeeding period this will tend to increase the charge against the Profit and Loss Account, and rightly so, as the apportionment relates to that period.

§ 13.—Suspense Accounts.

A Suspense Account has already been referred to in connection with Outstanding Liabilities. As stated in that section, however, it is not usual to open a Suspense Account for dealing with such adjustments, but there may be occasions where such an account is necessary.

The principal utility of the Suspense Account is to provide an account to which one aspect of the transaction can be posted until such time as the correct destination of that posting is ascertained. Thus, if a trader received a bank note in settlement of an account without a covering letter, he could pay it into the bank, entering it on the debit side of the cash book, and until such time as he discovered the name of the person from whom it was received it should be posted to the credit of a Suspense Account.

5 Suspense Accounts are frequently raised for Advertising and other expenses of a deferred revenue nature, the benefit of which will be partly received in a subsequent period. In such cases it must be seen that a proper proportion is periodically written off.

Occasionally a Profits Suspense Account is raised, with the object of reserving a proportion of the ascertained profits without actually taking it to a Reserve Account.

The use of Suspense Accounts should be avoided as much as possible, and care should be taken that any such accounts open at the date of the Balance Sheet are correctly shown therein.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER V.

GOODS ON SALE OR RETURN, CONSIGNMENT
ACCOUNTS, &c.

§ 1.—TREATMENT OF GOODS ON SALE OR RETURN.

- (a) Where the goods sent out on sale or return are comparatively small in number.
- (b) Where the goods sent out on sale or return are considerable in number.
- (c) Where the goods sent out on sale or return are considerable in number and of considerable value.

2.—DISTINCTION BETWEEN CONSIGNMENTS AND GOODS SENT OUT ON SALE OR RETURN.

3.—ACCOUNT SALES.

4.—ENTRIES IN THE CONSIGNOR'S BOOKS.

5.—ENTRIES IN THE CONSIGNEE'S BOOKS.

6.—ACCOUNT CURRENT.

7.—AVERAGE DATE.

8.—JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNTS.

9.—ACCOUNTS WITH AGENTS.

The procedure will then be as follows :—

- (1) When goods are sent out they are entered in Column 3 at selling price, and no other entry is made until definite information has been obtained as to whether the goods are to be kept by the customer or returned.
- (2) If the goods are returned, they are extended into Column 5, which, like Column 3, is simply a memorandum column, and does not effect the double entry.
- (3) If the goods are sold, they are extended into Column 6, and posted therefrom to the debit of the customer in the Sales Ledger. The total of this column will ultimately be posted to the credit of Sales Account.
- (4) The difference between the totals of Columns 5 and 6 taken together, and that of Column 3, will represent the goods outstanding at any given date.
- (5) All these transactions will have been entered in this special day book at selling price, but the stock of goods outstanding must be valued at cost, and treated in the same way as ordinary stock for Balance Sheet purposes.

(b) Where the Goods sent out on Sale or Return are considerable in number.

The system suggested above cannot be conveniently applied without some modification in cases where the number of goods sent out on sale or return is considerable, owing to the number of outstanding items at balancing periods.

In order to avoid the labour of bringing forward in detail with full particulars of these outstanding items to a fresh section of the book, which would be necessary to enable the various columns to be properly balanced off, a slightly extended ruling of the book is suggested.

The procedure will then be as follows :—

- (1) When goods are sent out they are entered in the S. or R. Day Book, and posted therefrom in detail to the debit of the customer in the S. or R. Ledger, and in total at the end of each month or period to the credit of a S. or R. Total Account, which can be kept in the S. or R. Ledger.
- (2) When the customer decides to keep the goods, his Account in the S. or R. Ledger must be credited, and his account in the ordinary Sales Ledger debited, for he is now an ordinary debtor. Similarly S. or R. Total Account should be debited, and Sales Account credited. When goods are returned, the customer's Account in the S. or R. Ledger must be credited, and the S. or R. Total Account in the same ledger debited. To record these transactions it is necessary to have a special S. or R. Journal. It should be ruled as follows :—

ILLUSTRATION—

SALE OR RETURN JOURNAL.

Date. (1)	Particulars. (2)	S. or R. Folio. (3)	Sale or Return Ledger. (4)	S. L. Folio. (5)	Sales Ledger. (6)

- (3) When goods on sale or return are sold, the customer's name is entered in Column 2, and the amount of the Sale entered in Columns 4 and 6, and posted in detail therefrom to the credit of the customer's Account in the S. or R. Ledger, and to the debit of his Account in the Sales Ledger.
- (4) When goods are returned they are simply entered in Column 4, and posted in detail therefrom to the credit of the customer in the S. or R. Ledger.
- (5) At the end of each month or period the total of Column 6 is posted to the credit of Sales Account, and that of Column 4 is posted to the debit of S. or R. Total Account in the S. or R. Ledger.

The main principle of the system above described is to render the Sale or Return Ledger self-balancing, *i.e.* the total of the debit balances in the ledger should equal the balance of the Sale or Return Total Account. If this is carried out there is no difficulty in ascertaining the total selling value of goods out on sale or return at any time.

On making up a Balance Sheet and Accounts, the Sale or Return Ledger being self-balancing is outside the Double Entry, and the actual value of the goods out on sale or return, which should be treated as stock, can be arrived at by reducing the balance of each Account in the Sale or Return Ledger to cost.

§ 2.—Distinction between Consignments and Goods sent on Sale or Return.

There is a distinct difference between sending out goods on Consignment and sending out goods on Sale or Return.

In the former case the Consignee (*i.e.* the party to whom the goods are sent) is the agent of the Consignor (*i.e.* the sender), and his business is to sell goods to third parties on behalf of the Consignor, and remit the net proceeds to him.

Usually the Consignee does not indemnify the Consignor against loss by bad debts, but if he does so he is termed a *Del Credere Agent*.

In the case of Sale or Return, the person to whom the goods are sent is not necessarily an agent of the sender, but in the majority of cases is merely an optional purchaser, who must either exercise his option to buy, or return the goods within a specified or reasonable time.

§ 3.—Account Sales.

This is the account rendered by a Consignee to his Consignor showing the gross and net weight of the goods, the price realised, the charges, brokerage and commission deducted, and the net balance for which he is liable.

On March 1st, 1914, the A. Mining Company, Limited, consigned to B. Jones and Co. 180 tons of Chrome Ore per S.S. "Menelaus," invoiced at £3 10s. 0d. per ton. The cost of the Ore at the mine was £200, and Railway Freight to the coast £70, all other expenses being paid by the Consignee. On July 1st B. Jones and Co. remitted an Account Sales showing gross weight 180 tons, and tare of bags 7 cwt., the Ore being realised at 80s. per ton. They deducted for Ocean Freight 20s. per ton, for Dock Dues, &c., £45, Marine Insurance £7 10s. 0d., Brokerage $1\frac{1}{4}$ per cent., and Commission $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., remitting draft for the balance. Make out an Account Sales.

By B. JONES & Co.,
5, John Street,
London, 1st July, 1914.

										London, 1st July, 1914.		
Discharged	180 Tons	0 cwt.										
Tare of Bags	7	"										
	<u>179</u>	<u>13</u>	@	80s.	..	..	..	..	..	£	s.	d.
										718	12	0
CHARGES.										£	s.	d.
Ocean Freight at 20s. per ton	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	180	0	0
Dock Dues, &c.	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	45	0	0
Marine Insurance	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	7	10	0
Brokerage at 1½% on £718 12s. 0d.	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	8	19	8
Commission 2¼% on £718 12s. 0d.	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	17	19	4
										259 9 0		
Net proceeds as per draft enclosed										£	459	3 0

E. & O. E.,
London, 1st July, 1914.
(Signed) B. JONES & Co.

When the Consignor wishes to ascertain the exact profit or loss in respect of each Consignment, he should open a separate Consignment Account therefor.

The procedure should be as follows :—

- (1) Debit Consignment Account with cost of goods, and credit a "Goods sent on Consignment Account."
- (2) Debit Consignment Account with expenses incurred by the Consignor, such as Insurance, Freight, &c., crediting Cash or a Personal Account.
- (3) On receipt of Account Sales from the Consignee, debit the Consignee with the gross proceeds, and credit the Consignment Account.
- (4) Debit the Consignment Account with expenses, brokerage and commission deducted by the Consignee, and credit the Consignee.

- (5) The balance of the Consignment Account will represent profit or loss on Consignment, and be written off to Profit and Loss.
- (6) The balance of the Consignee's Account will represent the amount due by him. If he remits draft, debit Bills Receivable, and credit him, so closing the Account.
- (7) Transfer the balance of the "Goods sent on Consignment Account" to the credit of Trading Account.

Should the Consignor prepare his Balance Sheet and Accounts prior to the sale of the goods, the debit balance of the Consignment Account will be carried forward, and treated in the Balance Sheet as Stock on Consignment. If a loss is anticipated, an adequate reserve should be made.

ILLUSTRATION—

From the particulars given in the Illustration to § 3 make the entries in the Consignor's books.

CONSIGNOR'S BOOKS.

<i>Dr.</i>		CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>		
1914.		£	s. d.	1914.	£	
Mar. 1	To Ore	200	0 0	July 1	By B. Jones & Co. ..	718 12 0
	" Railway Freight	70	0 0			
July 1	" B. Jones & Co.: Ocean Freight	180	0 0			
	Dock Dues	45	0 0			
	Marine Insurance	7	10 0			
	Brokerage	8	19 8			
	Commission	17	19 4			
Dec. 31	" Profit and Loss: Profit	189	3 0			
		£718	12 0			£718 12 0

Dr.		B. JONES & CO.		Cr.			
1914.		£	s. d.	1914.	£		
July 1	To Consignment Account ..	718	12 0	July 1	By Consignment Account—	259	9 0
					Sundry Charges ..	459	3 0
				" 3	" Bill Receivable ..		
		£718	12 0			£718	12 0

§ 5.—Entries in the Consignee's Books.

When the goods are received by the Consignee, he will enter particulars thereof in a Consignment Stock Book ruled for Marks and Quantities, according to the nature of the goods, and having a column for invoice

Detailed particulars will also be entered in the Consignment Stock Book by way of memoranda as described above.

§ 6.—Account Current.

This is an account of mutual dealings and transactions between two parties during a given period, rendered by one party to the other. It is in effect a copy of the ledger account, with the addition of interest in the majority of cases.

Interest is usually calculated at a fixed rate per cent. on each item on either side of the account, from the date of the item to the close of the account. Interest columns should be provided, and the balance of these should be brought into the principal column. It sometimes happens that goods are invoiced prior to the due date of payment, in which case interest will only run from the due date, and not from the date of the invoice.

ILLUSTRATION—

Make out an Account Current to be rendered by A. to B. on 1st February, 1914, in respect of the following transactions:—

1913.	Oct. 1	Goods sold to B. £150.
		Received cash from B. £67 10s. 0d.
	Nov. 1	Paid B. cash £247 10s. 0d.
	Dec. 1	Bought Goods of B. £375.
		Paid to B. cash £225.
1914.	Jan. 1	Bought Goods of B. £540.
		Paid Cash to B. £450.
	Feb. 1	Goods sold to B. £120.

Interest at 6 per cent. to be calculated in months instead of days.

Dr.					B. IN ACCOUNT CURRENT WITH A.					Cr.				
Date.	Particulars.	Mths.	Interest.	Principal.	Date.	Particulars.	Mths.	Interest.	Principal.					
1913.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	1913.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.					
Oct. 1	To Goods ..	4	3 0 0	150 0 0	Oct. 1	By Cash ..	4	1 7 0	67 10 0					
Nov. 1	„ Cash ..	3	3 14 3	247 10 0	Dec. 1	„ Goods ..	2	3 15 0	375 0 0					
Dec. 1	„ „ ..	2	2 5 0	225 0 0	1914.									
Jan. 1	„ „ ..	1	2 5 0	450 0 0	Jan. 1	„ „ ..	1	2 14 0	540 0 0					
Feb. 1	„ Goods ..			120 0 0	Feb. 1	„ Transfer to Contra ..		3 8 3						
„	„ Interest as per Contra ..			3 8 3	„ Balance ..				213 8 3					
			£11 4 3	£1,195 18 3				£11 4 3	£1,195 18 3					
1914.														
Feb. 1	To Balance ..			£213 8 3										

Note to Illustration.

In rendering an Account Current it is important to know from which point of view the account is to be prepared.

If it is prepared from the point of view of the sender, it will be to all intents and purposes a copy of his Ledger Account with the other party, and the account will be in Account Current with himself.

In the above Illustration the account is rendered by A. to B. from A.'s point of view. It is therefore taken from A.'s ledger, and headed "B. in account with A."

If the account were to be rendered by A. from B.'s point of view, it would be the other way round, and would be headed "A. in account with B."

§ 7.—Average Date.

This is the mean date upon which a single payment can be made in lieu of several payments on various dates.

It is frequently used for the calculation of interest on partners' drawings, and on the realization of book debts, and in other similar instances.

ILLUSTRATION—

A partner has withdrawn the following sums of money during the half-year ending 30th June :—

					£
January	17	..	..	..	150
"	28	..	..	..	200
February	18	..	..	..	120
March	5	..	..	..	80
April	24	..	..	..	200
May	2	..	..	..	150
June	30	..	..	..	100

Interest is to be charged at 5 per cent. per annum. Find the average date, and calculate the interest.

The procedure is as follows :—

- (1) Multiply each amount by the number representing the number of days from the commencement of the period under review.
- (2) Divide the total of these calculations by the total of the drawings.
- (3) The result will give the number of days from the commencement of the period, fixing the "Average Date."
- (4) Calculate the interest from the Average Date to the close of the period under review.

NOTE.—As fractions of days are not taken into consideration, the result will not be absolutely correct, but allowance for this can very easily be made.

Amount of Drawings.		Date.	No. of Days from 1st Jan.	Product.	
£	s. d.			£	s. d.
150	0 0	Jan. 17	17	2,550	0 0
200	0 0	" 28	28	5,600	0 0
120	0 0	Feb. 18	49	5,880	0 0
80	0 0	Mar. 5	64	5,120	0 0
200	0 0	April 24	114	22,800	0 0
150	0 0	May 2	122	18,300	0 0
100	0 0	June 30	181	18,100	0 0
<u>£1,000 0 0</u>				<u>£78,350 0 0</u>	

= 78 = March 19,
Average date.

Interest at 5 per cent. from March 19th to June 30th = £14 ls. 2d.

This result can be proved by calculating the interest on each separate drawing thus :—

Amount of Drawings.		Date.	No. of Days to 30th June.	Interest.	
£	s. d.			£	s. d.
150	0 0	Jan. 17	164	3	7 5
200	0 0	" 28	153	4	3 10
120	0 0	Feb. 18	132	2	3 5
80	0 0	Mar. 5	117	1	5 7
200	0 0	April 24	67	1	16 8
150	0 0	May 2	59	1	4 3
100	0 0	June 30	—	—	—
<u>£1,000 0 0</u>				<u>£14 1 2</u>	

It should be observed that there are several methods of working Average Date, but that given is one of the simplest.

§ 8.—Joint Consignment Accounts.

These accounts follow the same lines as Joint Venture Accounts, which are fully discussed in the Chapter on Partnership Accounts. It is important to remember that if no separate set of books is kept for the Joint Account, such an account will be made up from material supplied by both parties, and should not be found in the books of either party, each showing in his books only those transactions which he has entered into on behalf of the Joint Account.

ILLUSTRATION—

Silver & Co. agree to ship on Joint Consignment Account with Gold & Co. goods costing £1,000. Silver & Co. supply the goods, and Gold & Co. ship to the Consignees, Steel & Co., paying Freight, Insurance, &c., £42, Packing Charges £15. Gold & Co. draw on the Consignees at three months to the extent of £750, acceptance being made on behalf of Steel & Co. by their agents in London. The bill was discounted at 5 per cent. and the proceeds remitted to Silver & Co. These transactions may be dated 1st July, 1913. The Account Sales was received by Gold & Co. on February 1st, 1914, together with the net proceeds £630, who then remit to Silver & Co. the amount due to them in final settlement. Interest is to be charged at 5 per cent. per annum in months on the amounts outstanding. Prepare Joint Consignment Account, dividing the balance two-thirds to Silver & Co., and one-third to Gold & Co., and show the accounts in the books of both parties.

JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT.										Dr.	Cr.
Date.	Particulars.	Months.	Interest.	Principal.	Date.	Particulars.	Months.	Interest.	Principal.		
1913. July 1	To Goods sent out at cost	7	£ s. d. 29 3 4	£ s. d. 1,000 0 0	1913. July 1	By Proceeds:	7	£ s. d. 21 17 6	£ s. d. 750 0 0		
..	" Freight, Insurance, &c.	7	1 4 6	42 0 0	..	Bill—Steel & Co.	..	..	..
..	" Packing Charges	7	8 9	15 0 0	1914. Feb. 1	Cash—Steel & Co.	..	..	630 0 0
..	" Discount on Bill	7	5 5	9 7 6	..	" Interest to Contra	..	9 4 6	..		
1914. Feb. 1	" Interest as per Contra	..	..	9 4 6	..	..	..	..	..
..	" Balance, being Profit..	..	..	304 8 0	..	..	..	..	..
			£31 2 0	£1,380 0 0				£31 2 0	£1,380 0 0		
	To Silver & Co. two-thirds	..	..	202 18 8		By Balance	..	..	304 8 0
..	" Gold & Co. one-third ..	..	..	101 9 4		..	..	..	..
				£304 8 0					£304 8 0		

GOLD & CO.'S BOOKS.
JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT WITH SILVER & CO.

JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT WITH SILVER & CO.										Dr.	Cr.
Date.	Particulars.	Months.	Interest.	Principal.	Date.	Particulars.	Months.	Interest.	Principal.		
1913. July 1	To Freight, Insurance, &c.	7	£ s. d. 1 4 6	£ s. d. 42 0 0	1913. July 1	By Bill: Steel & Co.	7	£ s. d. 21 17 6	£ s. d. 750 0 0		
..	" Packing Charges	7	8 9	15 0 0	..	" Cash: Steel & Co.	..	..	630 0 0
..	" Discount on Bill	7	5 5	9 7 6	1914. Feb. 1	" Interest to Contra	..	1 13 3	..		
..	" Cash: Proceeds of Bill	7	21 12 1	740 12 6							
1914. Feb. 1	" Interest as per Contra	..	..	1 13 3					
..	" P. & L. A/c: one-third Profit	..	..	101 9 4					
..	" Cash: Balance of a.c remitted	..	..	469 17 5					
			£23 10 9	£1,380 0 0				£23 10 9	£1,380 0 0		

SILVER & CO.'S BOOKS.
JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT WITH GOLD & CO.

JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT WITH GOLD & CO.										Dr.	Cr.
Date.	Particulars.	Months.	Interest.	Principal.	Date.	Particulars.	Months.	Interest.	Principal.		
1913. July 1	To Goods	7	£ s. d. 29 3 4	£ s. d. 1,000 0 0	1913. July 1	By Cash : Proceeds of Bill	7	£ s. d. 21 12 1	£ s. d. 740 12 6		
1914. Feb. 1	" Interest as per Contra	..	..	7 11 3	1914. Feb. 1	" Cash : Balance of a/c remitted	..	7 11 3	469 17 5
	" Profit and Loss A/c— two-thirds Profit	..	..	202 18 8		" Interest to Contra	..	..	..
			£29 3 4	£1,210 9 11				£29 3 4	£1,210 9 11		

Note to Illustration.

It should be observed that Gold & Co. must first ascertain the share of profit to which they are entitled from the Joint Consignment Account, before they can arrive at the balance of cash to remit to Silver & Co. This balance is shown as £469 17s. 5d.

On the other hand Silver & Co., after crediting the remittance of the above amount, will find on striking a balance on their joint account with Gold & Co. that there is a profit of £202 18s. 8d., which on reference to the Joint Consignment Account is found to be two-thirds of the profit, the exact amount to which they are entitled. In this way the accounts of the parties as between themselves are proved, inasmuch as in the first instance the profit is inserted before the final amount of cash is arrived at, while in the second instance cash is inserted before the final figure of profit is arrived at.

§ 9.—Accounts with Agents.

In many cases where Agencies are situated in different parts of the world for the sale of a firm's goods, it is not convenient to treat the goods sent out to such Agents as Consignments, and often even in cases of Consignments proper it is not desired to show the profit or loss on each shipment. In such cases Consignment Accounts, as illustrated previously, are not used, but the transactions are dealt with in the manner now to be described.

Memoranda quantity stock accounts will be kept showing the amount of goods sent to the Agent. No entry will be made otherwise than by way of memoranda when the goods are sent to him, except that the proper nominal Accounts will be debited with any expenses incurred. When the Agent's Return is received, Sales Account will be credited with the gross figure, and the Agent's personal account debited. Any expenses he may have incurred will be credited to his personal account, and debited to the proper expense accounts. The Agent's personal account will be credited with moneys remitted by him, and the balance on his account at any time will be the amount due by him for sales effected. In this way the Agent will not be debited with the value of any stock unsold, as this will be regarded as stock belonging to the firm and brought into their Balance Sheet at cost, plus expenses, or at a lower valuation if necessary.

The Agent will send over quantity stock accounts at periodical intervals, which will be agreed with the similar accounts kept at the head office, any differences in stock being adjusted.

Although the system is not recommended it is sometimes considered desirable to debit the Agent's Account with the cost value of goods sent to him but care must be taken, if goods are debited at more than cost to reduce the value of Stock in his hands at balancing time to cost price, so that no profit is taken before it is actually realised.

Where foreign agents are concerned it may be necessary to record the transactions in currency in which case Currency as well as Sterling columns must be utilised, and any difference on Exchange must be dealt with as shown in Chapter X., § 6.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER VI.

BILLS OF EXCHANGE, PROMISSORY NOTES, &c.

§ 1.—DEFINITIONS OF—

- (a) Bills of Exchange.
- (b) Promissory Notes.
- (c) Negotiable Instruments.
- (d) Days of Grace.

2.—STAMP DUTIES ON BILLS OF EXCHANGE AND PROMISSORY NOTES.

3.—SPECIMEN FORMS OF BILLS OF EXCHANGE AND PROMISSORY NOTES.

4.—FORMS OF BILL BOOKS.

- (a) Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Books.
- (b) Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Ledgers.
- (c) Bill Diary.

5.—ACCOMMODATION BILLS.

6.—DISHONOURED BILLS, RETIRED BILLS, SHORT BILLS, &c.

- (a) Dishonoured Bills.
- (b) Retired Bills.
- (c) Short Bills.
- (d) Discounted Bills.
- (e) Documentary Bills.
- (f) Rebated Bills.

CHAPTER VI.

BILLS OF EXCHANGE, PROMISSORY NOTES, &c.

§ 1.—Definitions of Bill of Exchange, Promissory Note, and Negotiable Instrument.

(a) Bill of Exchange.

A *Bill of Exchange* is an unconditional order in writing, addressed by one person to another, signed by the person giving it, requiring the person to whom it is addressed to pay on demand, or at a fixed or determinable future time, a sum certain in money to, or to the order of, a specified person or to bearer.

The parties to a bill are three—(1) The *Drawer*, i.e. the party who makes out the bill in the first instance and signs it ; (2) The *Drawee*, i.e. the party to whom the bill is addressed ; and (3) The *Payee*, i.e. the party to whom the bill is payable.

When the Drawee accepts the bill he signs his name across the face of it, and becomes the *Acceptor*. Until the Drawee becomes the Acceptor he is not liable on the bill. When the bill is negotiated, each party through whose hands it passes must endorse his name on the back thereof, and thereupon becomes an *Endorser*, unless it is a bill to bearer, when it is negotiated by delivery only.

NOTE.—A cheque is the commonest form of Bill of Exchange, being defined by the Bills of Exchange Act, 1882, as a Bill of Exchange drawn on a Banker, payable on demand.

(b) Promissory Note.

A *Promissory Note* is an unconditional promise in writing made by one person to another, signed by the maker, engaging to pay on demand, or at a fixed or determinable future time, a sum certain in money to, or to the order of, a specified person or to bearer.

The parties to a Promissory Note are two: (1) The *Promissor*, i.e. the party who makes the promise and signs the note; and (2) The *Promisee*, i.e. the party to whom the promise is made. There may be a single Promissor, or there may be two or more Promissors. In the latter case the liability may be either *joint* or *joint and several*. If joint, any judgment without satisfaction against one of the makers of the note is a bar to proceedings against the other joint maker or makers. This is not the case if the note is joint and several.

When a note payable to order is negotiated, each party through whose hands it passes must endorse his name on the back thereof, and thereupon becomes an *Endorser*.

NOTE.—A Bank of England Note is the commonest form of Promissory Note.

(c) Negotiable Instruments.

Negotiable Instruments are documents representing value in money the property in which passes by mere delivery, or endorsement and delivery, such as Promissory Notes, Bills of Exchange, &c.

As a general rule a party cannot give a better title to property than he possesses himself, but in the case of negotiable instruments, provided the holder receives them in good faith, for valuable consideration and without notice of any defect in the title, his title will be good, notwithstanding any defect in that of any prior holder.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Bank Note is a negotiable instrument. Assume B. receives a Bank Note in payment for goods from C., and pays the same into his Bank. B. subsequently discovers that C. had stolen the Bank Note from A., who had notified the Bank of England of his loss. A. will not be able to recover from B., since the latter received the note in good faith and for valuable consideration, and consequently holds a good title thereto.

A Postal Order is not a negotiable instrument, since all orders are issued by the Post Office marked "Not negotiable." Consequently assuming the above case to have occurred in connection with a Postal Order, A. can recover from B. the holder, as B.'s title is defective.

(d) Days of Grace.

Three days are allowed for the payment of all Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes, except those payable at sight or on demand, consequently in calculating the due date allowance must be made for the three days of grace. Similarly three days must be taken into account in calculating interest or discount.

§ 2.—Stamp Duties on Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes.

Bill of Exchange payable on demand, at sight, on pre- £ s. d.
sentation, or within three days after date or sight 0 0 1

(This stamp may be adhesive.)

Bill of Exchange drawn and expressed to be payable out of the United Kingdom, when actually paid or endorsed or in any manner negotiated in the United Kingdom :—

Where the amount exceeds £50 and does not exceed £100.. 0 0 6

Where amount exceeds £100, for every £100 or fractional part of £100 0 0 6

Bill of Exchange of any kind whatsoever, and Promissory Note of any kind whatsoever (except a Bank Note), drawn and expressed to be payable, or actually paid or endorsed, or in any manner negotiated, in the United Kingdom (except as above)—

Where amount or value of money for which bill or note is

drawn or made does not exceed £5	..	..	..	0	0	1
Exceeds £5 and does not exceed £10	..	..	..	0	0	2
„ £10 „ „ „ £25	..	..	..	0	0	3
„ £25 „ „ „ £50	..	..	..	0	0	6
„ £50 „ „ „ £75	..	..	..	0	0	9
„ £75 „ „ „ £100	..	..	..	0	1	0
Exceeding £100, for every £100 and fraction of £100	..	0	1	0		

§ 3.—Specimen Forms of Bills and Promissory Notes.

The following are specimen forms of Bills of Exchange :—

I.

London, 1st February, 1914.

£100

Stamp
1s.

Three months after date
One hundred pounds
To Messrs. BLACK &
Glasgow.

Accepted
Payable at the
Union Bank of
Scotland
Black & Co.

pay to my order the sum of
for value received.

F. SMITH.

In this case the drawer and the payee are one and the same person,

viz. F. Smith. Black & Co. are the drawees, and on accepting the bill they become the acceptors.

II.

Accepted

A. White & Co.

London, 1st February, 1914.

£436

Stamp
5s.

Three months after date pay to F. Blackmore or order the sum of Four hundred and thirty-six pounds for value received.

To Messrs. A. WHITE & Co.,
London.

B. WILLIAMS.

In this case the drawer and payee are not the same persons.

III.

London, 1st February, 1914.

£1,000

Stamp
1d.

On demand pay to A. Wilkins or order the sum of One thousand pounds for value received.

To Messrs. A. BLACK & Co.,
York.

A. ROBERTS.

In this case the stamp is only 1d., as the bill is on demand. The drawer and the payee are again distinct parties.

IV.

Calcutta, 1st February, 1914.

£5,000

Stamp
£2 10s.

Accepted

Payable to the order of F. Wilkinson & Co.

Three months after sight of this first of exchange (second and third of even date unpaid) pay to the order of Mr. John Jones the sum of Five thousand pounds for value received.

To Messrs. F. WILKINSON & Co.,
London.

R. PHILLIPS & Co.

This is a form of foreign bill drawn in Calcutta payable in this country, and consequently the stamp duty is the ordinary 1s. per cent. Foreign bills are often drawn in duplicate or in a set, each part of the set being numbered, and referring to the other parts. The first bill coming to hand will be presented for acceptance, and the others destroyed as and when received.

V.
Accepted.
Payable at
Credit of M. A. Sabatier.
Paris.

Fr.50,000 Two months after date of this our second of exchange
(first and third of exchange and date unpaid) pay to the
order of Mr. F. Brown the sum of Fifty thousand francs for
value received.

Stamp
10s.

Bombay, 1st February, 1914.

F. WALL & Co.

To M. A. SABATIER,
Paris.

This is an illustration of a bill which is drawn abroad and payable abroad, but is assumed to have been negotiated in this country. Thus the stamp duty is at the rate of 6d. per cent.

The following are some forms of Promissory Notes :—

I.

£50

London, 1st February, 1914.

Three months after date I promise to pay A. White & Co.
or order the sum of Fifty pounds for value received.

JOHN LAKE.

It will be observed that there are only two parties to a Promissory Note—the promissor and the payee. The stamp duty is *ad valorem*.

II.

£1,000

London, 1st February, 1914.

Stamp
10s.

On demand we promise to pay to Messrs. F. White & Co.
the sum of One thousand pounds for value received.

C. D.

E. F.

This is an instance of a *Joint Promissory Note*. The promissors are jointly liable, *i.e.* only one action can be brought, and if judgment is recovered against one of the parties only, another action cannot subsequently be brought against the other party.

If the note had been worded "I promise to pay," and had been signed by both parties as above, the note would have been joint and several. It will be observed that all Promissory Notes, whether on demand or otherwise, bear an *ad valorem* stamp duty in contra-distinction to Bills of Exchange.

III.

London, 1st February, 1914.

£530

Stamp
6s.

Three months after date we jointly and severally promise
to pay to the order of Messrs. F. Wilkins & Co. the sum of
Five hundred and thirty pounds for value received.

F. T.

W. X.

Y. Z.

This is an instance of a *Joint and Several Promissory Note* where the parties are jointly and severally liable, and, in the event of any one of the parties not contributing his proportion, the holder will have a right of recovery for the full amount of the note against any one of the Promissors, who in his turn will have a right of recovery from the remaining Promissors of their respective contributions.

ILLUSTRATION -

In the books of T. Atkinson, the following debit balances appear on July 1st, 1914:—

								£	s.	d.
H. Marshall	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	0	0
J. Wilson	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	70	0	0
F. Johnson	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	90	0	0

Also the following credit balances:—

W. Black	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	90	0	0
F. White	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	80	0	0
H. Brown	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	40	0	0

Enter these balances in the Ledger and from the particulars given in the Bills Receivable and Bills Payable books illustrated above, make the necessary entries in T. Atkinson's books.

Dr.	Fo. 1.			CASH BOOK.			Cr.
1914. Aug. 4 Sept. 12	To Bills Receivable .. " " " .. " " " ..	Fo. 1 1 -	£ s. d. 50 0 0 90 0 0	1914. Sept. 12 " 15 " 22	By Discount .. Bills Payable .. Noting Charges— J. Wilson's Dis- honoured Bill..	Fo. 3 2 5	£ s. d. 1 1 0 90 0 0 5 0

LEDGER.

Dr.	Fo. 1.			BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.			Cr.
1914. Sept. 30	To Sundries	Fo. B.R.B. 1	£ s. d. 210 0 0	1914. Aug. 4 Sept. 12 " 22	By Cash .. " Cash and Discount .. " J. Wilson— Dishonoured Bill	Fo. C.B. 1 C.B. 1 L. 5	£ s. d. 50 0 0 90 0 0 70 0 0

Dr.	Fo. 2.			BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.			Cr.
1914. Sept. 15	To Cash	Fo. C.B. 1	£ s. d. 90 0 0	1914. Sept. 30	By Sundries	Fo. B.R.B. 1	£ s. d. 210 0 0

Dr.	Fo. 3.			DISCOUNT ACCOUNT.			Cr.
1914. Sept. 12	To Sundries	Fo. C.B. 1	£ s. d. 1 1 0				

Dr.	Fo. 4.			H. MARSHALL.			Cr.
1914. July 1	To Balance, brought forward	Fo.	£ s. d. 50 0 0	1914. July 2	By Bill Receivable ..	Fo. B.R.B. 1	£ s. d. 50 0 0

Dr.		Fo. 5.		J. WILSON.				Cr.	
1914.			Fo.	£	s.	d.	1914.		Fo.
July 1	To Balance, brought forward ..			70	0	0	Aug. 1	By Bill Receivable ..	B.R.B. 1
Sept. 22	„ Bills Receivable Account—Dishonoured Bill ..								
	„ Noting Charges ..	J. 1		70	0	0			
		C.B. 1			5	0			

Dr.		Fo. 6.		F. JOHNSON.				Cr.	
1914. July 1	To Balance, brought forward	£	s. d.	1914. Sept. 9	By Bill Receivable ..	Fo. B.R.B. 1	£	s. d.	
		90	0 0				90	0 0	

Dr.		Fo. 7.		W. BLACK.		Cr.	
1914. July 15	To Bill Payable.. ..	Fo. B.P.B. 1	£ s. d. 90 0 0	1914. July 1	By Balance, brought forward	£ s. d. 90 0 0	

Dr.		Fo. 8.	F. WHITE.				Cr.			
1914. July 19	To Bill Payable.. ..	Fo. B.P.B. 1	£ 80	s. 0	d. 0	1914. July 1	By Balance, brought forward	£ 80	s. 0	d. 0

Dr.		Fo. 9.		H. BROWN.		Cr.	
1914. Aug. 3	To Bill Payable..	Fo. B.P.B. 1	£ s. d. 40 0 0	1914. July 1	By Balance, brought forward	£ s. d. 40 0 0	

(b) Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Ledgers.

These books are ruled in a similar way to ordinary Bill Books, but are provided with additional money columns to show the disposal of the bills.

They may be made to form part of the Double Entry, in which case it will not be necessary to have Ledger Accounts for Bills Receivable and Bills Payable.

The great advantage of utilising this form of book is that a complete history of each bill is recorded in a manner capable of arithmetical proof.

(c) Bill Diary.

Where bill transactions are numerous, it is very advisable that all bills, whether receivable or payable, should be entered up in special Bill Diaries, so that the amounts due to be received or paid on any given day can be readily ascertained.

The Diary will be ruled to meet the requirements of each case, separate space being allotted for each day in the year. The bills are entered under the date on which they fall due, allowance being made for the three days of grace.

§ 5.—Accommodation Bills.

An *Accommodation Bill* is one to which a person has put his name, whether as a drawer, acceptor or endorser, without valuable consideration, for the purpose of accommodating some other party who desires to raise money by negotiating it.

There are three common methods of raising money on Accommodation Bills, which are as follows :—

- (1) Where one party to convenience another accepts a bill without valuable consideration, to enable the drawer to discount the bill and thus raise money, the drawer repaying the acceptor when the bill becomes due.

ILLUSTRATION—

For B.'s convenience A. accepted a bill on 1st January, 1914, for £100 at three months.

B. discounted the bill forthwith, and paid the proceeds, viz., £95, into his Bank. (NOTE.— The person who discounted the bill charged £5 for so doing.)

On the bill falling due A. met it and notified B., who had arranged to reimburse A. on the due date. B., however, was unable to do this, but arranged to give A. immediately a cheque for £50, and a bill at one month for the balance. This bill was duly met at maturity.

Show the entries as they would appear in the books of both A. and B., and state at what date the bills fell due.

A'S BOOKS.

Dr.				B'S ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
1914.				£		s. d.		1914.			
Jan. 1	To Bills Payable	..	..	100	0	0		April 4	By Cash	..	..
								"	" Bills Receivable	..	..
				£100	0	0				50	0
										50	0
										£100	0
										0	0

Dr.				BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.				Cr.				
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.			£	s.	d.
April 4	To Cash	..	..	100	0	0	Jan. 1	By B.	..	100	0	0

Dr.				CASH BOOK.				Cr.							
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				£	s.	d.		
April 4				To B...	50	0	0	April 4				By Bills Payable	100	0	0
May 7				„ Bills Receivable	50	0	0								
					£100	0	0						£100	0	0

Dr.				BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.				Cr.					
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				£	s.	d.
April 4	To B.	..	..	50	0	0	May 7	By Cash	..	..	50	0	0

B'S BOOKS.

Dr.				A'S ACCOUNT.				Cr.					
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				£	s.	d.
April 4	To Cash	..	..	50	0	0	Jan. 1	By Bills Receivable	..	..	100	0	0
"	" Bills Payable	..	..	50	0	0							
				<u>£100 0 0</u>							<u>£100 0 0</u>		

Dr.				BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.				Cr.					
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To A.	..	..	100	0	0	Jan. 1	By Cash	..	..	95	0	0
							"	" Discount	..	..	5	0	0
				£100	0	0					£100	0	0

<i>Dr.</i>		CASH BOOK.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914. Jan. 1	To Bills Receivable	£ s. d. 95 0 0	1914. April 4 May 7	By A. „ Bills Payable	£ s. d. 50 0 0 50 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		DISCOUNT ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914. Jan. 1	To Bills Receivable	£ s. d. 5 0 0			

<i>Dr.</i>		BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914. May 7	To Cash	£ s. d. 50 0 0	1914. April 4	By A.	£ s. d. 50 0 0

NOTE.—The first bill fell due on the 4th April, 1914, and the second on the 7th May, 1914. The three days of grace allowed should be noted.

- (2) Where one person draws a bill on another party who accepts the same without valuable consideration. The bill is discounted by the drawer, who remits immediately half the proceeds to the acceptor, remitting the remaining half when the bill becomes due, each party sharing in the expenses of discount.

ILLUSTRATION—

For the mutual convenience of A. and B., A. draws a bill on B. for £100 at three months on 1st January, 1914. B. accepts the bill and returns it to A., who discounts the same with his bankers at 6 per cent., the arrangement being that A. and B. shall share the proceeds equally.

On the bill falling due A. remits his proportion, and the bill is met in due course by B. Show the entries as they would appear in the books of both A. and B.

A'S BOOKS.

<i>Dr.</i>		B'S ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914. Jan. 3	To Cash	£ s. d. 49 5 0	1914. Jan. 1	By Bills Receivable	£ s. d. 100 0 0
" 3	" Discount	15 0			
April 3	" Cash	50 0 0			
		£100 0 0			£100 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914. Jan. 1	To B.	£ s. d. 100 0 0	1914. Jan. 3	By Cash	£ s. d. 100 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		CASH BOOK.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 3	To Bills Receivable	100 0 0	Jan. 3	By Discount	1 10 0
April 3	„ Balance	15 0	„	„ B.	49 5 0
			April 3	„ B.	50 0 0
		<u>£100 15 0</u>			<u>£100 15 0</u>
			April 4	By Balance	15 0

<i>Dr.</i>		DISCOUNT ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 3	To Cash	1 10 0	Jan. 3	By B.	15 0

B.'S BOOKS.

<i>Dr.</i>		A.'S ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 1	To Bills Payable	100 0 0	Jan. 4	By Cash	49 5 0
			„	„ Discount	15 0
			April 4	„ Cash	50 0 0
		<u>£100 0 0</u>			<u>£100 0 0</u>

<i>Dr.</i>		BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
April 4	To Cash	100 0 0	Jan. 4	By A.	100 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		CASH BOOK.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 4	To A.	49 5 0	April 4	By Bills Payable	100 0 0
April 4	„ „	50 0 0			
„	„ Balance	15 0			
		<u>£100 0 0</u>			<u>£100 0 0</u>
			April 5	By Balance	15 0

<i>Dr.</i>		DISCOUNT ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
1914.		£ s. d.			
Jan. 4	To A.	15 0			

Note to Illustration.

When it is stated that a bill is discounted at a certain rate per cent., the addition of the words "per annum" is usually implied, and the calculation of the discount should be made on the term of the bill. In practice discount is calculated on the number of days including days of grace, but in these illustrations it has been calculated in months.

- (3) Where two parties each draw a bill of equal amount on the other, and discount the other's bill, meeting their own bills when they fall due, and paying the expenses of discounting each other's bill.

ILLUSTRATION—

On 1st January, 1914, A. draws a bill on B. at four months for £500, and B. draws on A. for a similar amount and term. Both bills are accepted and discounted respectively at 5 per cent. At maturity A. meets his own acceptance, but B.'s acceptance is dishonoured, with the result that A., the drawer, is called upon to take it up. The Bank charges expenses on the dishonoured bill 6s. 8d. B. then accepts a new bill at three months for the amount due by him, plus interest at 5 per cent. per annum, which is duly met at maturity.

Show the entries in the books of both parties.

A.'S BOOKS.

Dr.		B.'S ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 1	To Bills Payable	500 0 0	Jan. 1	By Bills Receivable ..	500 0 0
May 4	„ Cash: Bill dishonoured		May 4	„ „ „ ..	506 11 9
	and expenses	500 6 8			
	„ Interest	6 5 1			
		<u>£1,006 11 9</u>			<u>£1,006 11 9</u>

Dr.		BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 1	To B.	500 0 0	Jan. 1	By Cash	500 0 0
May 4	„ „	506 11 9	Aug. 7	„ „	506 11 9
		<u>£1,006 11 9</u>			<u>£1,006 11 9</u>

Dr.		BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
May 4	To Cash	500 0 0	Jan. 1	By B.	500 0 0

Dr.		CASH BOOK.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 1	To Bills Receivable	500 0 0	Jan. 1	By Discount	8 6 8
Aug. 7	„ „	506 11 9	May 4	„ Bills Payable	500 0 0
				„ B. Bill dishonoured and expenses	500 6 8

Dr.		DISCOUNT AND INTEREST ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.	£ s. d.	
Jan. 1	To Cash	8 6 8	May 4	By B.	6 5 1

B.'S BOOKS.

Dr.				A.'S ACCOUNT.				Cr.					
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Bills Payable	..	..	500	0	0	Jan. 1	By Bills Receivable ..	..	500	0	0
May 4	" " "	..	..	506	11	9	May 4	" Bills Payable ..	..	500	0	0
							"	" Interest and Expenses ..	..	6	11	9
				<u>£1,006 11 9</u>						<u>£1,006 11 9</u>			

<i>Dr.</i>				BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>					
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				£	s.	d.
May 4	To A.—Bill met by him ..			500	0	0	Jan. 1	By A.			500	0	0
Aug. 7	,, Cash			506	11	9	May 4	,, „			506	11	9
				<u>£1,006 11 9</u>							<u>£1,006 11 9</u>		

Dr.		BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.										Cr.				
1914.						£	s.	d.	1914.					£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To A.	..	..	..	..	500	0	0	Jan. 1	By Cash	..	..	..	500	0	0

<i>Dr.</i>				DISCOUNT, INTEREST AND EXPENSES ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>			
1914.				£	s.	d.					
Jan. 1	To Cash .. .. .	..	..	8	6	8					
May 4	" A. . . . .	..	..	6	11	9					

Dr.				CASH BOOK.				Cr.			
1914.				£	s.	d.	1914.				
Jan. 1	To Bills Receivable	..	..	500	0	0	Jan. 1	By Discount	..	..	8 6 8
							Aug. 7	„ Bills Payable	..	..	506 11 9

§ 6.—Dishonoured Bills, Retired Bills, Short Bills, &c.

(a) Dishonoured Bills.

Where a bill is not met at maturity by the acceptor, it is termed "dishonoured," and the entry in the books of the drawer will then be to credit the Bills Receivable Account and debit the Acceptor.

If the bill has been discounted by the drawer in the meanwhile, and is dishonoured at maturity, the drawer will debit the acceptor and credit cash, if he has discounted with his Bank, or otherwise the personal account of the party with whom he discounted the bill.

Any expenses incurred in noting or protesting the bill are chargeable against the acceptor. The expenses of discounting the bill, however, cannot be charged against the acceptor. The acceptor's account in the drawer's books will be debited with any cash discount which may have been credited to his account on giving the bill, as the condition of allowing such discount was that the bill should be honoured at maturity. This discount must not be confused with the expenses of discounting the bill itself.

Where a bill in the hands of a holder in due course is dishonoured, he will debit the account of the person from whom he received it, and credit Bills Receivable Account.

(b) Retired Bills.

It occasionally happens that a person accepts a bill, and subsequently discovers that it will be inconvenient or impossible for him to meet such bill at maturity, and consequently he approaches the drawer of the bill, and endeavours to make arrangements for the withdrawal of the original bill and the substitution of another in its place, thus giving himself additional time wherewith to find the money required. In such cases interest is usually charged by the drawer for the convenience afforded.

(c) Short Bills.

This is a term given to bills which have been paid into the Bank for collection to await maturity. They must not be confused with discounted bills, and no entry will be made in the books whatever, except by way of memoranda. It frequently happens, however, that for the sake of convenience in the book-keeping, separate bill accounts are kept for the various collecting Banks, which are debited with all bills paid in for collection, the accounts being credited when the bills are met or dishonoured. It should be remembered, however, that the Banks are not debtors for these bills, but only hold them for safe custody.

Under no circumstances should a short bill paid into a Bank for collection be entered in the Cash Book unless there is a special bill column.

(d) Discounted Bills.

The process of discounting a bill is to all intents and purposes equivalent to the sale of a bill for its present worth, subject to its being met at maturity, the use of the money being thus obtained before the due date.

The consideration for so obtaining the money in advance is termed "discount," and is based, in the case of good bills, upon the rates ruling at the date of discounting. This discount has no connection with cash discount or trade discount, and must not be confused therewith, and is more in the nature of interest.

The entries in the books will be to debit Cash and Discount and credit Bills Receivable Account. In many cases the Banks will credit their customers with the face value of the bill, and charge the discount *per contra*. In such an event the bill will be entered in the Cash Book at its full amount, and the discount will be shown as a payment on the credit side, and posted to the Discount Account.

A contingent liability remains on discounted bills until the same mature and are met, since if such a bill is dishonoured the holder has a right of recourse against the drawer. This point is further discussed in Chapter VIII., § 15 (b).

(e) Documentary Bills.

Where goods are exported, the general method of obtaining payment therefor is as follows:—The goods in accordance with the order will be delivered to a Shipping Company, and Bills of Lading will be obtained in respect thereof.

A *Bill of Lading* is a Contract of Affreightment stating the terms upon which the goods are to be carried, acting as a receipt for the goods, and also as a document of title to the goods. Three copies are prepared, one kept by the Ship, and two handed to the Consignor, who will forward one to the Consignee.

Where, however, the seller of the goods wishes to obtain payment before the goods are actually delivered, he will draw upon the Consignee for the value of the goods, and attach to the draft a copy of the invoice

and the Bills of Lading. Such a bill is termed a *Documentary Bill*. He will hand these documents to his Banker, who in turn will forward them to his own correspondent at the place where the Consignee of the goods resides. The Consignee, to enable him to get the goods, must have the Bill of Lading, and he cannot get this unless he meets the bill.

As a general rule the fact that a bill has been drawn upon him is notified, and if he accepts such bill before the arrival of the goods he will accept conditionally "cash against documents."

The English Banker, upon receiving notification from his correspondent that the bill has been met, will credit the seller of the goods therewith, subject to his collecting charges.

Alternatively the bill may be discounted in the first instance, the same procedure being followed.

Where goods are imported, payment is usually effected in a similar manner.

(f) Rebated Bills.

In some cases bills are met before the due date, usually for the purpose of obtaining possession of the goods or documents, which cannot be released until the bill is discharged. Where this is done a rebate is allowed, representing interest on the amount of the bill for the period unexpired, based upon the current rate of discount. Such rebate will go to the credit of the Interest or Discount Account, and to the debit of the Bills Payable Account, making, with the actual cash paid, the full amount of the bill.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER VII.

PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS.

- § 1.—PARTNERSHIP DEEDS, AND THEIR RELATION TO THE ACCOUNTS.
- 2.—THE USUAL ADJUSTMENTS NECESSARY IN PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS.
- (a) Interest on Capital.
 - (b) Interest on Drawings.
 - (c) Partners' Salaries.
- 3.—PARTNERS' FIXED CAPITAL ACCOUNTS, CURRENT ACCOUNTS, AND LOAN ACCOUNTS.
- (a) Partners' Fixed Capital and Current Accounts.
 - (b) Partners' Loan Accounts.
- 4.—THE ADJUSTMENT OF PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS UNDER SINGLE ENTRY.
- 5.—GOODWILL IN PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS.
- (a) Definition of Goodwill.
 - (b) Methods of treating Goodwill in the case of an Incoming Partner.
 - (c) Goodwill affecting Outgoing Partners.
 - (d) Life Assurance Policies to provide for part payment of Goodwill.
 - (e) Goodwill on the Sale of a Partnership Business to a Company.
 - (f) Treatment of the Goodwill Account in the books of a Partnership.
- 6.—OUTGOING PARTNERS.
- (a) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., by Instalments.
 - (b) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., with Interest from date of realisation of Assets.
 - (c) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., by way of an Annuity.
- 7.—SLEEPING, QUASI, AND LIMITED PARTNERS.

8.—DISSOLUTION OF PARTNERSHIPS.

- (a) The application of section 44 of the Partnership Act, 1890.
- (b) Formula for closing the Partnership books on Dissolution.
 - (1) Where there is a profit on the realisation of the assets.
 - (2) Where liabilities are paid in full, but there is a loss on the realisation of the assets.
 - (3) Where there is a loss on the realisation of the assets, placing one partner's capital account in debit temporarily, obliging him to bring in cash to that extent.
 - (4) Where there is a loss on the realisation of the assets, placing one partner's capital account permanently in debit, he being insolvent, and the rule in *Garner v. Murray* being applied.
- (c) Dissolution of Partnership on agreed terms.
- (d) Dissolution of Partnership by death or bankruptcy.
- (e) Dissolution of Partnership by conversion into a Limited Company.

9.—JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNTS.

- (a) Where a separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture.
- (b) Where no separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture.

10.—MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS IN PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS.

- (a) Proportion of one Partner's share borne personally by another.
- (b) Readjustment of Partners' shares over a period of years.
- (c) Adjustment in accounts where Interest on Capital has been omitted.
- (d) Share of one Partner guaranteed at a fixed minimum.

CHAPTER VII.

PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—Partnership Deeds, and their Relation to the Accounts.

Partnership, as defined by the Partnership Act, 1890, is the relation which subsists between persons carrying on business in common with a view of profit.

The essence of partnership is “mutual agreement,” and partnerships at will can, and often do, exist without there being any written agreement or deed. As a rule, however, partnership deeds are drawn up, clearly setting out the facts of the agreement between the partners, and containing provisions for the avoidance of disputes, and to facilitate settlements in the event of death or dissolution. Notwithstanding the existence of a deed, the provisions thereof can be varied or overruled by mutual agreement between the partners.

It is only in cases where insufficient provision is made in the deed, or there is an absence of mutual agreement, that it is necessary to apply the Partnership Act, 1890, and the decisions thereunder, to settle points at issue.

Owing to the conflicting legal decisions on the interpretation of the Partnership Act, 1890, in connection with questions of account, it is most advisable that every deed should specify the precise way in which such matters are to be dealt with.

(a) **Clauses relating to Accounts in Partnership Deeds.**

The general provisions affecting questions of account that should be contained in all deeds, apart from any special circumstances, are as follows :—

- (1) As to capital, and whether each partner should contribute a fixed amount or otherwise.

- (2) As to the division of profits and losses between the partners, including capital profits and losses.
- (3) Whether the capitals are to be fixed, drawings and profits being adjusted in current accounts, or whether the same are to be adjusted in the capital accounts.
- (4) Whether interest on capital or drawings or both should be charged, and the rate thereof.
- (5) Whether current accounts (if any) are to bear interest, and the rate thereof.
- (6) Whether the drawings in advance of profits are to be limited.
- (7) As to partners' salaries (if any).
- (8) That proper accounts shall be drawn out at least once a year (all assets of a fluctuating nature being brought in at a valuation), and that the same shall be audited by a professional Accountant, and signed by all the partners.
- (9) That such accounts shall be binding on the partners, but can be reopened in the case of manifest error within a specified period.
- (10) That the method of determining the amount of goodwill in the event of the retirement or death of any one of the partners shall be fixed.
- (11) That in the event of the death of a partner the method of determining his capital shall be stated, whether he is to be entitled to his capital as per the last Balance Sheet, plus interest at a certain rate per cent. in lieu of profits, or whether accounts are to be taken at the date of death, and his share of profits up to that date credited, and whether or not the assets of the partnership are to be subject to revaluation.
- (12) That in the event of partnership insurance policies existing, the method of treating the premiums and the division of the policy money shall be determined.

(b) Rules relating to Partnership Accounts in the absence of Agreement.

It should be remembered that § 24 of the Partnership Act, 1890, provides that in the absence of mutual agreement—

- (1) Partners are entitled to share equally in the capital and profits, and are required to contribute equally to the losses, whether of capital or otherwise.
- (2) Partners are entitled to 5 per cent. interest on advances as apart from capital.
- (3) Partners are not entitled before ascertainment of profits to any interest on capital.
- (4) Partners are not entitled to remuneration for acting in the partnership business, either by way of salary or otherwise.

The rules as to the treatment of accounts on dissolution are dealt with in § 8 of this Chapter.

§ 2.—The usual Adjustments necessary in Partnership Accounts.

Before ascertaining the amount of divisible profits, the following adjustments are frequently necessary in order to adjust the rights of the partners *inter se* :—

(a) Interest on Capital.

By charging interest at a fixed rate, usually 5 per cent. per annum, in respect of the capital employed in a business, it can be seen whether the profits are sufficient (after charging an amount which represents the earning value of the money invested in the business) to justify the continuation thereof with unlimited liability to each of the partners. Apart from this, however, the object of charging interest on capital, where there are two or more partners in a business, is to adjust the rights of the partners *inter se* as regards capital, thus giving the one holding the larger proportion an advantage in respect thereof prior to the division of profits. In those cases where the capitals are fixed, and the shares of profits are in exact proportion to the capitals, the effect of charging interest will make no difference to the ultimate amount which will be credited to each partner, but it is advisable to do so for the first reason mentioned above.

Interest on capital will be calculated on the figure at the commencement of the period, and allowance must be made for any additions of capital or withdrawals therefrom during the period, interest being worked from the exact dates thereof. The Partners' Capital or Current Accounts will be credited with the amount of interest, and interest on Capital Account debited.

The precise effect of omitting to charge interest on capital is as follows :—

- (1) If the capitals are equal, and the partners share profits unequally, the partner entitled to the smaller share of profit will lose.
- (2) If the partners share profits equally, but the capitals are unequal, the partner with the larger capital will lose.
- (3) Where the capitals are unequal, and the partners share profits unequally, the result to the partners depends upon the proportion in which the profits are shared, and the respective amounts of capital held by them.

(b) Interest on Drawings.

Frequently partners' drawings are irregular, and in such cases, if interest thereon is charged, the rights of the partners are exactly adjusted. In numerous cases, however, no interest is charged at all, and the drawings take place by mutual agreement.

Where interest is charged it will be calculated at a fixed rate per cent. from the date of each drawing to the date the accounts are closed, being credited to Interest on Drawings Account and debited to the Partners' Drawing Accounts. A very convenient method of calculating this interest is by finding the average date, and taking interest therefrom up to the close of the period. An illustration of how to ascertain average date is given in Chapter V., § 7.

(c) Partners' Salaries.

There are several cases where it should be agreed to charge partners' salaries before division of profits, and the most important of these are :—

- (1) Where one or more of the partners leave the entire or greater part of the management of the business to the remaining partner or partners.

- (2) Where there are junior partners, it is often arranged that their share from the business shall consist of a fixed salary, plus a small percentage of the profits after charging such salary.
- (3) Where neither of the above cases are operative, but it is desired that the business shall be charged with a proper amount representing the management services of the partners.

The amounts agreed upon as salary should be debited to the Profit and Loss Account, and credited to the Partners' Current or Capital Accounts, as the case may be, unless the same are paid regularly in cash, when they may be debited direct to the nominal account.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the Trial Balance of Messrs. A., B. and C., as at 31st December, 1913. Profits and Losses are shared—A. half, B. one-third, C. one-sixth. Prepare Trading and Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet.

Capital—	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
A.				10,000	0	0
B.				6,000	0	0
C.				2,000	0	0
Drawing Accounts—						
A.	1,500	0	0			
B.	600	0	0			
C.	200	0	0			
Salary Accounts—						
B.	500	0	0			
C.	200	0	0			
Sales				33,000	0	0
Purchases	6,000	0	0			
Loan on Mortgage				3,000	0	0
Machinery and Plant	4,500	0	0			
Land, Buildings, &c.	6,000	0	0			
Creditors				1,500	0	0
Wages	14,000	0	0			
Salaries	1,000	0	0			
Debtors	7,500	0	0			
Trade Expenses	750	0	0			
Travellers' Commission and Expenses	1,400	0	0			
Rates and Taxes	120	0	0			
Bills Receivable	900	0	0			
Bad Debt Reserve Account				200	0	0
Insurance	30	0	0			
Bad Debts	150	0	0			
Carriage Inwards	200	0	0			
" Outwards	250	0	0			
Stock 31st December, 1912	6,000	0	0			
Cash at Bank	875	0	0			
" on Deposit	3,000	0	0			
" in Hand	25	0	0			
	£55,700	0	0	£55,700	0	0

Charge Depreciation on Land and Buildings at $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.

 " " Machinery, &c., at 5 per cent.

 " Interest on Capital at 5 per cent.

 " Interest on Drawings at 4 per cent.

Average dates of Drawings—A. 30th June; B. 31st May; C. 15th November.

Provide Interest on Loan one year at 5 per cent.

Adjust the Bad Debt Reserve Account to 4 per cent. on the Outstanding Debtors.

Stock 31st December, 1913, £5,000.

Dr.

BALANCE SHEET, 31st December, 1913.

Cr.

[illegible]

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr.

for the year ending 31st December, 1913.

Cr.

To Stock 31st Dec., 1912	£	s.	d.	By Sales	£	s.	d.
" Purchases	6,000	0	0	" Stock 31st Dec., 1913	33,000	0	0
" Wages	6,000	0	0		5,000	0	0
" Carriage Inwards	14,000	0	0				
" Balance, being Gross Profit	200	0	0				
	11,800	0	0				
	£38,000	0	0		£38,000	0	0
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Salaries	1,000	0	0	By Balance	11,800	0	0
" Partners' Salaries	700	0	0	" Interest on Drawings—			
" Trade Expenses	750	0	0	A.	£30		
" Travellers' Commission, &c.	1,400	0	0	B.	14		
" Insurance	30	0	0	C.	1		
" Rates and Taxes	120	0	0				
" Carriage Outwards	250	0	0				
" Depreciation	375	0	0				
" Interest on Loan	150	0	9				
" Bad Debts	250	0	0				
" Interest on Capital—							
A.	£500						
B.	300						
C.	100						
	900	0	0				
" Balance, being net profit	5,920	0	0				
	£11,845	0	0		£11,845	0	0
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Capital Accounts—				By Balance	5,920	0	0
A. one-half	2,960	0	0				
B. one-third	1,973	6	8				
C. one-sixth	986	13	4				
	5,920	0	0				
	£5,920	0	0		£5,920	0	0

§ 3.—Partners' Fixed Capital Accounts, Current Accounts and Loan Accounts.

(a) Partners' Fixed Capital and Current Accounts.

In many cases the Partnership Deed fixes the amount of capital to be contributed by each partner, and it is very usual in practice to find the capital accounts kept at this figure, all profits, interest on capital, partners' salaries and drawings being dealt with through current accounts, the balances of which are carried forward from time to time, and may or may not be subject to interest. Where they are subject to interest, this is generally at a lower rate than on the capitals.

This method of keeping the accounts should always be adopted, since it enables a clear distinction to be shown in the accounts between capital and accumulations of undrawn profit.

(b) Partners' Loan Accounts.

Where a partner advances money to the firm, it is extremely important that a separate loan account should be kept in respect thereof, as under the Partnership Act, 1890, loans from partners have priority over capital on dissolution. The interest on such loans should therefore not be credited to the capital accounts, but to the current or loan accounts, and should preferably be settled in cash.

ILLUSTRATION—

Prepare Trading and Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet, from the following Trial Balance of Messrs. X., Y., Z. and Co., Engineers, as at 31st March, 1914.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Trade Expenses	550	0	0			
Wages	1,250	0	0			
Salaries	175	0	0			
Rent and Rates	145	0	0			
Purchases	8,350	0	0			
Sales				12,110	0	0
Commission	78	0	0			
Bad Debts	35	0	0			
Discount				20	0	0
Plant and Tools 31st March, 1913	1,550	0	0			
Stock	1,630	0	0			
Cash at Bank	1,506	0	0			
Office Furniture	200	0	0			
Sundry Debtors	2,750	0	0			
„ Creditors				1,670	0	0
Cash in Hand	7	0	0			
Capital Accounts—						
X.				2,000	0	0
Y.				1,500	0	0
Z.				1,200	0	0
X. Loan Account				1,000	0	0
Current Accounts—						
X.	570	0	0			
Y.	400	0	0			
Z.	304	0	0			
	£19,500	0	0	£19,500	0	0

Make provision for the following :—

	£
Three days' Wages	33
Trade Expenses	18
Audit Fee	35
Bad Debts	40
Discounts	55

10 per cent. Depreciation on Furniture.

5 per cent. Interest on Capital.

5 per cent. Interest on Loan from X. for one year.

Stock at 31st March, 1914, amounted to £1,903, and an account taken of the Plant and Tools amounted to £1,700.

Profits and Losses to be divided equally, the Capital Accounts being fixed.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr.

for the Year ending 31st March, 1914.

Cr.

1913. April 1	To Stock £1,630 " Plant and Tools .. 1,550	£ s. d. 3,180 0 0	1914. Mar. 31	By Sales " Stock £1,903 " Plant & Tools 1,700	£ s. d. 12,110 0 0 3,603 0 0
1914. Mar. 31	" Purchases " Wages (£1,250 + £33) .. " Balance, being Gross Profit	8,350 0 0 1,283 0 0 2,900 0 0			
		£15,713 0 0			£15,713 0 0
	To Trade Expenses (£550 + £18) " Salaries " Rent and Rates " Commission " Bad Debts (£35 + £40) .. " Discount (£55—£20) .. " Depreciation on Furniture " Audit Fee " Interest on Loan " " " Capital :— X. " " .. £100 Y. " " .. 75 Z. " " .. 60	£ s. d. 568 0 0 175 0 0 145 0 0 78 0 0 75 0 0 35 0 0 20 0 0 35 0 0 50 0 0 235 0 0 1,484 0 0		By Balance	£ s. d. 2,900 0 0
	" Balance, being Net Profit	£2,900 0 0			£2,900 0 0
	To Current Accounts :— X. one-third Y. one-third Z. one-third	£ s. d. 494 13 4 494 13 4 494 13 4		By Balance	£ s. d. 1,484 0 0
		£1,484 0 0			£1,484 0 0

mencement, together with full particulars of all partners' dealings during the period, in the shape of drawings on account of profit, and additions to, or withdrawals from, capital, loans, &c.

The methods necessary to arrive at profits on this basis are fully dealt with in Chapter I., § 5, and it is not necessary to recapitulate them here.

Great care must be exercised, where there is no Cash Book kept, to see that all partners' drawings, &c., have been brought into account.

Once the profit has been ascertained, the adjustment in respect of interest on capital, salaries, &c., if any, as between the partners can very easily be made, and the final balances on their capital or current accounts ascertained.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. and B. are in partnership, sharing profits and losses, two-thirds and one-third respectively. The books are kept on a Single Entry system, and their Statement of Affairs, dated 31st December, 1913, showed their position to be as follows:—

A. AND B.

Dr.	STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS, 31st December, 1913.			Cr.
	£	s.	d.	
To Capitals—				
A.	10,000	0	0	
B.	4,000	0	0	
„ Creditors	5,000	0	0	
„ Loan	1,000	0	0	
„ Bills Payable	500	0	0	
	£20,500	0	0	
				By Freehold Buildings
				Plant and Machinery
				Office Furniture
				Stock
				Debtors
				Bills Receivable
				Cash
				£20,500
				0
				0

On the 31st December, 1914, the books disclosed the following facts:—Debtors £8,000, Creditors on Open Account £8,500, Creditors on Loan Account £1,600, and Cash £800. The Stock was valued at £4,200, and the Bills Receivable amounted to £1,400.

An examination of the Cash Book showed that during the year A. had drawn on account of profits £1,500 and B. £600. A. had in addition withdrawn £2,000 on account of capital on the 30th June, 1914.

The Partners agree to reduce the previous valuation of the Plant and Machinery by 5 per cent. and the Office Furniture by 10 per cent., by way of depreciation, and to charge 5 per cent. by way of Interest on Capital.

Show—

- (1) A Statement of Profit, dividing the balance between A. and B.
 (2) A Statement of Affairs showing the position as at 31st December, 1914.

Dr.		STATEMENT OF PROFIT, 31st December, 1914.				Cr.	
		£	s.	d.			
To Creditors	8,500	0	0	By Freehold Buildings	£	£	
„ Loan	1,600	0	0	„ Plant and Machinery .. 2,000	6,000	0	
„ Capitals 1st Jan., 1914—				Less Depreciation 5% .. 100		0	
A.	10,000	0	0		1,900	0	
B.	4,000	0	0	„ Office Furniture	500	0	
Balance, being Profit.. ..	2,750	0	0	Less Depreciation 10% .. 50		0	
					450	0	
				„ Stock	4,200	0	
				„ Debtors	8,000	0	
				„ Bills Receivable	1,400	0	
				„ Cash	800	0	
				„ Partners' Drawings—			
				A. on A/c of Capital .. 2,000			
				„ „ Profits .. 1,500			
					3,500	0	
				B. „ „ Profits	600	0	
					£26,850	0	
					£	s.	
To Interest on Capital—				By Balance	2,750	0	
A. 5% on £10,000 for 6 months							
and 5% on £8,000 for 6 months	450	0	0				
B. 5% on £4,000	200	0	0				
„ Profit—							
A. two-thirds	1,400	0	0				
B. one-third	700	0	0				
					£2,750	0	

A. AND B.

Dr.		STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS, 31st December, 1914.				Cr.	
		£		s. d.			
To Capitals :—						£ s. d.	
A. Balance 1st Jan., 1914		£10,000				6,000	0 0
Add Interest on Capital		450					
,, Profit		1,400				1,900	0 0
		11,850					
Less Drawings—						450	0 0
On Capital A/c .. £2,000						4,200	0 0
,, Profit A/c .. 1,500						8,000	0 0
		3,500				1,400	0 0
			8,350	0	0	800	0 0
B. Balance 1st Jan., 1914		4,000					
Add Interest on Capital ..		200					
,, Profit		700					
		4,900					
Less Drawings		600					
			4,300	0	0		
,, Creditors :—							
On Open Account.. ..			8,500	0	0		
,, Loan			1,600	0	0		
			£22,750	0	0		
						£22,750	0 0

§ 5.—Goodwill in Partnership Accounts.

(a) Definition of Goodwill.

Goodwill may be defined as the value attaching to the reputation of a business, and to the likelihood that custom will continue to be attracted in the future as in the past, notwithstanding change in the proprietorship. Goodwill may originate, broadly speaking, in one of three ways, or a combination of them :—

- (1) By means of the reputation of the article produced as apart from the personality of the proprietors.
- (2) By means of the business possessing special advantages in the shape of local or partial monopoly, patents, trade marks, situation of premises, &c.
- (3) By the personal reputation and influence of the proprietors.

The value of Goodwill is usually based on the average profits for a term of years from three to five, but in many cases, as for example retail shops, it is based on the turnover. In the case of a Partnership Goodwill based mainly on the question of personal reputation, the value from a purchasing point of view is greatly dependent on whether the retiring owner is going out of the business, or whether he or some of his partners are continuing.

(b) Methods of treating Goodwill in the case of an Incoming Partner.

There are various ways in which Goodwill may be treated on the occasion of an incoming partner, but the following or a combination of them are the most usual :—

- (1) An amount is raised in the old firm's books to represent Goodwill, being credited to the old partners' capital accounts in proportion as they share profits or losses, and debited to a Goodwill Account. The new partner then may or may not bring in capital according to the agreement. In any event, whatever he does bring in will go to the credit of his capital account. The effect of this method is to increase the old partners' capital accounts, thus giving them an advantage over the incoming partner in respect of capital and interest thereon.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the Balance Sheet of the firm of A. and B., who share profits, two-thirds and one-third respectively.

A. AND B.

Dr.		BALANCE SHEET.		Cr.	
To Capital Accounts :—		£	s. d.	By Land and Buildings ..	
A.	£8,500			" Plant and Machinery ..	
B.	3,500			" Stock-in-Trade ..	
		12,000	0 0	" Book Debts.. ..	
				" Less Reserve	
„ Sundry Creditors		3,975	0 0	£3,000	
				150	
				2,850 0 0	
				300 0 0	
		£15,975	0 0	£15,975 0 0	

They agree to admit C. into partnership, giving him a one-fifth share on the terms that Goodwill to the extent of £1,200 is first to be credited to the old partners according to their share of profits; C. then to bring in Capital to the extent of one-quarter of the combined capitals of A. and B. after adjustment. A. and B.'s proportions of profit in the new firm are to be in the same ratio between themselves as before.

Show Journal entries recording these transactions, and prepare the Balance Sheet of the new firm, assuming C. to have brought in the requisite cash, stating the proportion in which profits will be divided in future.

JOURNAL.

Goodwill	Dr.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
To A. Capital Account		1,200	0 0	800	0 0
B.				400	0 0
Being creation of Goodwill as agreed on admittance of C. into partnership.					
Cash	Dr.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
To C. Capital Account		3,300	0 0	3,300	0 0
Being Capital brought in, one-fourth of £12,000 and £1,200.					

A., B. AND C.

Dr.		BALANCE SHEET.		Cr.	
To Capital Accounts—		£	s. d.	By Goodwill	
A.	£8,500			" Land and Buildings	
Add Goodwill	800			" Plant and Machinery	
		9,300	0 0	" Stock-in-Trade	
B.	3,500			" Book Debts	
Add Goodwill	400			" Less Reserve	
		3,900	0 0	£3,000	
C.		3,300	0 0	150	
„ Sundry Creditors		3,975	0 0	2,850 0 0	
				3,600 0 0	
		£20,475	0 0	£20,475 0 0	

C. getting one-fifth of the profits, the remaining four-fifths must be divided — $\frac{2}{5} \times \frac{2}{3}$ to A. = $\frac{4}{15}$
 $\frac{2}{5} \times \frac{1}{3}$ to B. = $\frac{2}{15}$
 leaving $\frac{1}{5}$ to C. = $\frac{1}{5}$ } = $\frac{1}{5}$

Note to Illustration.

It should be noted that when Goodwill is created in this way the amount is credited to the old partners in the proportion in which they share profits and losses, and not in proportion to their capitals, the argument being that the partner who takes the larger share of the profits is supposed to have the greater influence, and consequently to have created the larger share of the Goodwill. No proportion of this Goodwill must be credited to the new partner, since at the date of his joining the firm he has had no share in creating it. If the new partner brings in any Goodwill of his own by way of personal connection, this is taken into consideration in determining his share of profits.

- (2) An amount is fixed representing the proportion of goodwill which the incoming partner is about to purchase, and which he has to contribute in cash in addition to any capital which he may or may not be required to bring in, the cash so brought in remaining in the business to form additional working capital. In such a case the cash will be debited, and the old partners' capital accounts credited, in the proportion in which they share profits or losses, the cash brought in as capital by the new partner being credited to his capital account. It will be noted that under this method no asset account representing goodwill will appear in the new partnership books, the amount paid by the incoming partner merely representing premium paid by him to the old partners for the privilege of being admitted into the firm.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the Balance Sheet of the firm of A. and B., who share profits, two-thirds and one-third respectively :—

A. AND B.			
Dr.	BALANCE SHEET.		Cr.
To Capital Accounts—		£	s. d.
A.	£7,400		
B.	5,000		
		12,400	0 0
„ Creditors		4,000	0 0
„ General Reserve		1,500	0 0
		£17,900	0 0
By Freehold Buildings.. ..		£	s. d.
„ Office Furniture		4,620	0 0
„ Stock-in-Trade		400	0 0
„ Debtors		3,800	0 0
„ Bills Receivable		6,080	0 0
„ Cash at Bank		2,400	0 0
		£17,900	0 0

They agree to admit C. into partnership on condition that he pays a sum of £2,400 (to be left in the business) for a quarter share of the Goodwill, and brings in £4,000 Capital.

A. and B. on their part agree to allow £900 of the General Reserve to remain as a provision for Bad Debts, and also to allow 5 per cent. off the Freehold Buildings and 15 per cent. off the Office Furniture.

Show by Journal entry the necessary adjustments, and prepare a Balance Sheet of the new partnership, assuming that C. has fulfilled his obligations to the firm.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Cash ..	2,400	0	0			
To Capital Accounts:—						
A. two-thirds ..				1,600	0	0
B. one-third ..				800	0	0
Being payment by C. for a quarter share in the Goodwill.						
Cash ..	4,000	0	0			
To C. Capital Account ..				4,000	0	0
Being Capital introduced by C.						
General Reserve Account ..	600	0	0			
To Capital Accounts:—						
A. ..				400	0	0
B. ..				200	0	0
Being Transfer from General Reserve Account to leave balance on that account of £900 as reserve for Bad Debts.						
Capital Accounts —						
A. ..	194	0	0			
B. ..	97	0	0			
To Sundry Assets—						
Freehold Buildings ..				231	0	0
Office Furniture ..				60	0	0
	£291	0	0	£291	0	0
Being provision for Depreciation on Freehold Buildings at 5% and on Office Furniture @ 15%.						

NOTE.—These Journal entries could be combined, but for the sake of clearness they have been shown separately.

A., B. AND C.
BALANCE SHEET.

Dr.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	Cr.
To Capital Accounts:—				By Freehold Buildings ..	£4,620			
A. £9,206				Less Depreciation 5% ..	231			
B. 5,903								4,389 0 0
C. 4,000				Office Furniture ..	400			
	19,109	0	0	Less Depreciation 15% ..	60			
„ Creditors	4,000	0	0					340 0 0
				„ Stock-in-Trade				3,800 0 0
				„ Debtors	6,080			
				„ Less Reserve	900			
								5,180 0 0
				„ Bills Receivable				2,400 0 0
				„ Cash at Bank				7,000 0 0
	£23,109	0	0					£23,109 0 0

- (3) The third method is precisely similar to the second, with the exception that the money paid by the incoming partner for goodwill is not left in the business as working capital, but is paid to the old partners personally in proportion as they share profits and losses. In this case there will be no entries in the books, unless, as frequently happens, the amount is first paid into the firm's account and then withdrawn, in order to keep some record of the transaction. Naturally this method is the least advantageous of all to the incoming partner, as the money which he furnishes for goodwill is not utilised for the general benefit of the business.

(c) Goodwill affecting Outgoing Partners.

Where a partner retires or dies, it is usual in most cases for his share of the goodwill to be determined, either according to the terms of the original agreement or by valuation, and such an amount to be credited to his capital account as represents his proportion thereof according to his share of the profits.

An alternative arrangement is sometimes made whereby the representatives of the deceased partner receive, in lieu of an amount representing his share of the goodwill, an annuity, or a proportion of the profits, for a certain term of years.

(d) Life Assurance Policies to provide for part-payment of Goodwill.

It is becoming very customary for partners to effect assurance on their own lives, either jointly or severally, for the purpose of providing ready cash to pay out either the whole or a portion of a deceased partner's share of goodwill, and in many cases this arrangement is applied to capital also. One of the principal advantages of this method is to afford a means of immediate payment of at least a portion of the amount due without straining the financial arrangements of the business, it being frequently arranged to pay the balance (if any) by instalments with interest. This is particularly advantageous where the surviving partner or partners may not be in a position to introduce a large sum of additional capital at a moment's notice for the purpose of paying out the deceased partner's share.

There are various ways of dealing with the premiums paid in respect of these policies, but the following system is the one recommended:—

The premiums paid should be charged to the Profit and Loss Account of the firm as a business expense, and in the event of the death of one of the assured the policy money should be divided in the proportion in which the partners share profits or losses, and credited to their capital accounts, the deceased partner's capital account being credited with his share of the policy money. It should be noted that this amount does not in any way represent the deceased partner's share of goodwill, but is additional to it, and the object of the procedure is chiefly to provide ready cash.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. and B. are in partnership, sharing profits in the proportion of two-thirds and one-third respectively, and in order to provide a ready means of immediate payment of a portion of the amount due to either of them, in the event of decease, in respect of both Capital and Goodwill, an assurance was effected on their lives jointly for £9,000 without profits, at an annual premium of £350, which was charged each year to the Profit and Loss Account.

A. died on the 31st March, 1914, three months after the annual accounts had been prepared, and, in accordance with the Partnership Deed, his share of the profits to the date of death was estimated on the exact basis of the profits for the preceding year. In addition to this the Deed of Partnership provided for Interest on Capital at 5 per cent. per annum on the balance standing to the credit of the Capital Account at the date of the last Balance Sheet, and also for Goodwill, which was to be brought into account at two years' purchase of the average profits for the last three years, prior to charging the above-mentioned insurance premiums, but after charging Interest on Capital.

A.'s Capital on the 31st December, 1913, stood at £12,000, and his drawings from then to the date of death amounted to £900.

The net profits of the business for the three years ending 31st December, 1911–1913, amounted to £3,000, £3,800, and £3,700 respectively, after charging Interest on Capital and Insurance Premiums.

You are instructed to adjust A.'s Capital Account as at the date of death for a settlement with his Executors.

Dr.				A'S CAPITAL ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
				£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	
To Drawings	..	..	..	900	0	0	By Balance	12 000	0	0	
„ Balance..	..	..	..	23,000	0	0	„ Interest on Capital 5% for 3 months	150	0	0	
							„ Profit to date of death	616	13	4	
							„ Goodwill	5,133	6	8	
							„ Insurance Policy, two-thirds of £9,000	6,000	0	0	
								£23,900	0	0	
							By Balance	£23,000	0	0	

Note to Illustration.

The figure for Goodwill is arrived at as follows:—

Profit 1911	£3,000+	Insurance Premium	£350	=	£	s.	d.
" 1912	3,800+	"	" 350	=	3,350	0	0
" 1913	3,700+	"	" 350	=	4,150	0	0
					4,050	0	0
					3) 11,550	0	0.
		Three years' average profit			3,850	0	0
						2	
		Total amount of Goodwill			£7,700	0	0

A.'s Share = two-thirds of £7,700 = £5,133 6s. 8d.

(e) Goodwill on the Sale of a Partnership Business to a Company.

Where a Partnership business is sold to a Limited Company, the Company usually has to pay, in addition to the purchase price of the actual assets, a sum for Goodwill. Such an amount represents a profit, and will be transferred to the partners' capital accounts in proportion as they share profits and losses. Goodwill of this nature, as far as it relates to the Company and affects the Company's books, will be dealt with in Chapter VIII., § 10.

(f) The Treatment of the Goodwill Account in the Books of a Partnership.

Where an asset of Goodwill is created in Partnership Accounts, it is advisable and financially prudent to write the same down over a period of years, though whether or not this is done depends upon the agreement between the partners.

If at the time Goodwill has to be brought into account, owing to the death or retirement of a partner, or for any other reason, there already exists an asset representing Goodwill in the firm's books, only that proportion of the excess of the new valuation over the old book figure should be credited to the partners in the proportions in which they share profits and losses.

It is not, however, necessary to increase the Goodwill Account by more than the outgoing partner's share, unless it is desired by the other partners to do so.

ILLUSTRATION—

A., B. and C. are in partnership sharing profits, five-twelfths, four-twelfths, and three-twelfths respectively. At the time C. was admitted a Goodwill Account was raised in the firm's books amounting to £1,200. B. dies, the Goodwill Account still standing at the same figure. Under the Partnership Deed on the death of any partner his share of the Goodwill is to be valued at one-half of the share of profits credited to his account during the last three completed years. The firm's accounts for that period show profits of £3,900, £4,500 and £4,200 respectively. Ascertain what further amount should be credited to B. in respect of his share of Goodwill, and make the necessary Journal entry, the remaining partners not taking into account their shares.

Profit 1st year	£	3,900
" 2nd "	4,500	
" 3rd "	4,200	
Firm's profits for three years	£12,600	
Total value of Goodwill	$\frac{12,600}{2} =$	£6,300
B.'s share of Goodwill	$\frac{6,300 \times 4}{12} =$	£2,100
Amount required to raise Goodwill Account to £6,300 = 6,300 — 1,200 = £5,100.		
B.'s share thereof	$\frac{5,100 \times 4}{12} =$	£1,700.

JOURNAL.

Goodwill Account	DR.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To B. Capital Account		1,700	0	0	1,700	0	0
Being amount required which taken with $\frac{1}{12} \times 1,200$, the amount already standing to Goodwill Account will raise B.'s share to £2,100.							

NOTE.—The Goodwill Account will then stand at £2,900.

§ 6.—Outgoing Partners.

(a) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., by Instalments.

Where a partner retires or dies, his Capital and his share of the Goodwill, &c., is ascertained either in accordance with the provisions of the original deed, or by accounts taken at the date of the dissolution, and the amount so ascertained is paid out to him or his representatives forthwith, or credited to a loan account, and repaid by instalments, with interest running on the outstanding balance. It is important where the amount is not paid out at once that the same should be credited

to a loan account, and not retained as capital, especially in the case of a retiring partner, in order that there may be no possibility of his being regarded as a partner from that point of view.

ILLUSTRATION—

M., a partner in a firm, dies on 31st March, 1910, and his share of Capital and Goodwill is ascertained to be £7,600. It is arranged that this shall be paid out by annual instalments of £2,000, to include principal and interest on the outstanding balance at 5 per cent. per annum. The first payment is made on 30th April, 1910, and succeeding payments are made on the anniversary of the date of death. Show the account in the firm's books relating thereto until completion.

Dr. THE EXECUTORS OF M. (DECEASED) LOAN ACCOUNT. Cr.

1910.		£	s. d.	1910.		£	s. d.
April 30	To Cash	2,000	0 0	Mar. 31	By Capital Account ..	7,600	0 0
	„ Balance.. ..	5,631	13 4	April 30	„ Interest, 1 month ..	31	13 4
		<u>£7,631</u>	<u>13 4</u>			<u>£7,631</u>	<u>13 4</u>
1911.		£	s. d.	1910.		£	s. d.
Mar. 31	To Cash	2,000	0 0	May 1	By Balance	5,631	13 4
	„ Balance.. ..	3,889	15 8	1911.			
		<u>£5,889</u>	<u>15 8</u>	Mar. 31	„ Interest, 11 months ..	258	2 4
						<u>£5,889</u>	<u>15 8</u>
1912.		£	s. d.	1911.		£	s. d.
Mar. 31	To Cash	2,000	0 0	April 1	By Balance	3,889	15 8
	„ Balance.. ..	2,084	5 5	1912.			
		<u>£4,084</u>	<u>5 5</u>	Mar. 31	„ Interest, 1 year ..	194	9 9
						<u>£4,084</u>	<u>5 5</u>
1913.		£	s. d.	1912.		£	s. d.
Mar. 31	To Cash	2,000	0 0	April 1	By Balance	2,084	5 5
	„ Balance.. ..	188	9 8	1913.			
		<u>£2,188</u>	<u>9 8</u>	Mar. 31	„ Interest	104	4 3
						<u>£2,185</u>	<u>9 8</u>
1914.		£	s. d.	1913.		£	s. d.
Mar. 31	To Cash	197	18 2	April 1	By Balance	188	9 8
		<u>£197</u>	<u>18 2</u>	1914.			
				Mar. 31	„ Interest	9	8 6
						<u>£197</u>	<u>18 2</u>

(b) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., with Interest from date of Realisation of Assets.

It occasionally happens where part of the capital is represented by assets, which will take some time to realise, that interest on the proportion of capital represented by those particular assets is only credited as and from the date of realisation, or that an average date is struck from which interest is to run at a fixed rate.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. and B. are partners, sharing profits and losses three-fifths and two-fifths. A. retires on 30th June, 1913, when the position of the firm is as follows:—

A. AND B.

BALANCE SHEET, 30TH JUNE, 1913.

LIABILITIES.				ASSETS.			
				£	s.	d.	
Capital Accounts:—							
A.	..	..	£1,260				
B.	..	..	640				
				1,900	0	0	
Sundry Creditors	..	..	..	1,400	0	0	
				£3,300	0	0	
							£3,300 0 0

It is arranged that A. shall receive £1,000 for his share of Goodwill. The Office Furniture is to be taken at £300, as it was undervalued in the books. The Creditors were paid at an average date of six months and the Debtors realised at an average date of nine months, subject to a loss of £150 by way of Bad Debts. A. was paid £500 on 31st July, 1913, £500 on 31st December, 1913, and £500 on 31st March, 1914. The final settlement takes place on 30th June, 1914, interest running at 5 per cent. per annum.

Show A.'s Account in B.'s books, using interest columns.

Dr.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT.

Cr.

				£	s.	d.				
To Loss on Book Debts				150	0	0				
							By Office Furniture			
							" Loss to Capital Accounts—			
							A. three-fifths of £100			
							B. two-fifths of £100			
				£150	0	0				£150 0 0

A. AND B

BALANCE SHEET FOR PURPOSES OF SETTLEMENT.

LIABILITIES.				£	s.	d.	ASSETS.			
Capital Accounts:—							Office Furniture			
A.	..	..	£1,200				Sundry Debtors realised			
B.	..	..	600				Cash			
				1,800	0	0				300 0 0
Creditors	..	..	..	1,400	0	0				2,500 0 0
				£3,200	0	0				400 0 0
										£3,200 0 0

NOTE.—It should be remembered that the Assets and Liabilities are shared by the Partners (as between themselves) in proportion to their Capitals, and not in the proportions in which they share profits and losses. This is clearly demonstrated by the fact that the "Net Assets" (*i.e.* assets less liabilities) equal the total Capital of the Partners, which belongs to them according to the balance standing to the credit of their respective Capital Accounts.

Thus in the above illustration the Net Assets belong to the Partners in the proportions of A. two-thirds, B. one-third.

Dr.

A. IN ACCOUNT WITH B.

Cr.

		Mths.	Interest.			Principal.					Mths.	Interest.			Principal.		
			£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.				£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
1913.									1913.								
July 31	To Cash	11	22	18	4	500	0	0	July 1	By Office Furniture							
										two-thirds × 300 ..	12	10	0	0	200	0	0
Dec. 31	" "	6	12	10	0	500	0	0		" Cash two-thirds ×							
	" Creditors .. two-									400 ..	12	13	6	8	265	13	4
	thirds × 1,400 ..	6	23	6	8	938	6	8		" Goodwill as agreed	12	50	0	0	1,000	0	0
1914.									1914.								
Mar. 31	" Cash	3	6	5	0	500	0	0	Mar. 31	" Debtors two-thirds							
June 30	" Interest: Contra ..		29	3	4					× 2,500 ..	3	20	16	8	1,666	13	4
	" Cash					729	3	4	June 30	" Interest: Contra ..					29	3	4
			<u>£94 3 4</u>			<u>£3,162 10 0</u>						<u>£94 3 4</u>			<u>£3,162 10 0</u>		

A. therefore receives in cash the following sums:—

		£	s.	d.
1913.	July 31	500	0	0
	December 31	500	0	0
1914.	March 31	500	0	0
	June 30	729	3	4
		<u>£2,229</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>4</u>

Representing return of his adjusted Capital £1,200 plus £1,000, Goodwill plus
£29 3s. 4d. Interest.

(c) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, &c., by way of Annuity.

Where a partner retires or dies, his Capital and his share of the Goodwill, &c., having been ascertained, are sometimes paid out to himself or his representatives by way of an Annuity, either for a certain term of years (determinable in any case by death) or for the lifetime of himself or his widow.

In such cases as far as the Partnership books are concerned the most convenient method of dealing with the matter is to transfer the amount due to an Annuity Suspense Account, which will be credited with interest at a fixed rate per annum on the diminishing balance, and debited with the annual payment. If, subsequently, the credit balance is exhausted and a loss is sustained, such loss will be written off to Profit and Loss Account, and any future instalments of the annuity debited also to Profit and Loss Account. In the event of a profit being made, the balance to the credit of the Suspense Account should be transferred to the continuing partners' Capital Accounts, in the proportion in which they share profits, although it would be perfectly justifiable to transfer it to Profit and Loss.

The balance of the Annuity Suspense Account at the commencement of the transaction and at the date of each Balance Sheet should represent the present worth of the annuity, subject to variation in the expectation of life. An actuarial valuation for the adjustment of the Suspense Account might be made periodically, say every five years, but as with a single annuity there is no scope for the law of average, it is not usual to do this, the simpler system outlined above being adopted.

Another method is to transfer the amount standing to the credit of the outgoing partner to the continuing partners' Capital Accounts in the proportions in which they share profits, and to debit Profit and Loss Account with the payment of the annuity. This is not advisable, however, if there are several partners, owing to the complications that might arise, particularly in the event of a further rearrangement in the partnership.

§ 7.—Sleeping, Quasi and Limited Partners.

The term *Sleeping Partner* is applied to a partner when he retires from active participation in the business, but retains his capital therein, and probably a reduced share of the profits. In such a case no change need be made in the books.

It is very common for a partner to retire and to determine his liability, and at the same time to take advantage of sub-section (3D) of § 2 of the Partnership Act, 1890, leaving his capital in the business in the shape of a loan, receiving interest thereon varying with the profits. In such a case the balance to the credit of his Capital Account should be transferred to a loan account, and the interest, based on a proportion of the profits, should be regarded as an expense of the business. Such an individual is sometimes termed a *Quasi Partner*, but is in effect simply a deferred creditor, his loan not being repayable until after all the outside creditors of the firm are paid in full.

A *Limited Partnership*, as defined by the Limited Partnerships Act, 1907, must consist of one or more persons called General Partners, who shall

be liable for all debts and obligations of the firm ; and one or more persons to be called Limited Partners, who shall at the time of entering into such partnership contribute thereto a sum or sums as capital or property valued at a stated amount, and who shall not be liable for the debts or obligations of the firm beyond the amount so contributed. A Body Corporate may be a Limited Partner.

The Act contains further particulars as to the registration of Limited Partnerships, and modifications of general partnership law as applied to them.

As regards the books of the Limited Partnership, the amount of capital contributed by the Limited Partner should be placed to the credit of his Capital Account, a note being made in the ledger to the effect that he is a Limited Partner. Any share of profits or interest on capital to which he may be entitled should be placed to the credit of his Current Account, and not to his Capital Account.

It is important to observe that the Act provides that a Limited Partner shall not, during the continuance of the partnership, either directly or indirectly, draw out or receive back any part of his contribution, and if he does so draw out or receive back any such part he shall be liable for the debts and obligations of the firm to the extent of the amount withdrawn.

§ 8.—Dissolution of Partnerships.

(a) Application of § 44 of the Partnership Act, 1890.

In the absence of express agreement of the partners to the contrary, § 44 of the Partnership Act, 1890, lays down the rules as regards the settling of accounts between the partners after a dissolution. These are as follows :—

- (a) Losses, including losses and deficiencies of capital, shall be paid first out of profits, next out of capital, and lastly, if necessary, by the partners individually in the proportion in which they were entitled to share profits.

(b) The assets of the firm, including the sums (if any) contributed by the partners to make up losses or deficiencies of capital, shall be applied in the following manner and order :—

- (1) In paying the debts and liabilities of the firm to persons who are not partners therein ;
- (2) In paying to each partner rateably what is due from the firm to him for advances as distinguished from capital ;
- (3) In paying to each partner rateably what is due from the firm to him in respect of capital ;
- (4) The ultimate residue (if any) shall be divided among the partners in the proportion in which profits are divisible.

Diversity of opinion has arisen as to the precise meaning to be attached to this section, but the general view amongst professional Accountants as to its application is as follows :—Immediately upon dissolution a Balance Sheet is drawn out, showing the state of affairs as at that date. When the assets have been realised and the final settlement is to be made, a statement is drawn up, showing the exact profit or loss on the realisation of the assets in relation to their book values, as shown in the Balance Sheet drawn up at the time of dissolution. Such profit or loss is divided between the partners in the proportions in which they share profits or losses, being credited or debited to their Capital Accounts, as the case may be. The liabilities and the expenses of dissolution will be discharged by payment of cash. Should any partner's Capital Account be then in debit, such partner is required to introduce cash to that extent. It will then be found that the remaining balance of cash is sufficient to pay out the credit balances on the other partner's Capital Accounts, thus closing the books.

If, however, one or more of the partners are insolvent, and unable to pay in the amount due, the loss incurred should be borne by the other partners in proportion to their capitals, in accordance with the ruling in *Garner v. Murray*, which is considered in sub-section (b) (4).

(b) Formula for closing Partnership Books on Dissolution.

Apart from special circumstances, the following outline of the various steps necessary to close the books of a Partnership may be found useful :—

- (1) Open a Realisation of Assets Account, debiting such account with the book value of the assets, and crediting the various Asset Accounts. The Realisation Account will also be debited with any expenses on realisation, and cash credited.
- (2) Debit cash and credit Realisation Account with the amount realised on the sale of the assets.

NOTE.—Should any of the assets be taken over at a valuation by one of the partners, debit such partner's Capital Account, and credit Realisation Account with the agreed price.

- (3) The balance of the Realisation Account will then show the profit or loss on realisation, which will be divided between the partners as they share profits and losses. In the case of a loss, credit Realisation Account and debit the various partners' Capital Accounts, and in the case of a profit *vice versa*.
- (4) Pay off the liabilities by crediting cash and debiting liability accounts.
- (5) Pay off partners' advances (if any), first setting off any debit balance on the Capital Account of a partner against his Advance Account.
- (6) The balance of the Cash Book will be found to exactly equal the balances on the various Capital Accounts, provided they are in credit, therefore credit cash and debit the partners' Capital Accounts with the amounts as shown by the balance of those accounts to be due to them.

NOTE.—Should one or more partners' Capital Accounts be in debit, the cash will be insufficient to pay back to the other partners the amount due to them by such an amount. If the partner or partners repay to the firm their indebtedness, the other partners' Capital Accounts can then be closed. If, however, they are unable to do so, according to the decision in *Garner v. Murray* such loss will be divided between the other partners, not as they share profits and losses, but in proportion to their Capitals. An adjusting entry will then be put through to close the Capital Accounts.

The following are cases showing the Winding-up of Partnerships under varying circumstances :—

(1) *Where on Dissolution of Partnership there is a Profit on the Realisation of the Assets.*

ILLUSTRATION—

X. and Y. are in partnership sharing profits, five-eighths and three-eighths. They agree to dissolve partnership, and their Balance Sheet at the date of dissolution, 31st December, 1913, is as follows :—

X. AND Y.

BALANCE SHEET, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

LIABILITIES.					ASSETS.				

Dr.		Y. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914. June 30	To Cash	£	s. d.	1913. Dec. 31	By Balance
		1,600	0 0	1914. June 30	„ Realisation Account ..
					300 0 0
		<u>£1,600</u>	<u>0 0</u>		<u>£1,600</u>
					<u>0 0</u>

Dr.		CASH.		Cr.	
1913. Dec. 31	To Balance	£	s. d.	1914. June 30	By Creditors
1914. June 30	„ Realisation Account ..	600	0 0		„ Capital Accounts:—
		4,500	0 0		X. £2,000
					Y. 1,600
		<u>£5,100</u>	<u>0 0</u>		3,600 0 0
					<u>£5,100</u>
					<u>0 0</u>

(2) *Where on Dissolution of Partnership the Liabilities are paid in full, but there is a loss on the realisation of the Assets.*

ILLUSTRATION—

D., E. and F. sharing profits and losses, half, one-third and one-sixth respectively, dissolve partnership. At the date of dissolution their creditors amount to £2,300, and in the course of winding-up a contingent liability of £200 not brought into the accounts matured and had to be met. Their Capitals stood at £6,000, £4,000 and £1,500 respectively. D. had lent to the firm in addition £2,000. The assets realised £10,000. Close the books of the firm.

Dr.		REALISATION ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
To Book value of Assets	£	s. d.	By Cash	£	s. d.
„ Contingent liability matured	15,800	0 0	„ Loss transferred to Capital ..	10,000	0 0
	200	0 0	Accounts:—		
			D. one-half £3,000		
			E. one-third 2,000		
			F. one-sixth 1,000		
				6,000	0 0
	<u>£16,000</u>	<u>0 0</u>		<u>£16,000</u>	<u>0 0</u>

Dr.		SUNDRY CREDITORS.		Cr.	
To Cash	£	s. d.	By Balance	£	s. d.
	2,500	0 0	„ Realisation Account:—	2,300	0 0
			Contingent liability matured ..	200	0 0
	<u>£2,500</u>	<u>0 0</u>		<u>£2,500</u>	<u>0 0</u>

Dr.		D. LOAN ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
To Cash	£	s. d.	By Balance	£	s. d.
	2,000	0 0		2,000	0 0
	<u>£2,000</u>	<u>0 0</u>			

Dr.		D. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
To Realisation Account: Loss		£	s.	d.	By Balance		£	s.	d.
„ Cash		3,000	0	0			6,000	0	0
		3,000	0	0					
		£6,000	0	0			£6,000	0	0

Dr.		E. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
		£	s.	d.			£	s.	d.
To Realisation Account: Loss	2,000	0	0	By Balance	.. .. .	4,000	0	0
„ Cash	2,000	0	0					
		£4,000	0	0			£4,000	0	0

Dr.	F. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
		£	s.	d.		
To Realisation Account: Loss	1,000	0	0	By Balance	1,500	0 0
„ Cash	500	0	0			
	£1,500	0	0		£1,500	0 0

Dr.	CASH.				Cr.		
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Realisation Account	10,000	0	0	By Creditors	2,500	0	0
				" D. Loan Account	2,000	0	0
				" D. Capital Account	3,000	0	0
				" E. "	2,000	0	0
				" F. "	500	0	0
	£10,000	0	0		£10,000	0	0

Note to Illustration.

When the book value of the assets is not given, but only the amount they realise; the figure to be placed to the debit of the Realisation Account representing the book value of the assets must be equivalent to the total of the Creditors and Capitals added together, since the total of one side of a Balance Sheet must be equal to the total of the other.

(3) *Where on Dissolution of Partnership there is a loss on the realisation of the Assets, placing one partner's Capital Account in debit temporarily, obliging him to bring in cash to that extent.*

ILLUSTRATION —

J. and P. are in partnership, with capitals of £700 and £100. The Creditors are £2,300. The assets realise £1,900. Partners share profits and losses equally. Close the books of the firm, P. having brought in the amount payable by him.

Dr.	REALISATION ACCOUNT.		Cr.
To Assets	£ s. d. 3,100 0 0	By Cash	£ s. d. 1,900 0 0
		„ Loss to Capital Accounts:—	
		J. one-half	600 0 0
		P. one-half	600 0 0
	<u>£3,100 0 0</u>		<u>£3,100 0 0</u>

Dr.	J. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.		Cr.
To Realisation Account: Loss ..	£ s. d. 600 0 0	By Balance	£ s. d. 700 0 0
„ Cash	100 0 0		
	<u>£700 0 0</u>		<u>£700 0 0</u>

Dr.	P. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.		Cr.
To Realisation Account: Loss ..	£ s. d. 600 0 0	By Balance	£ s. d. 100 0 0
		„ Cash	500 0 0
	<u>£600 0 0</u>		<u>£600 0 0</u>

Dr.	CREDITORS.		Cr.
To Cash	£ s. d. 2,300 0 0	By Balance	£ s. d. 2,300 0 0

Dr.	CASH.		Cr.
To Realisation Account	£ s. d. 1,900 0 0	By Creditors	£ s. d. 2,300 0 0
„ P. Capital Account	500 0 0	„ J. Capital Account	100 0 0
	<u>£2,400 0 0</u>		<u>£2,400 0 0</u>

(4) *Where on Dissolution of Partnership there is a loss on the realisation of the Assets, placing one partner's Capital Account permanently in debit, he being insolvent, and the rule in Garner v. Murray being applied.*

Prior to the decision in *Garner v. Murray* it was generally supposed that any loss, occasioned by one of the partners of a firm being unable to make good the debit balance to his account, arising from a loss on the

realisation of assets consequent on a dissolution, should be borne by the remaining partners in the same relative proportions as they previously shared profits and losses.

In giving his decision, Joyce, J., held that any loss occasioned through the default of one of the partners must be distinguished from an ordinary trade loss, being regarded as a debt due to the remaining partners individually, and not as a debt due to the firm; and that whereas a firm loss should be divided between the partners as they share profits and losses, a loss of this nature should be borne by the solvent partners in proportion to their respective capitals in the business.

Considerable discussion has taken place as to the correct interpretation of this judgment, but from the general consensus of opinion it would appear that the following method is least open to criticism:—

The solvent partners should make good their proportion of the loss by actually introducing cash. Assuming all the other assets to have been converted into cash, the total cash balance should be divided between the solvent partners respectively in proportion to their capitals.

ILLUSTRATION—

A., B. & C. share profits and losses equally. They decide to dissolve partnership, and the following Balance Sheet shows the position of affairs after the assets have been realised:—

Dr.		BALANCE SHEET.		Cr.	
To Capitals—		£	s. d.		
A.	.. .. .	600	0 0	By Cash ..	500 0 0
B.	.. .. .	400	0 0	„ Capital C. overdrawn ..	200 0 0
				„ Deficiency of Firm ..	300 0 0
		£1,000	0 0		£1,000 0 0

C. is insolvent, and is unable to contribute anything towards either his overdraft on Capital or his share in the deficiency of the Firm.

There existed no agreement between the Partners as to their respective rights under such circumstances, and consequently the loss sustained through C.'s fault has to be apportioned between the Solvent Partners A. & B. in accordance with the ruling in *Garner v. Murray*.

A. & B., therefore, introduce £100 each, which is debited to Cash and credited to the Deficiency Account, and a reconstructed Balance Sheet is prepared as follows :—

<i>Dr.</i>		BALANCE SHEET.		<i>Cr.</i>	
		£	s. d.		
To Capitals—				By Cash	
A.		600	0 0	.. .. .	700 0 0
B.		400	0 0	.. C's Capital overdrawn	200 0 0
				.. C's proportion of the Firm's deficiency	100 0 0
		£1,000	0 0		£1,000 0 0

The remaining asset, viz., Cash of £700, is divided between the Solvent Partners A. & B. respectively, in proportion to their Capitals, viz. :—

		£	s. d.	
Six-tenths to A.	=	420	0 0	
Four-tenths to B.	=	280	0 0	
		£700	0 0	

This settlement is effected by crediting Cash and debiting the Capital Accounts of A. & B. respectively. The only balances then remaining in the books are the debit balances on C.'s Capital and Deficiency Accounts, amounting together to £300, and the credit balances on the Capital Accounts of A. & B., amounting to £180 and £120 respectively. As C. is insolvent, his debit balance will be written off against A. & B., the former bearing £180 and the latter £120.

It will thus be seen that the loss occasioned through the Insolvent Partner's default is borne by the solvent Partners in proportion to their Capitals, and not as they share profits and losses.

An alternative solution where the solvent partners do not wish to bring in cash to the extent of their respective shares of the loss on realisation is to treat them as Debtors for those amounts, and to set the same off against the balance found to be payable to them on account of their Capital.

(c) Dissolution of Partnership on agreed terms.

Upon the dissolution of a Partnership at the expiration of the term thereof, the partners may agree amongst themselves as to sharing the various assets ; those in possession being divided on certain terms, and the debts due to the business being taken over by the parties by arrangement.

Where the partners in such cases are professional men, it is a common practice for each to take over the debts due from those persons whom he regards as his own clients.

ILLUSTRATION—

Three Doctors, A., B. and C., are in partnership in Kensington. The partnership comes to an end at 31st December, 1913, at which date the agreed figures of the Trial Balance are as follows:—

	Dr. £	Cr. £
A. Capital Account at 1st January, 1913		2,500
B. " " "		1,500
C. " " "		1,200
Drawing Account—A. at 31st December, 1913 ..	1,225	
" B. " " ..	634	
" C. " " ..	723	
Book Debts (in North Kensington)	2,682	
" (in South " ")	2,087	
Liabilities		316
Furniture and Fixtures	125	
Cash at Bankers	1,500	
Profit and Loss Balance (before charging Interest on Capital)		3,460
	<u>£8,976</u>	<u>£8,976</u>

Each partner is to be credited with a year's interest at 5 per cent. on his full Capital Account, and the remaining profit is to be divided, one-half to A., one-quarter to B., and one-quarter to C.

A. retires from practice ; B. takes over the Furniture and the Debtors in North Kensington, and assumes the liabilities ; and C. takes over the South Kensington Debtors. Each partner takes a third of the cash balance, and pays his own cost of coming to a settlement.

Make out statements showing what are the respective sums to be received or paid by each partner on the final settlement.

Dr.	APPROPRIATION OF PROFIT ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Interest on Capital—				By Balance	3,460	0 0
A. 5 % on £2,500 ..	125	0	0			
B. 5 % on £1,500 ..	75	0	0			
C. 5 % on £1,200 ..	60	0	0			
			260			
.. Balance, being Profit—						
A. one-half of £3,200 ..	1,600	0	0			
B. one-quarter of £3,200	800	0	0			
C. one-quarter of £3,200	800	0	0			
			3,200			
			£3,460			£3,460

Dr.	A. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.						Cr.		
		£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	
To Drawings	..	1,225	0	0	By Balance	..	2,500	0	0
„ Cash, one-third of £1,500	..	500	0	0	„ Interest on Capital..	..	125	0	0
„ Balance due to A.	..	2,500	0	0	„ Profit	..	1,600	0	0
		<u>£4,225</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>			<u>£4,225</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
					By Balance	..	£2,500	0	0

Dr.	B. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.				Cr.		
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Drawings	634	0	0	By Balance	1,500	0	0
„ Cash, one-third of £1,500	500	0	0	„ Interest on Capital.. .. .	75	0	0
„ Debtors (North Kensington).. ..	2,682	0	0	„ Profit	800	0	0
„ Furniture and Fixtures	125	0	0	„ Liabilities	316	0	0
				„ Balance due by B. to A.	1,250	0	0
	<u>£3,941</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£3,941</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
To Balance due by B. to A.	£1,250	0	0				

Dr.	C. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.				Cr.						
		£	s.	d.			£	s.	d.		
To Drawings	723	0	0	By Balance	..	..	1,200	0	0
„ Cash, one-third of £1,500	500	0	0	„ Interest on Capital..	..	..	60	0	0
„ Debtors (South Kensington)..	2,087	0	0	„ Profit	..	..	800	0	0
						„ Balance due by C. to A.	..	..	1,250	0	0
			<u>£3,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>				<u>£3,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
To Balance due by C. to A.	£1,250	0	0						

(d) Dissolution of Partnership by Death or Bankruptcy.

Under § 33 of the Partnership Act, 1890, any partnership, except where otherwise agreed, is dissolved as regards all the partners by the death or bankruptcy of any partner.

The Act provides, by § 42, that where any member has died, or otherwise ceased to be a partner, and the surviving or continuing partners carry on the business of the firm with its Capital or Assets, without any final settlement of accounts as between the firm and the outgoing partner or his estate, the outgoing partner or his estate is, in the absence of agreement, entitled to such share of the profits made since the dissolution as the Court may find to be attributable to the use of his share of the Partnership Assets, or to interest at 5 per cent. per annum on the amount of his share of the Partnership Assets.

ILLUSTRATION—

F., G. and H. are partners in a manufacturing business. F. is entitled to one-fourth of the partnership property and profits, G. to one-eighth, and H. to five-eighths. The yearly accounts are made up to 30th September.

<i>Dr.</i>		F. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
To Current Account	£ s. d.	By Balance	£ s. d.		
„ Balance	6 5 0	„ Interest	4,000 0 0		
	4,093 11 10		99 16 10		
	<u>£4,099 16 10</u>		<u>£4,099 16 10</u>		
		By Balance, being total amount due to F.'s Estate	£4,093 11 10		

<i>Dr.</i>		G. CURRENT ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
To Drawings	£ s. d.	By Salary—F., G. and H.	£ s. d.		
„ Balance	100 0 0	„ Profit—	50 0 0		
	217 14 8	„ Salary—G. and H.	96 17 6		
		„ Profit—	50 0 0		
	<u>£317 14 8</u>	„ Profit—	120 17 2		
		By Balance	<u>£317 14 8</u>		
			£217 14 8		

<i>Dr.</i>		H. CURRENT ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
To Drawings	£ s. d.	By Profit—F., G. and H.	£ s. d.		
„ Balance	700 0 0	„ „ G. and H.	484 7 6		
	388 13 6		604 6 0		
	<u>£1,088 13 6</u>		<u>£1,088 13 6</u>		
		By Balance	£388 13 6		

Note to Illustration.

As far as G. and H. are concerned it will be preferable for them to pay F. interest, and the Illustration has been worked out accordingly; but the Trustee would have the right to go to the Court and claim a share of the profits, in lieu of interest.

(e) The Conversion of a Private Firm into a Limited Company.

It is frequently the modern practice to convert a private business into a limited Company, either of a private nature, in which case the shares will be held by the families concerned, or of a public nature, when shares or debentures may be offered to the public.

This is done for many reasons, the principal among which are the limitation of personal liability of the partners, and the facilitation of treatment of large sums of capital in the event of the death of one or more of the partners.

In such a case the books of the firm should be closed, and new books opened for the Company. The following will be the procedure for closing the firm's books :—

- (1) Debit a Realisation Account, and credit the Accounts of the various assets taken over by the new concern.
- (2) Debit the Accounts of the liabilities taken over by the new concern, and credit Realisation Account.
- (3) Debit a Purchasing Company's Account, and credit Realisation Account with the purchase price of the net assets taken over.

NOTE.—The term “ net assets ” means the assets less the liabilities.

- (4) The balance on the Realisation Account, after debiting expenses (if any), will represent the profit or loss on realisation of the net assets taken over, and will be divided between the partners in the proportions in which they share profits and losses. If a profit, debit the Realisation Account and credit the various Capital Accounts ; if a loss, *vice versa*.
- (5) Debit the various asset accounts, such as Cash, Shares, Debentures, &c., representing the purchase consideration, and credit the Purchasing Company.
- (6) Pay off the liabilities not taken over by the new Company (if any), by crediting cash and debiting the Liability Accounts.
- (7) Distribute the Shares, Debentures, &c., by crediting those accounts and debiting the partners' Capital Accounts in the agreed proportions.
- (8) The only balances remaining will be the Capital Accounts and the cash, which should equal one another, and the partners should therefore be paid off according to the balances standing to their credit.

Dr.

DEBENTURES.

Cr.

To Purchasing Company	£ 20,000	s. d. 0 0	By J. Capital Account $\frac{2.5}{50}$	.. ..	£ 10,000	s. d. 0 0
			„ S. „ „ $\frac{1.5}{50}$	.. ..	6,000	0 0
			„ R. „ „ $\frac{1.0}{50}$	.. ..	4,000	0 0
	£20,000	0 0			£20,000	0 0

Dr.

ORDINARY SHARES.

Cr.

To Purchasing Company	£ 40,000	s. d. 0 0	By J. Capital Account $\frac{2.5}{50}$	.. ..	£ 20,000	s. d. 0 0
			„ S. „ „ $\frac{1.5}{50}$	.. ..	12,000	0 0
			„ R. „ „ $\frac{1.0}{50}$	.. ..	8,000	0 0
	£40,000	0 0			£40,000	0 0

Dr.

J. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Debentures	£ 10,000	s. d. 0 0	By Balance	.. ..	£ 25,000	s. d. 0 0
„ Ordinary Shares	20,000	0 0	„ Realisation Account	.. ..	6,400	0 0
„ Cash	1,400	0 0				
	£31,400	0 0			£31,400	0 0

Dr.

S. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Debentures	£ 6,000	s. d. 0 0	By Balance	.. ..	£ 15,000	s. d. 0 0
„ Ordinary Shares	12,000	0 0	„ Realisation Account	.. ..	4,800	0 0
„ Cash	1,800	0 0				
	£19,800	0 0			£19,800	0 0

Dr.

R. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Debentures	£ 4,000	s. d. 0 0	By Balance	.. ..	£ 10,000	s. d. 0 0
„ Ordinary Shares	8,000	0 0	„ Realisation Account	.. ..	3,200	0 0
„ Cash	1,200	0 0				
	£13,200	0 0			£13,200	0 0

Dr.

CASH ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Purchasing Company	£ 25,000	s. d. 0 0	By Loan on Mortgage	.. ..	£ 20,000	s. d. 0 0
			„ Expenses	.. ..	600	0 0
			„ Capital Accounts —			
			J... ..	£1,400		
			S... ..	1,800		
			R... ..	1,200		
					4,400	0 0
	£25,000	0 0			£25,000	0 0

Note to Illustration.

The ultimate balance of Cash, viz., £4,400, is divided between the partners according to the balances of their respective Capital Accounts, after dividing up the Debentures and Shares between them, and has no connection whatever with the proportions of Capital prior to such distribution, or the proportions in which they share profits and losses.

§ 9.—Joint Venture Accounts.

Joint Venture is defined in "Bell's Principles," Art. 392, as follows: "Joint Adventure or Joint Trade is a partnership confined to a particular adventure, speculation, course of trade or voyage, and in which the partners, either latent or known, use no firm or social name, and incur no responsibility beyond the limits of the adventure." The incidents of Joint Adventure cannot be distinguished in any way from those of an Ordinary Partnership, beyond the fact that the agreement is of a specially limited character.

In actual practice cases of Joint Adventure resolve themselves broadly into two classes:—

(a) Where a separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture.

In such a case a joint Banking Account will be utilised, and the transactions will be recorded in a precisely similar manner to those of ordinary partnerships, each partner's Capital Account being credited with the amount which he pays into the Joint Account. Interest on Capital is usually taken into consideration, and the profits or losses are divided, according to the shares agreed upon.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. and B. were partners in a joint venture in Timber, sharing profits, two-thirds and one-third respectively. A Banking Account in their joint names is opened on the 1st January, 1914, A. paying into the same £700, and B. £350.

The transactions were as follows :—

1914.			£	s.	d.
Jan.	8	Purchased from F. Daponta Cargo of Timber valued at	665	0	0
		Accepted draft for same at one month	665	0	0
"	11	Paid Freight and Expenses to Liverpool.. .. .	142	10	0
Feb.	20	Sold T. Stephens & Sons Logs	180	0	0
"	21	Received Cash <i>less</i> 5%	171	0	0
"	26	Bought for Cash from Lehman & Co. Cargo of Timber, net	800	0	0
Mar.	17	Paid Freight and Expenses to Hull	125	0	0
		Sold M. White & Co. Deals, net	300	0	0
		Received their acceptance one month	300	0	0
April	21	Sold for Cash to M. Black & Co. Cargo purchased from Lehman & Co.	1,400	0	0
"	30	Stock balance of Daponta's Cargo valued at	320	0	0

The Venture was closed on April 30th, 1914, by B. taking over the Stock at an agreed valuation of £320, less 10 per cent.

Adjust the accounts as between the partners at 30th April, 1914, allowing interest on the amounts at 5 per cent. per annum, and show—

- (1) The Joint Venture Account.
- (2) The Partners' Capital Accounts.
- (3) The Joint Cash Account.
- (4) The Joint Bills Receivable and Payable Accounts.

Dr.

JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

[illegible]

Dr.

A. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1914.				$\begin{array}{r} \text{\pounds} \\ \text{s.} \\ \text{d.} \end{array}$		1914.				$\begin{array}{r} \text{\pounds} \\ \text{s.} \\ \text{d.} \end{array}$
April 30	To Cash			978 15 7		Jan. 1	By Cash			700 0 0
						April 30	" Interest on Capital ..			11 13 4
						"	" Profit			267 2 3
				£978 15 7						£978 15 7

Dr.

B. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1914.			£	s.	d.	1914			£	s.	d.
April 30	To Stock taken over	..	288	0	0	Jan. 1	By Cash	.. .. .	850	0	0
"	" Cash	.. .. .	709	14	5	April 30	" Interest on Capital	..	14	3	4
						"	" Profit	.. .. .	133	11	1
			£997	14	5				£997	14	5

Dr.		CASH BOOK.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.		£ s. d.
Jan. 1	To A. Capital Account ..	700 0 0	Jan. 11	By Freight and Expenses ..	142 10 0
	" B. ..	850 0 0	Feb. 11	" Bills Payable ..	665 0 0
Feb. 21	" T. Stephens & Sons ..	171 0 0	" 26	" Cash Purchases:—	
April 20	" Bills Receivable ..	300 0 0		Lehman & Co. ..	800 0 0
" 21	" Cash Sales:—		Mar. 17	" Freight and Expenses ..	125 0 0
	M. Black & Co. ..	1,400 0 0	April 30	" Balance	1,688 10 0
		<u>£3,421 0 0</u>			<u>£3,421 0 0</u>
		£ s. d.			£ s. d.
April 30	To Balance	1,688 10 0	April 30	By A. .. £978 15 7	
				" B. .. 709 14 5	
		<u>£1,688 10 0</u>			1,688 10 0
					<u>£1,688 10 0</u>

Dr.		BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.		£ s. d.
Mar. 17	To M. White & Co.	300 0 0	April 20	By Cash	300 0 0

Dr.		BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT.		Cr.	
1914.		£ s. d.	1914.		£ s. d.
Feb. 11	To Cash	665 0 0	Jan. 8	By F. Daponta	665 0 0

(b) Where no separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture.

In such a case each party will record the transactions he enters into on behalf of the Joint Account in his own books, and no Joint Banking Account will be opened. In order to ascertain the profit or loss, each party must render a complete statement of all transactions entered into by him, and these must then be combined into a Joint Venture Account, which account will not appear in the books of either party, but will be raised from materials supplied by both. This account is in the nature of a Trading or Profit and Loss Account. As soon as the result is ascertained, each partner will debit or credit his account with the Joint Venture in his own books with his share of the result, and the balance of this account will then represent the amount due to or by the other party.

ILLUSTRATION—

M. and R. were partners in an Underwriting Venture, sharing profits and losses, three-fifths and two-fifths. They agree to guarantee the subscription of 100,000 shares of £1 each in a Company, and to pay all expenses up to allotment, in consideration of a commission of 5 per cent. in cash and 10 per cent. in fully-paid shares of the Company.

M. provided cash for the following expenses:—Registration and Fees £120, Advertising £2,200, Printing and Prospectuses £270. R. provided the cash for the remainder, viz., Rent of Offices £45; Petty Cash £20, Stamps £90, Law Costs £250.

The public having subscribed only £70,000, the Underwriters had to take up £30,000, the cash being provided by them three-fifths and two-fifths respectively.

In due course they sold all their shares except 5,000, including those received for commission, at an average price of 15s. 3d., less brokerage of 3d. per share, the remaining 5,000 being taken over by M. at 12s. 6d. Of the proceeds M. received three-fifths and R. two-fifths. The cash commission received was divided in the same proportions.

Prepare a Joint Venture Account, and the separate accounts of the partners in their own books, showing the final balance payable by the one to the other, the shares taken over by M. being brought into account, and no interest being taken into consideration.

Dr.		JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Expenses paid by M. :—					By Cash—Underwriting Commission :		
Registration Fees ..	120 0 0				M.	3,000 0 0	
Advertising ..	2,200 0 0				R.	2,000 0 0	
Printing, &c. ..	270 0 0						
		2,590	0	0		5,000	0 0
„ Expenses paid by R. :—					„ Sale of 35,000 shares at 15s. net :—		
Rent	45 0 0				M.	15,750 0 0	
Petty Cash ..	20 0 0				R.	10,500 0 0	
Stamps	90 0 0						
Law Costs ..	250 0 0					26,250	0 0
		405	0	0	„ Shares taken over by M., 5,000 @		
„ Shares taken up :—					12s 6d.	3,125	0 0
M.	18,000 0 0						
R.	12,000 0 0						
		30,000	0	0			
„ Balance, being Profit :—							
M. Three-fifths ..	828 0 0						
R. Two-fifths ..	552 0 0						
		1,380	0	0			
		£34,375	0	0		£34,375	0 0

M.'S BOOKS.

Dr.		JOINT ACCOUNT WITH R.				Cr.	
		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Cash—Expenses		2,590	0	0	By Cash—Commission		3,000
„ Shares	18,000	0	0		„ Shares	15,750	0
„ Profit and Loss Account, Three-fifths of £1,380	828	0	0		„ Shares taken over	3,125	0
„ Balance due to R.	457	0	0				
	£21,875	0	0			£21,875	0 0
					By Balance due to R.		£457 0 0

R.'S BOOKS.

Dr.		JOINT ACCOUNT WITH M.				Cr.	
		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Cash—Expenses		405	0	0	By Cash—Commission		2,000
„ Shares	12,000	0	0		„ Shares	10,500	0
„ Profit and Loss Account—Two-fifths of £1,380	552	0	0		„ Balance due from M.	457	0
	£12,957	0	0			£12,957	0 0
To Balance due from M.		£457	0	0			

§ 10.—Miscellaneous Problems in Partnership Accounts.

The following are illustrations of a few of the more important problems involving minor difficulties and arithmetical intricacies, which are continually presenting themselves to the Professional Accountant in dealing with Partnership Accounts.

(a) Proportion of one Partner's share borne personally by another.

It occasionally happens where a member of the staff of a Private Firm is taken into Partnership, that the difference between the amount of his share in the profits as a partner and the amount which, as a clerk, he would have received by way of salary, plus possibly a commission varying with the profits, is borne personally by certain of the partners, and not shared by all in proportion as they divide profits and losses.

Such cases present no real difficulty, provided the terms of the agreement are thoroughly understood, but arithmetical accuracy is of course of the utmost importance. Further, it is necessary to state very clearly the various steps showing how the ultimate result has been arrived at, to prevent difficulties and misunderstandings subsequently.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. and B. are in partnership, sharing profits and losses in the proportions of four-fifths and one-fifth respectively.

On the 1st July, 1913, they admit to partnership C., their Managing Clerk, giving him one-eighth share of the profits.

Previous to 1st July, 1913, C. had been in receipt of a salary of £300 per annum, and a commission of 5 per cent. upon the net profits after charging such salary and commission.

In accordance with the terms of the Partnership Deed any excess over his former remuneration to which C. as a partner becomes entitled is to be provided out of A.'s share of the profit. The profits for the year ending 30th June, 1914, amount to £7,200. Divide this amount between A., B. and C.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Profit for year ending 30th June, 1914				7,200	0	0
Less C.'s Salary	300	0	0			
C.'s Commission :—5 % on £6,571 8s. 7d.	328	11	5			
				328	11	5
				£6,571	8	7
				£	s.	d.
C.'s share of profit is one-eighth of £7,200				900	0	0
Less Remuneration receivable in the capacity of Managing Clerk as above				628	11	5
Excess of C.'s present over former remuneration chargeable to A. personally				£271	8	7
				£	s.	d.
A.'s share is four-fifths of £6,571 8s. 7d.				5,257	2	11
Less amount chargeable as above on account of C.'s share				271	8	7
				£4,985	14	4
B.'s share—one-fifth of £6,571 8s. 7d.				£1,314	5	8

Thus the profit of £7,200 for the year ending 30th June, 1914, will be divided between the partners as follows:—

	£	s.	d.
A.	4,985	14	4
B.	1,314	5	8
C.	900	0	0
	<hr/>		
	£7,200	0	0

Notes to Illustration.

(1) To ascertain the figure of profit upon which C.'s commission would have been charged is merely an arithmetical calculation, based on the rule of three.

The easiest method of arriving at the correct result is to presume the profit upon which the calculation of commission has to be made to be £100.

The question then resolves itself into finding the figure which by deducting 5 per cent. of £100 (£5) will leave £100. Obviously the answer is £105.

Thus where the profit after charging salary, but prior to charging commission, is—

£105, the calculation is made upon £100

1	100
105	105

£6,900 the calculation is made upon $\frac{100}{105} \times \frac{6,900}{1} = £6,571 \text{ 8s. 7d.}$

(2) It should be noted that B. does not personally in any way lose through C. being admitted as a partner, as his share of the profits is based upon the figure of profit as it would have been had C. continued as the Managing Clerk.

(b) Readjustment of Partners' Shares over a period of years.

It occasionally happens that where an incoming Partner has been connected with the business for some time, the arrangements made on his entry into the firm are treated as retrospective for a certain period, as if he had become a partner from the point of view of sharing profits at an earlier date. In such cases the adjusting entry will require to be made at the commencement of the new Partnership, debiting the original members of the firm, and crediting the incoming Partner with the amount to which he is found to be entitled.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. and B. have carried on business for four years, their books showing the following results:—

			£	s.	d.
First year ..	..	Loss	788	0	0
Second year ..	..	Profit	3,635	0	0
Third year ..	..	„	4,129	0	0
Fourth year ..	..	„	5,362	0	0

(c) Adjustment in Accounts where Interest on Capital has been omitted.

Where inadvertently Interest on Capital has been omitted, although agreed upon between the Partners, and it is subsequently desired to rectify the error without reopening the Accounts, an adjusting entry can be made at the commencement of the new period for this purpose.

ILLUSTRATION—

There are four partners in a business—A., B., C. and D. They are entitled under the Partnership Deed to profits in the following proportions, viz., A. to one-third, B. to one-fourth, C. to one-fourth, and D. to one-sixth part.

The Capital in the business is held as follows:—

				£	s.	d.
A.	..	..	..	15,000	0	0
B.	..	..	..	22,500	0	0
C.	..	..	..	30,000	0	0
D.	..	..	..	22,500	0	0

After the accounts for the year have been prepared and signed, it is discovered that Interest at 4 per cent. per annum (as agreed) has been omitted to be credited to the Partners' Capital Accounts. Instead of altering the signed Balance Sheet it is decided to make an adjusting Journal entry at the beginning of the new year, crediting or debiting the respective Partners' Accounts.

Make the necessary Journal entry.

JOURNAL.

	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sundries.							
To Sundries—							
A. one-third of £3,600 Interest on Capital..	..	1,200	0	0			
B. one-fourth " " " " " "	..	900	0	0			
C. one-fourth " " " " " "	..	900	0	0			
D. one-sixth " " " " " "	..	600	0	0			
A. 4% on £15,000				600	0	0
B. " " £22,500				900	0	0
C. " " £30,000				1,200	0	0
D. " " £22,500				900	0	0
Adjustment of Interest on Capital omitted in Profit and Loss Account.		£3,600	0	0	£3,600	0	0

(d) Share of one Partner guaranteed at a Fixed Minimum.

It sometimes happens that a Junior Partner's share in the profits of a business is represented by a percentage thereof, or a fixed minimum sum, whichever is greater. Where the minimum sum is greater than the percentage, the difference must be borne by the remaining partners in the same ratio as they share profits and losses.

ILLUSTRATION—

A., B. and C. are in partnership, sharing profits—one-half, one-third and one-sixth respectively.

C.'s share, however, is guaranteed by A. and B. at a fixed minimum of £400.

The Net Profits for the year amounted to £1,800. Show the appropriation thereof as between the partners.

APPROPRIATION ACCOUNT.

				£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	
To A. three-sixths..	..	900	0	0				By Balance ..	..	1,800	0
„ B. two-sixths ..	..	600	0	0							
„ C. one-sixth ..	..	300	0	0							
				1,800 0 0							
				<u>£1,800 0 0</u>				<u>£1,800 0 0</u>			
				£	s.	d.					
To C. :—								By A. three-fifths	..	840	0
Further amount credited to him ..				100	0	0		„ B. two-fifths	..	560	0
				<u>£100 0 0</u>				<u>40 0 0</u>			
								<u>£100 0 0</u>			

A. and B. sharing profits as three is to two must bear the additional amount to be credited to C. in the same proportion, *i.e.* three-fifths and two-fifths.

The net amounts to the credit of each partner will then be—

				£	s.	d.
A.	..	..	..	840	0	0
B.	..	..	..	560	0	0
C.	..	..	..	400	0	0
				<u>£1,800 0 0</u>		

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER VIII.

COMPANY ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN PARTNERSHIPS AND LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANIES.

2.—PRIVATE COMPANIES.

3.—THE MEMORANDUM AND ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION.

(a) The Memorandum.

(b) The Articles.

4.—THE STATUTORY BOOKS AND RETURNS.

(a) Register of Members.

(b) Register of Mortgages.

(c) Annual List of Members and Summary Book.

(d) Minute Book.

(e) Register of Directors and Managers.

(f) The Directors' Report for the Statutory Meeting.

5.—THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF SHARE CAPITAL.

(a) Preference Shares.

(b) Ordinary Shares.

(c) Founders' Shares or Deferred Shares.

(d) The distinction between Stock and Shares.

6.—THE APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT OF SHARES.

(a) Application Letters.

(b) Application and Allotment Book.

(c) Letters of Allotment and Regret.

(d) Vendors' and Signatories' Shares.

(e) Calls.

(f) Return of Allotments.

(g) Journal entries relating to the issue of Shares.

(h) Shares issued at a premium.

7.—THE SHARE BOOKS.

(a) Share Ledger.

(b) Register of Transfers.

(c) Share Warrant Register.

§ 8.—PRELIMINARY AND FORMATION EXPENSES.

- (a) Underwriting Commission.
- (b) Commission on placing Shares.

9.—MORTGAGES AND DEBENTURES.

- (a) Definition of Mortgage.
- (b) Definition of Debenture.
- (c) Debentures issued at a premium.
- (d) Debentures issued at a discount.
- (e) Debentures repayable at a premium.
- (f) Redemption of Debentures.
- (g) Debentures issued as collateral security for a loan.

10.—THE PURCHASE OF A PRIVATE BUSINESS BY A LIMITED COMPANY.

- (a) Entries in the Books.
- (b) Apportionment of Profit prior to incorporation.

11.—FORFEITED SHARES.

12.—BONUS SHARES.

- (a) Issue of Bonus Shares at par.
- (b) Issue of Bonus Shares at a premium.
- (c) Application of Bonus to payment of Calls.

13.—PAYMENT OF INTEREST OUT OF CAPITAL.

14.—THE PREPARATION OF A COMPANY'S BOOKS AND ACCOUNTS FOR AUDIT.

15.—THE BALANCE SHEET AND ACCOUNTS OF A COMPANY.

- (a) Form of the Accounts.
- (b) Contingent Liabilities.
- (c) Arrears of Cumulative Preference Shares dividend.

16.—THE AMALGAMATION OF COMPANIES.

17.—THE ABSORPTION OF ONE LIMITED COMPANY BY ANOTHER.

- (a) Journal entries for closing the Vendor Company's books.
- (b) Journal entries for opening Purchasing Company's books.
- (c) Shares issued at a premium valuation.
- (d) Treatment of Revenue Balances.
- (e) Treatment where shares are partly called up.

18.—REDUCTION OF CAPITAL.

- (a) Writing off Capital not represented by available Assets.
- (b) Return of Capital out of Profits.
- (c) Other modes of Reduction.

19.—RECONSTRUCTIONS.

CHAPTER VIII.

COMPANY ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—The Distinction between Partnerships and Limited Liability Companies.

Prior to the introduction of Limited Liability, members of a Company were liable jointly and severally for the whole of the debts of the Company. This having proved disastrous in many cases, an Act was passed in 1855 limiting the liability of the shareholders in Companies limited by shares to the extent of the nominal value of their shares, or, in the case of Companies limited by guarantee, to the extent of such guarantee.

The Law of Companies was consolidated by the Act of 1862, and numerous amending Acts were subsequently passed, being referred to, with the principal Act, as the Companies Acts, 1862 to 1907. These Acts have now been repealed and re-enacted in a codified form, by the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, which came into force on the 1st April, 1909.

The principal distinctions between an Unlimited Partnership and a Limited Company (Limited Partnerships are discussed in Chapter VII.) are as follows :—

- (1) In the case of an Unlimited Partnership, the liability of each member of the firm for the debts of the firm is unlimited; whereas in the case of a Company, the liability of each shareholder is limited to the nominal amount of his shares, and if such shares are fully paid up he is subject to no further liability.
- (2) In the case of a Partnership, the number of partners is limited to 20, except in the case of a private banking concern, where the number is limited to 10; whereas in the case of a Company the number of shareholders is only limited by the number of shares authorized and issued. At the same time there must not be less than seven shareholders, except in the case of Private Companies, where the minimum number of members is two.

- (3) If in a partnership the legal number of partners is exceeded, the Association is an illegal one, and, although it does not affect the question of their liability, seeing that this was unlimited in the first instance, they cannot take action for the recovery of debts, although they are capable of being sued. In the case of a Public Company, if the number sinks below seven this is good ground for the presentation of a petition for winding up, but as regards the liability of the members, six months' grace is given, and after this time has expired all those members cognisant of the fact that the number has sunk below seven are liable for the whole of the debts of the Company contracted after the expiration of the six months.
- (4) In the case of an Unlimited Partnership, each individual member can presumably manage the business, and can legally bind the firm by his actions with the outside world; whereas in the case of a Company, the rights of management are delegated to a certain number of the shareholders called directors, who alone can bind the Company.
- (5) In the case of a Partnership, each partner is entitled to have access to the books and accounts of the firm; whereas in the case of a Company, the right of the members to inspection depends on the Articles, with the exception of the books open for inspection by Statute.
- (6) In the case of a Partnership, the rights of the partners between themselves are governed by mutual agreement, and generally by a Deed of Partnership, which can be varied by mutual agreement. In the case of a Company, the powers, which cannot be altered without consent of the Court, are defined by the Memorandum; and the powers and duties of the directors carrying on the business are defined by the Articles, which can only be altered by special resolution of the Company in general meeting.
- (7) A Partnership is subject to the general provisions of the Partnership Act, 1890, which, however, can be varied by mutual agreement; a Company is governed by the Companies Act, which cannot be varied legally by the Company.

- (8) The capital of a Partnership is contributed by the partners according to agreement, and is not necessarily fixed in amount, being frequently increased by undrawn profits, or reduced by losses sustained; whereas in the case of a Company, the authorized capital is fixed by the Memorandum, and cannot be reduced without leave of the Court, except in certain cases, nor increased except in the manner provided by Statute.
- (9) In the case of a private firm, an annual audit is not compulsory, whereas it is in the case of a Company.
- (10) A Partnership is not regarded by the Law as a distinct entity apart from the persons composing it, whereas a Company is so regarded.

§ 2.—Private Companies.

A Private Company is defined by the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, § 121, as amended by the Companies Act, 1913, § 2, as follows :—

A Company which by its Articles—

- (a) Restricts the right to transfer its shares; and
- (b) Limits the number of its members (exclusive of persons who are in the employment of the Company and of persons who having been formerly in the employment of the Company, were while in such employment and have continued after the determination of such employment to be members of the Company) to 50; and
- (c) Prohibits any invitation to the public to subscribe for any shares or debentures of the Company.

If default is made in complying with any of these provisions the Company will cease to be entitled to the privileges and exemptions conferred on Private Companies.

Wherever in the Companies Acts a minimum of seven members is required, only two members shall be required in the case of a Private Company.

Certain privileges are accorded to Private Companies as follows :—

- (1) They are not obliged to file a Prospectus, or a Statement in lieu of a Prospectus, with the Registrar of Joint Stock Companies.
- (2) They are not obliged to file or include a statement in the form of a Balance Sheet with the Summary filed with the Registrar under § 26 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908.
- (3) They are not obliged to forward to the members or to file the Statutory Report under § 65 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908.
- (4) The right given to holders of preference shares and debentures in Public Companies under § 114 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, to receive and inspect the Balance Sheets of the Company and the Reports of the Auditors, &c., does not apply.
- (5) The minimum number of members may be two instead of seven.
- (6) The Company can commence business as soon as it is incorporated, without waiting for the certificate entitling it to commence business.
- (7) The restrictions on appointment of directors and allotment of shares do not apply.

Every Private Company must send with the Annual Summary a Certificate showing that it has not issued any invitation to the public to take Shares or Debentures, and that the legal number of Members has not been exceeded.

§ 3.—The Memorandum and Articles of Association.

This is the term given to the documents forming the constitution of a Company, and defining its objects and powers.

(a) The *Memorandum* contains five clauses—

- (1) Name of Company.
- (2) The situation of registered office.
- (3) The objects of the Company.
- (4) A declaration that the liability of the members is limited.
- (5) The amount of capital, and the shares into which it is divided.

This Memorandum must be signed by the signatories of the Company, these being seven in number, holding not less than one share each, or in the case of Private Companies two in number.

(b) The *Articles* contain the rules and regulations for conducting the business of the Company, and define the powers and duties of the Directors. The principal clauses will be as follows :—

(1) A declaration as to how far the provisions of Table A apply, or whether they are expressly excluded. In so far as the Articles do not exclude or modify the regulations in Table A, the same apply as far as they are applicable.

Table A is a model set of Articles which have to be adopted by any Company not having Articles of its own. The original Table A applies only to Companies registered before 1st October, 1906 ; the revised Table A applies to any Company registered subsequently, and any Company working under the original Table A adopting it by special resolution. The present form of the revised Table forms an Appendix to the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908.

- (2) A recital of the basis on which the Company is constituted.
- (3) The regulations as to the issue of capital, minimum subscription, payment of underwriting commission, &c.
- (4) Making calls.
- (5) Holding, transferring and transmission of shares.
- (6) Loans on and forfeiture and surrender of shares.
- (7) Procedure of general meetings.
- (8) Votes of members.
- (9) Directors—their number, remuneration, qualification, rotation, disqualification and removal.
- (10) Appointment and powers of managing directors.
- (11) Proceedings and powers of the Board.
- (12) Accounts and audit.
- (13) Dividends and reserves.
- (14) Notices to members.
- (15) Rights of shareholders *inter se*.

§ 4.—The Statutory Books and Returns.

(a) The Register of Members.

This book is required under § 25 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, which provides as follows:—

25.—(1) Every Company shall keep in one or more books a Register of its Members, and enter therein the following particulars:—

- (i) The names and addresses, and the occupations, if any, of the members, and in the case of a Company having a share capital a statement of the shares held by each member, distinguishing each share by its number, and of the amount paid or agreed to be considered as paid on the shares of each member;
- (ii) The date at which each person was entered in the Register as a member;
- (iii) The date at which any person ceased to be a member.

The Annual List and Summary referred to below must also be contained in a separate part of the Register of Members.

(b) The Register of Mortgages.

This book is required under § 100 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, which provides as follows:—

100.—(1) Every Limited Company shall keep a register of mortgages and enter therein all mortgages and charges specifically affecting property of the Company, giving in each case a short description of the property mortgaged or charged, the amount of the mortgage or charge, and (except in the case of securities to bearer) the names of the mortgagees or persons entitled thereto.

This book must be open to inspection by any creditor or member of the Company at all reasonable times without charge, and to any other person on payment of a fee not exceeding one shilling.

The following is the usual form of this book:—

ILLUSTRATION—

REGISTER OF MORTGAGES.

Date of Charge.	Name and Address of Mortgagee.	Short Particulars of Property Charged.	Amount of Charge.			Remarks.

(c) Annual List of Members and Summary.

This return is required under § 26 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, which provides as follows :—

26.—(1) Every Company having a share capital shall once at least in every year make a list of all persons who, on the fourteenth day after the first or only ordinary general meeting in the year, are members of the Company, and of all persons who have ceased to be members since the date of the last return or (in the case of the first return) of the incorporation of the Company.

(2) The list must state the names, addresses, and occupations of all the past and present members therein mentioned, and the number of shares held by each of the existing members at the date of the return, specifying shares transferred since the date of the last return or (in the case of the first return) of the incorporation of the Company by persons who are still members and have ceased to be members respectively and the dates of registration of the transfers, and must contain a summary distinguishing between shares issued for cash and shares issued as fully or partly paid up otherwise than in cash, and specifying the following particulars :—

- (a) The amount of the share capital of the Company, and the number of shares into which it is divided ;
- (b) The number of shares taken from the commencement of the Company up to the date of the return ;
- (c) The amount called up on each share ;
- (d) The total amount of calls received ;
- (e) The total amount of calls unpaid ;
- (f) The total amount of the sums (if any) paid by way of commission in respect of any shares or debentures, or allowed by way of discount in respect of any debentures, since the date of the last return ;
- (g) The total number of shares forfeited ;
- (h) The total amount of shares or stock for which share warrants are outstanding at the date of the return ;
- (i) The total amount of share warrants issued and surrendered respectively since the date of the last return ;
- (k) The number of shares or amount of stock comprised in each share warrant ;
- (l) The names and addresses of the persons who at the date of the return are the directors of the Company, or occupy the position of directors, by whatever name called ; and
- (m) The total amount of debt due from the Company in respect of all mortgages and charges which are required (or, in the case of a Company registered in Scotland, which, if the Company had been registered in England, would be required) to be registered with the Registrar of Companies under this Act, or which would have been required so to be registered if created after the first day of July, nineteen hundred and eight.

(3) The summary must also (except where the Company is a private Company) include a statement made up to such date as may be specified in the statement, in the form of a balance sheet, audited by the Company's auditors, and containing a summary of its share capital, its liabilities, and its assets, giving such particulars as will disclose the general nature of those liabilities and assets, and how the values of the fixed assets have been arrived at, but the balance sheet need not include a statement of profit and loss.

(4) The above list and summary must be contained in a separate part of the register of members, and must be completed within seven days after the fourteenth day aforesaid, and the Company must forthwith forward to the Registrar of Companies a copy signed by the manager or by the secretary of the Company.

The following is the Statutory form of this Summary :—

SUMMARY of SHARE CAPITAL and SHARES of the
made up to the day of 19
day after the date of the first ordinary general meeting in 19
COMPANY, LIMITED,
(being the fourteenth
).

Nominal share capital £	divided into*	{	shares of £	each.
		}	shares of £	each.
Total number of shares taken up* to the day of 19 (which number must agree with the total shown in the list as held by existing members).		{		
Number of shares issued subject to payment wholly in cash	.. .. .		
Number of shares issued as fully paid up otherwise than in cash	.. .. .		
Number of shares issued as partly paid up to the extent of per share otherwise than in cash	.. .. .		
† There has been called up on each of	shares	.. .. .	£	.
There has been called up on each of	shares	.. .. .	£	.
† There has been called up on each of	shares	.. .. .	£	.
‡ Total amount of calls received, including payments on application and allotment	.. .. .		£
Total amount (if any) agreed to be considered as paid on which have been issued as fully paid up otherwise than in cash	.. .. .		£	.
Total amount (if any) agreed to be considered as paid on which have been issued as partly paid up to the extent of per share	.. .. .		£	.
Total amount of calls unpaid	.. .. .		£	.
Total amount (if any) of sums paid by way of commission in respect of shares or debentures or allowed by way of discount since date of last summary	.. .. .		£	.
Total amount (if any) paid on §	shares forfeited	.. .. .	£	.
Total amount of shares and stock for which share warrants are out- standing	.. .. .		£	.
Total amount of share warrants issued and surrendered respectively since date of last summary	.. .. .		£	.
Number of shares or amount of stock comprised in each share warrant				

NAMES and ADDRESSES of the persons who are the Directors of the Limited,
on the day of 19

Names.	Addresses.

NOTE.—Banking Companies must add a list of all their places of business.

(Signature)_____

(State whether manager or secretary)_____

(d) Minute Books.

Minutes of all meetings of Shareholders and Directors are required to be entered in books under § 71 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, which provides as follows :—

71.—(1) Every Company shall cause minutes of all proceedings of general meetings and (where there are directors or managers) of its directors or managers to be entered in books kept for that purpose.

(2) Any such minute, if purporting to be signed by the chairman of the meeting at which the proceedings were had, or by the chairman of the next succeeding meeting, shall be evidence of the proceedings.

(e) Register of Directors and Managers.

This book is required under § 75 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, which provides as follows :—

75.—(1) Every Company shall keep at its registered office a register containing the names and addresses and the occupations of its directors or managers, and send to the Registrar of Companies a copy thereof, and from time to time notify to the Registrar any change among its directors or managers.

(f) The Directors' Report for the Statutory Meeting.

The Statutory Meeting of a Company must be held not less than one month nor more than three months after the Company is entitled to commence business. A Statutory Report must be prepared, to be laid before the meeting in the case of all Companies other than private companies, and this must, seven days before the date fixed for the holding of the meeting, be forwarded to every member of the Company, and every other person entitled to receive it, *i.e.*, preference shareholders and debenture holders. A copy must also be filed with the Registrar of Joint Stock Companies.

The Report, which must be certified by not less than two Directors or by the sole Director, if there is only one, must show :—

- (a) The total number of shares allotted, distinguishing shares allotted as fully or partly paid up otherwise than in cash, and stating in the case of shares partly paid up the extent to which they are so paid up, and in either case the consideration for which they have been allotted;
- (b) The total amount of cash received by the Company in respect of all the shares allotted, distinguished as aforesaid;
- (c) An abstract of the receipts of the Company on account of its capital, whether from shares or debentures, and of the payments made thereout, up to a date within seven days of the date of the report, exhibiting under distinctive headings the receipts of the Company from shares and debentures and other sources, the payments made thereout, and particulars concerning the balance remaining in hand, and an account or estimate of the preliminary expenses of the Company;
- (d) The names, addresses and descriptions of the Directors, Auditors (if any), Managers (if any), and Secretary of the Company; and
- (e) The particulars of any contract, the modification of which is to be submitted to the meeting for its approval, together with the particulars of the modification, or proposed modification.

The first three of these clauses, except the account or estimate of preliminary expenses, must be certified as correct by the Auditors of the Company (if any).

ILLUSTRATION—

The Explorations Trust, Limited (directors, H. Martin, J. Williams, and J. Smithson; secretary, T. Mason; auditors, Gilbertson & Co.), was entitled to commence business on 1st April, 1914.

80,000 shares of 10s. each had been applied for and duly allotted, and 2s. 6d. per share payable on application, with 2s. 6d. per share payable on allotment, had been received by the Company. An additional 10,000 shares were, under the purchase agreement, allotted to the vendors as fully-paid.

Prepare the statutory report necessary under § 65 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908.

The following payments had been made prior to the date of the report, viz. :—

	£	s.	d.
On Account of Preliminary Expenses	2,500	0	0
Investments	10,000	0	0
Directors' Fees, &c.	250	0	0
Printing and Stationery, Postages and Sundries	45	0	0

And the balance of Cash in hand is at Glyn's Bank on Deposit and Current Account.

The Preliminary Expenses are estimated in the prospectus at £3,500.

"THE COMPANIES (CONSOLIDATION) ACT, 1908."

REPORT

(Pursuant to Section 65 of The Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908)

OF

THE EXPLORATIONS TRUST, LIMITED.

To be certified by not less than two Directors, or by the Sole Director and Manager where there is only one, and forwarded at least seven days before the Statutory Meeting to every Member and Debenture Holder of the Company, and to be filed with the Registrar of Companies forthwith after it is so forwarded. Section 65, Sub-sections 2, 3, and 5, and Section 114 of The Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908.

(a) The total number of shares allotted is 90,000, of which 10,000 are allotted as fully paid up in consideration of (as *per purchase agreement*), and upon each of the remaining shares the sum of 5s. has been paid in cash.

(b) The total amount of cash received by the Company in respect of the shares issued wholly for cash is £20,000.

(c) The Receipts and Payments of the Company on Capital Account to 20th June, 1914, are as follow :—

Particulars of Receipts.			Particulars of Payments.		
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
To Amount Received on Application and Allotment of 80,000 Shares.. ..	20,000	0 0	By Preliminary Expenses	2,500	0 0
			„ Investments	10,000	0 0
			„ Directors' Fees	250	0 0
			„ Printing, Stationery, &c.	45	0 0
			„ Balance on Deposit and Current Account at Glyn's Bank	7,205	0 0
	<u>£20,000</u>	<u>0 0</u>		<u>£20,000</u>	<u>0 0</u>

The following is an Account (or Estimate) of the Preliminary Expenses of the Company.

	£	s.	d.
Estimated at.. .. .	3,500	0	0

(d) Names, Addresses and Descriptions of the Directors, Auditors (if any), Managers (if any), and Secretary of the Company.

DIRECTORS.

Surname.	Christian Name.	Address.	Description.
Martin	H.		
Williams.. .. .	J.		
Smithson	J.		

AUDITORS.

Surname.	Christian Name.	Address.	Description.
Gilbertson & Co. ..			

MANAGERS.

Surname.	Christian Name.	Address.	Description.

SECRETARY.

Surname.	Christian Name.	Address.	Description.
Mason	T.		

(e) Particulars of any Contract the modification of which is to be submitted to the Meeting for its approval, together with the particulars of the modification or proposed modification.

We hereby certify this Report.

H. MARTIN,
J. WILLIAMS, } *Directors.*

We hereby certify that so much of this Report as relates to the shares allotted by the Company and to the Cash received in respect of such shares and to the receipts and payments of the Company on Capital Account is correct.

GILBERTSON & CO., *Auditors.*

Dated the 21st day of June, 1914.

Note.

It is doubtful whether Revenue items need be included in the particulars of Receipts and Payments, but it is the more usual course to include them in order that the exact Cash balance may be shewn.

§ 5.—The Various Classes of Share Capital.

The share capital of a Company is frequently divided into different classes, of which the following are the most usual :—

(a) Preference Shares.

These may be either *Simple* or *Cumulative*. The former only carry right to a fixed dividend out of the profits of any year, and if there are insufficient profits in that year to pay the full amount of dividend, they have no right to have such arrears made up out of future profits. They may or may not have a right in respect to repayment of Capital in priority to other classes of shares in the event of liquidation.

Cumulative Preference Shares entitle the holders to a fixed rate of dividend in the same way as Simple Preference Shares, but with the additional right that any arrears of dividend shall be made up out of future profits in priority to any dividends on other classes of shares.

The rights of Preference Shareholders are entirely governed by the Memorandum and Articles of Association, and there are many other varieties than the two enumerated above ; such as, for example, those giving a right to participate in further dividends after the Ordinary Shares have received a certain rate per cent. It should be remembered that, in the absence of express provision in the Articles to the contrary, Preference Shares are Cumulative, and are entitled to rank *pari passu* with other classes of shares in the division of a capital surplus on liquidation, whether or not they have priority as to repayment of Capital.

(b) Ordinary Shares.

Ordinary Shares are those taking the surplus profits remaining after satisfaction of prior interests (if any).

These may be divided as between Preferred and Deferred Ordinary Shares, the former having a preferential right to a fixed rate of dividend over the latter, while the latter frequently have a right to the whole, or a proportion of the surplus profits after the provision of dividends on other classes of shares.

(c) **Founders' Shares or Deferred Shares.**

These shares are usually limited in number, and are sometimes issued fully paid to the original vendors or their nominees, in consideration either of part of the purchase price or of services connected with the formation of the Company. Generally they only rank for dividend after other classes of shares have received certain rates of dividend, when they are then entitled to the whole or a portion of the Surplus Profits.

(d) **The distinction between Stock and Shares.**

The chief differences are as follows :—

- (a) Stock must be fully paid up, whereas Shares need only be partly paid up.
- (b) Stock may be issued or transferred in fractional parts; Shares cannot be divided below the nominal value of each Share.
- (c) Each Share is distinguished by a separate number; Stock possesses no numbers.

§ 6.—The Application and Allotment of Shares.

(a) **Application Letters.**

When the Directors decide to issue Shares, forms of Application Letters will be sent out to those persons who are considered most likely to subscribe, or the same may be printed at the foot of the advertisements of the Prospectus.

In the great majority of cases subscribers are required to remit the amount payable on application direct to the Company's Bankers, who issue formal receipts. The following is a typical form of Application Letter with Bankers' Receipt attached :—

ILLUSTRATION--

THE TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.

FORM OF APPLICATION FOR PREFERENCE SHARES.

No.

To the Directors of

THE TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.

GENTLEMEN,

Having paid to the Bankers of the Company the sum of £ being a deposit of 1s. per Share on application for Preference Shares of £1 each in the above-named Company, I request you to allot to me that number of Preference Shares, upon the terms of the Company's Prospectus dated and I agree to accept the same or any smaller number that may be allotted to me, and I agree to pay the further instalments at the dates and as provided by the said Prospectus, and I authorise you to register me as the holder of the said Preference Shares.

NOTE :

Please write
very
distinctly.

Name (in full)

(Mr., Mrs. or Miss)

Address (in full)

Description

Signature

Date

All Cheques to be made payable to the Company's Bankers. A separate Cheque should accompany each separate Application.

THE TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.

BANKERS' RECEIPT.

No.

Received this day of 19.....
from.....
for the credit of THE TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED, the sum of £
being a Deposit of 1s. per Share on Preference Shares of £1 each
in the above-named Company.

FOR THE GENERAL BANKING CORPORATION, LIMITED.

£

:

STAMP.

Cashier.

This Receipt, when returned from the Bankers, to be preserved by the Applicant for exchange in due course for Share Certificate.

This Sheet should be sent ENTIRE, with the deposit of 1s. per Share applied for, to THE GENERAL BANKING CORPORATION, Limited, London Wall, E.C.

(b) Application and Allotment Book.

Each day the Company will obtain from the Bank the Pass Book and Application Letters, and these will be entered up immediately in an *Application and Allotment Book*, a form of which is as follows:—

ILLUSTRATION—

APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT BOOK.

Number of Application. Date Received.	NAME.	ADDRESS.	Description.	No. of Shares applied for.	ALLOTMENT.				Amount paid on application.	AMOUNT DUE AND PAID ON ALLOTMENT.				Calls paid in advance.	Amount returnable (if any).	Share Ledger Folio.	No. of Share Certificate.	REMARKS.
					Date.	No. of Shares allotted.	Distinctive No. of Shares.			Amount payable.	Date paid.	Cash Book Folio.	Amount paid.					
							From	To										

Each Application Letter will be numbered in consecutive order as received, and the name, address and description of the Applicant, the number of shares applied for, and the amount paid on application, will be entered in the Application and Allotment Book. As soon as the lists are closed, and it is ascertained that the Minimum Subscription has been reached, the Directors will proceed to allot the shares, and Minutes of all Allotments will appear in the Directors' Minute Book. The Application and Allotment Book should be also initialled by one of the Directors at the point to which Allotments have been made. The number of shares allotted and the distinctive numbers of such shares, together with the amount payable on allotment, will be entered in the columns provided for that purpose.

(c) Letters of Allotment and Regret.

Letters of Allotment require to be stamped. If the amount to which the letter relates is under £5, the duty is One Penny, otherwise Sixpence. In the event of the issue being over-subscribed, or if for any other reason applications are refused or only allotted in part, the necessary particulars must be entered in the columns provided for that purpose in the Application and Allotment Book, and a Letter of Regret forwarded to the Applicant. The following is a typical form of an Allotment Letter:—

ILLUSTRATION—

THE TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.

LETTER OF ALLOTMENT.

No.

LONDON, E.C.,

19.....

SIR, or MADAM,

In accordance with your application, I beg to inform you that the Directors have allotted to you Shares in this Company.

The total amount payable on the above Shares upon Application and Allotment is £ : :

You have paid on application £ : :

Leaving still to be paid by you... .. £ : :

which sum is now due, and must be paid to the Company's Bankers, THE GENERAL BANKING CORPORATION, LIMITED, London Wall, London, E.C.

I am, SIR, or MADAM,

Yours faithfully,

Secretary.

To

THIS PORTION TO BE RETAINED BY THE BANKERS.

THE TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.

Bankers' Receipt for Amount payable on Allotment.

No.

Received this

day of

19.....,

from

the sum of £ ..

being

per Share payable on allotment

of ..

Shares in the above Company.

For THE GENERAL BANKING CORPORATION, LIMITED,

£

:

:

STAMP.

Cashier.

N.B.—This receipt to be retained by the Proprietor, and exchanged for Certificate in due course.

This Form to be sent ENTIRE, with Cheque for the amount payable on Allotment, to the Company's Bankers, THE GENERAL BANKING CORPORATION, Limited, London Wall, E.C.

(d) Vendors' and Signatories' Shares.

The shares subscribed for by the Signatories to the Memorandum and Articles of Association do not require to be specifically allotted, but should, nevertheless, be entered in the Application and Allotment Book in the first instance. As regards shares allotted to Vendors and others, for a consideration other than cash, when these are allotted they should be entered in the Application and Allotment Book on a separate sheet, so as to avoid their being confused with Shares Issued for Cash. When shares are issued to Nominees of the Vendor, a written authority must be obtained from him, authorizing the Company to allot to such Nominees, and containing a list of the parties, with their names, addresses and descriptions, and the number of shares to be allotted to each.

When the Pass Book is received from the Bankers each day, the amounts received on Application and Allotment will be entered in the Cash Book, and also in the columns provided for that purpose in the Application and Allotment Book. The details each day will be inserted in an inner column of the Cash Book, and the totals extended into the outer column. The items will be posted in detail to the credit of the Shareholders' Cash Accounts in the Share Ledger, and in total to the credit of the Application and Allotment Account in the General Ledger.

(e) Calls.

In some cases columns are provided in the Application and Allotment Book for Calls, but it is more usual to have separate *Call Books*, which are provided with columns showing the amount due, and the date and amount of payment. *Call Letters* will be issued with forms of Bankers' Receipts attached, calls being payable direct to the Company's Bankers, in the same way as amounts due on allotment.

In due course Certificates will be made out and issued to the Shareholders in exchange for their Allotment Letters and Bankers' Receipts for Application, Allotment and Calls.

(f) Return of Allotments.

Under § 88 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, whenever a Company Limited by Shares makes any allotment of its shares, the Company shall, within one month thereafter, file with the Registrar—

- (1) A return of the allotments, stating the number and nominal amount of the shares comprised in the allotment, the names, addresses and descriptions of the allottees, and the amount (if any) paid or due and payable on each share ; and
- (2) In the case of shares allotted as fully or partly paid up otherwise than in cash, a contract in writing constituting the title of the allottee to the allotment, or, if there is no contract in writing a statement in lieu thereof, together with any contract of sale, or for services or other consideration in respect of which that allotment was made, such contracts being duly stamped, and a return stating the number and nominal amount of shares so allotted, the extent to which they are to be treated as paid up, and the consideration for which they have been allotted.

If default is made in complying with the requirements of this section, every Director, Manager, Secretary or other officer of the Company who is knowingly a party to the default shall be liable to a fine not exceeding fifty pounds for every day during which the default continues.

(g) Journal Entries relating to the Issue of Shares.

Each time that an allotment of shares is made an entry should be made in the Journal, debiting an Application and Allotment Account with the amount payable on application and allotment in respect of the shares so allotted, and crediting Share Capital Account, reference being made to the Minutes of Allotment and to the pages in the Application and Allotment Book, where the details are shown. If more than one class of Capital is being issued, separate accounts must be opened in the ledger for each class.

Similar entries must be made debiting the Vendor or other persons, and crediting Share Capital, in respect of all shares issued for a consideration other than cash, reference being made to the Minutes of Allotment, and to the contract under which the shares are issued.

When calls are made, an entry must be made debiting Call Account and crediting Share Capital Account with the total amount due in respect of the call.

(h) Shares issued at a Premium.

While shares cannot be issued at a discount, they are frequently issued at a premium. When this is done, the premium is in the nature of a Capital Receipt, and the proceeds thereof should be retained in the business for use as working capital, or specifically invested. Premiums should not be treated as Revenue Profits, or utilized in the payment of dividends, although, unless the Articles state otherwise, there is nothing to prevent the Company doing so. They may, however, be used for the purpose of writing off fictitious assets, such as preliminary expenses, or writing down Goodwill, or other fixed assets.

The premium is usually made payable with the instalment due on allotment, and consequently the Journal Entry for allotment must contain the amount in respect of premium, but this latter portion should not be credited to Share Capital Account, but direct to a separate Premium on Shares Account, the balance of which may subsequently be transferred to General Reserve Account.

The only reason why shares can be issued at a Premium is because high dividends have been paid on shares already issued, and it is expected that high dividends will be paid on the shares about to be issued. If, however, the premium on these shares is distributed as dividend, and only the nominal value retained in the business for working capital, it is improbable that by the use of such capital the high rate of dividend previously declared will be earned on the additional shares issued. But of course this argument will not always apply, and the financial policy to be adopted must be determined according to the circumstances of each case.

ILLUSTRATION—

On 30th April, 1914, a Company goes to allotment, and the following shares are allotted :—
 80,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each;
 50,000 5 per Cent. Preference Shares of £1 each,
 payable as follows : 2s. 6d. on application, 2s. 6d. on allotment, 5s. one month after allotment,
 and 10s. three months after allotment. The Ordinary Shares are issued at a premium of
 2s. 6d. per share, payable on allotment. Make the Journal entries recording these transactions.

JOURNAL.

1914.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
April 30	Application and Allotment Account (Ordinary Shares) Dr.	30,000	0	0			
	To Sundries—						
	Ordinary Share Capital Account				20,000	0	0
	Premium on Share Account				10,000	0	0
	Being 2s. 6d. on application and 5s. on allotment (2s. 6d. thereof being premium) on 80,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, allotted as per minute of this date.	£30,000	0	0	£30,000	0	0
April 30	Application and Allotment Account (Preference Shares) Dr.	12,500	0	0			
	To Preference Share Capital Account				12,500	0	0
	Being 2s. 6d. on application and 2s. 6d. on allotment of 50,000 Preference Shares of £1 each, allotted as per minute of this date.						
May 31	First Call Account (Ordinary Shares) Dr.	20,000	0	0			
	To Ordinary Share Capital Account				20,000	0	0
	Being First Call of 5s. on 80,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each.						
May 31	First Call Account (Preference Shares) Dr.	12,500	0	0			
	To Preference Share Capital Account				12,500	0	0
	Being First Call of 5s. on 50,000 Preference Shares of £1 each.						
July 31	Final Call Account (Ordinary Shares) Dr.	40,000	0	0			
	To Ordinary Share Capital Account				40,000	0	0
	Being Final Call of 10s. on 80,000 Ordinary Shares.						
July 31	Final Call Account (Preference Shares) Dr.	25,000	0	0			
	To Preference Share Capital Account				25,000	0	0
	Being Final Call of 10s. on 50,000 Preference Shares.						

§ 7.—The Share Books.

(a) The Share Ledger.

This book, which is often arranged so that it can be utilized as the Register of Members required to be kept by Statute, as previously mentioned, contains an account for each Shareholder, showing the number of shares he has acquired, the number he has transferred, and the balance standing in his name. If shares are issued partly paid up, cash columns must be provided to record the payment of Calls. As soon, however, as the shares become fully paid, the cash columns will no longer be necessary. Where there are different classes of shares, there must either be separate Share Ledgers for each class, or separate columns must be provided in order to distinguish between the various classes of shares held by each Member. The following is a convenient form of ruling :—

(c) **The Share Warrant Register.**

It is a common practice among certain Companies, particularly those who have foreign Shareholders, to issue *Share Warrants to Bearer*, instead of having certificates which require registration. In such a case, since these Share Warrants are in the nature of negotiable instruments, a precise record must be kept of all those printed, and of all those issued, and to whom. For this purpose a *Share Warrant Register* will be utilized, to show to whom the warrants were issued, the numbers of such warrants, and the distinctive numbers of the shares to which they relate.

Share Warrants can only be issued in respect of shares fully paid up.

§ 8.—**Preliminary and Formation Expenses.**

This is the term given to the expenses incident to the creation and flotation of a Company. The following items are usually found :—

- (1) Stamp duties and fees on the Nominal Capital, and stamps on the contracts transferring the assets.
- (2) The law costs of preparing the Prospectus, Memorandum and Articles of Association and Contracts, and of the Registration of the Company.
- (3) Accountants' and Valuers' Fees for Certificates, &c.
- (4) Printing Memorandum and Articles of Association, advertising and issue of prospectuses.
- (5) Underwriting Commission, and Commission on placing shares.

(a) *Underwriting Commission* is the amount payable to persons who undertake to subscribe for a certain number of shares in the event of the public not taking up the whole of the shares offered. An underwriting contract is therefore in

the nature of a speculation. If the public respond to the total extent of the shares offered, the underwriters receive their commission, and do not have to take up any shares. If the public only partially respond, the underwriters have to take up the shares not subscribed for in proportion to their contracts. It is usual for the underwriters to make formal application for the shares they underwrite, on the understanding that allotments will be made only to the extent to which the public do not apply.

(b) *Commission on placing shares* is an amount payable to parties who introduce persons to the Company willing to become Members, and to take up shares accordingly. This commission, therefore, differs from Underwriting Commission in so far as it is not a speculative transaction, and is only paid in the event of Capital being introduced.

These payments are authorized by § 89 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908. The amount or rate per cent. of the Commission must be authorized by the Articles of Association, and disclosed in the Prospectus, or the Statement required to be filed with the Registrar in lieu thereof, and in any invitation to subscribe for shares not being a Prospectus.

This Commission is usually payable in cash, but sometimes by the issue of fully paid shares, or partly in one form and partly in the other.

Under § 90 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, the total amount of this Commission, together with any discount on the issue of Debentures, or so much thereof as has not been written off, must be stated in every Balance Sheet until the whole amount has been written off.

(6) Brokerage on placing Shares.

This is an amount payable to Brokers whose clients subscribe for shares in the Company on Application Forms Stamped with the Brokers' Stamp.

- (7) Cost of printing Share Certificates, &c., and cost of original books.

These preliminary and formation expenses are sometimes borne entirely by the Company, and sometimes by the Vendors, or apportioned between these parties, the expenses up to allotment being payable by the Vendors, and the expenses afterwards by the Company. Care must be taken to see that the Company is only charged with expenses properly payable by it.

This expenditure is, strictly speaking, of a Capital nature, but as it is unrepresented by available assets, it is usual to write it off as soon as possible out of Revenue, the usual period being from three to five years. The balance not written off will be carried forward in the Balance Sheet on the asset side, Underwriting and other Commission on the issue of shares being shown separately.

§ 9.—Mortgages and Debentures.

(a) Definition of Mortgage.

A Mortgage is a conditional transfer of property made for the purpose of securing repayment of a loan with interest. Until default is made in the terms of the Deed, either as regards the payment of interest or the repayment of principal, or in any other way, the Mortgagor (*i.e.* the borrower) retains possession and use of the property, but as he does not possess the legal title thereto he cannot convey it without the consent of the Mortgagee (*i.e.* the Lender).

The entries in a Company's books when money is borrowed on mortgage will be to debit Cash and credit the Mortgagee. A note should be made in the Ledger Account of the asset charged under the Mortgage. The proper entry must be made in the Register of Mortgages. In the Balance Sheet the loan should be shown separately on the liability side of the Balance Sheet as Loan on Mortgage, and a note should be made under the asset charged. Sometimes the method is adopted of deducting the amount of the Mortgage from the asset, and only extending the

surplus on the asset side of the Balance Sheet; but this is not recommended, as it has the effect of reducing the totals of the assets and liabilities respectively.

(b) Definition of Debenture.

A Debenture is a written acknowledgment of a debt by a Company under seal, usually containing provisions as to payment of interest and repayment of principal. It may be either a Simple or Naked Debenture carrying no charge, or a Mortgage Debenture carrying either a fixed or floating charge on some or all of the assets of the Company, either including or not, as the case may be, the uncalled Capital of the Company.

Under § 93 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, all mortgages and charges affecting the property of a Company, as defined in that section, must be registered within 21 days after the date of creation with the Registrar of Joint Stock Companies, otherwise they will be void against the Liquidator and any creditor of the Company, so far as the security comprised by the charge is concerned. If so rendered void, the principal moneys will immediately become repayable.

Debentures will either take the form of bonds to bearer, or they may be registered in the names of the holders, transmission being by transfer. In such a case a *Debenture Ledger* must be kept, similar in form to the Share Ledger previously described, in order to record the necessary particulars. Debenture stock may also be issued, the distinction between this and Registered Bonds being similar to the distinction between Stock and Shares mentioned earlier in this Chapter.

On the issue of a series of Debentures by a Company it is usual for two or more persons to be appointed as Trustees for the Debenture Holders, for the purpose of looking after their interests, and taking any action that may be necessary.

Entries in the books of a Company on the issue of Debentures will be similar to those on the occasion of an issue of Shares, sundry Debenture Holders being debited with the various instalments due, and Debenture Account credited. The proper entry must also be made

in the Register of Mortgages kept by the Company, a form of which is printed in § 4 of this Chapter.

(c) Debentures Issued at a Premium.

When Debentures are issued at a premium, the premium may be dealt with in various ways. Unless the Articles prevent, the premium can be treated as Revenue Profit, and distributed in dividend, but it is not wise to do this. It may either be put to Reserve Account, or be made to form the nucleus of a Debenture Redemption Fund. It may also be used to write off fictitious assets, or to write down fixed assets. It is usual to charge the expenses of issuing the Debentures against the premium received.

In the Balance-Sheet the Debentures will show as a liability at their nominal value.

(d) Debentures Issued at a Discount.

Unlike Share Capital, Debenture Capital can be issued at a Discount, and the discount can be regarded as a lump sum allowed to the lenders at the time of their taking up the Debentures, in consideration of a lower rate of interest being payable than would have been the case had the Debentures been issued at par. The financial position of the Company and the state of the money market at the date of issue are important factors in determining the price of issue.

The Debentures will stand in the Balance Sheet on the liability side at their nominal value, and the discount will be written off over a period of years, the balance remaining at any date being carried forward in the Balance Sheet, and shown separately as such under § 90 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908. As this discount does not represent any available asset, it is very advisable that it should be written off as soon as possible. It cannot be said, however, to be incorrect to write off the discount over the period for which the Debentures run, and in that case, when no sinking Fund is formed for the purpose of repaying the Debentures and the Debentures are repayable at the end of a given

period, an equal amount of the discount should be written off each year. If the Debentures are repayable by annual drawings without the provision of a Sinking Fund, the discount should be written off in relative proportion to the amount of Debentures outstanding, in order that the periods enjoying the use of the greater portion of the Debentures should be charged with the greater portion of the discount.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Company issues, on 1st January, 1912, thirty Debentures of £100 each at 90, repayable by instalments of £1,000 at the end of the first, second and third years respectively. Show the Discount Account, assuming the Discount to be written off over the period proportionately.

Dr.				DISCOUNT ON ISSUE OF DEBENTURES ACCOUNT.				Cr.							
1912.				£ s. d.				1912.				£ s. d.			
Jan. 1	To Debenture Account	..		300	0	0		Dec. 31	By P. & L. Account— three-sixths of £300	..		150	0	0	
									By Balance .. ..	..		150	0	0
				<u>£300 0 0</u>								<u>£300 0 0</u>			
1913.				£ s. d.				1913.				£ s. d.			
Jan. 1	To Balance	.. ..		150	0	0		Dec. 31	By P. & L. Account— two-sixths of £300	..		100	0	0
									„ Balance .. ..	..		50	0	0
				<u>£150 0 0</u>								<u>£150 0 0</u>			
1914.				£ s. d.				1914.				£ s. d.			
Jan. 1	To Balance	.. ..		50	0	0		Dec. 31	By P. & L. Account— one-sixth of £300	..		50	0	0
				<u>£50 0 0</u>								<u>£50 0 0</u>			

Note to Illustration.

In the above it will be seen that the amount of discount written off in the first year is three times the amount written off in the last, since the amount of Debentures outstanding during the first year is three times the amount outstanding during the last. The way to arrive at the proper calculation is to take the period of years, and add up the various numbers comprising it. In the above Illustration the period is three years, and the numbers added together will be 3 plus 2 plus 1 = 6. In the first year, therefore, three-sixths of the discount must be written off, in the second year two-sixths, and in the third year one-sixth.

Where the redemption of the nominal amount of the Debentures repayable is provided for by charges against Profit and Loss, such charge will include the provision for discount, and consequently the same can be written off against the credit balance of the Redemption Account.

(e) Debentures Repayable at a Premium.

These Debentures will stand in the Balance Sheet as a liability at their nominal amount, with a note of the amount at which they are repayable, any discount or premium on issue being treated in one of the ways described above.

If a Sinking Fund is formed to provide for repayment, the same should include provision for the payment of the premium on redemption. If no Sinking Fund is formed, the premium should be provided for out of profits over the period of the Debentures.

(f) Redemption of Debentures.

Debentures may be irredeemable, but this is infrequent in the case of a Limited Company. It is more usual to find irredeemable Debentures or Debenture Stock in the case of Companies formed under special Act of Parliament.

Debentures may either be redeemable at the end of a given period or by annual drawings. The Trust Deed will contain provisions for redemption, and will also usually stipulate for the provision of a Sinking Fund being formed out of profits for the purpose of repayment. An illustration of the entries in the Company's books in a case of this sort is given in Chapter IV., § 8.

Another method which has recently come into considerable favour is for the Company to take out an endowment policy with an Insurance Company for the amount of the Debentures. In such a case the procedure in the Company's books will be on similar lines to that described in Chapter IV., § 3 (e), dealing with an endowment policy taken out for the purpose of replacing a lease.

Under § 104 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, it is now legal for a Company to redeem its Debentures either by purchase or otherwise, and to keep them alive for re-issue, unless the Articles of the Company or the conditions of issue expressly otherwise provide, or unless the Debentures have been redeemed in pursuance of any obligation on the Company so to do.

(g) Debentures issued as Collateral Security for a Loan.

It is a common practice for Companies to issue their own Debentures as collateral security against a loan or overdraft from a Bank or other parties. The Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, § 104, sub-section (3) expressly refers to this procedure, and provides that such Debentures

shall not be deemed to have been redeemed by reason only of the account of the Company having ceased to be in debit whilst the Debentures remained so deposited.

The term collateral security means a security which can be realised by the party holding it, in the event of the original loan in respect of which the security was given not being repaid at the proper time, or in any other specified cases, according to the agreement between the parties. As soon as the loan is repaid the collateral security is automatically released.

When Debentures are issued in this manner they should be shown in short in the Balance Sheet, and stated as having been issued as collateral security. The loan against which they are issued will be extended as a liability in the usual way.

It is preferred by some to record the transaction by crediting the Debenture Account with these Debentures, and debiting a Debenture Suspense Account with the same amount, the latter item showing on the asset side of the Balance Sheet. When the Debentures are released the entry is written back, and consequently will disappear from both sides of the Balance Sheet. There does not appear to be any particular advantage to be obtained in adopting this method, as the whole of the facts are clearly disclosed in the Balance Sheet by the first method of treatment described above.

§ 10.—The Purchase of a Private Business by a Limited Company.

In many cases Private Businesses are turned into Limited Liability Companies for family reasons, particularly to facilitate arrangements on the death of one of the Proprietors who may be possessed of a large sum of capital in the business, the withdrawal of which by his Executors might have serious effects on the financial position. This difficulty can be entirely overcome by converting the business into a Private Limited Company, the former partners receiving in exchange for their Capital and Goodwill, Cash, Shares, or Debentures, as the case may

be. The shares of a Limited Company being transmissible by will, and the death of any member not affecting the constitution of a Limited Company, no inconvenience will arise in the event of such deaths taking place.

In addition to private arrangements of this nature, a Public Company is very often formed for the purpose of acquiring a Private Business, and in this case the usual procedure is for a Promoter or a Syndicate to purchase the business from the original owners, and resell to the Company at a profit.

In either case the transactions to be recorded from the Company's point of view are the same. It by no means follows, however, that the assets acquired by the Company will be taken at the same valuation as that at which they stood in the books of the firm. In cases where a public issue is made, there is usually a revaluation of all the fixed assets, and frequently the Vendors guarantee the Book Debts to be good. In many cases it is usual for the Company to take over the trade liabilities as part of the purchase consideration.

In addition, however, to the purchase price of the actual assets acquired, there is usually a further sum payable in respect of Goodwill, which is generally more or less based on so many years' average profits. All Companies making a public issue must specifically state in their prospectus the amount of the purchase consideration allotted to Goodwill; but from the book-keeping point of view it should be remembered that the Goodwill will be represented by the excess of the purchase consideration payable to the Vendor over the value of the actual assets acquired, less liabilities taken over (if any).

(a) Entries in the Books.

The Journal Entries in the Company's books necessary to record transactions of this nature will be as follows:—

- (1) Debit accounts with the various assets acquired, and Goodwill, and credit the Vendor and any liabilities that may be taken over by the Company.

(2) Debit the Vendor, and credit Share Capital Account, Debentures, Cash, &c., for payment of the purchase consideration.

ILLUSTRATION —

A Company takes over the following assets and liabilities of a private business :—

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Leasehold Property	7,000	0	0			
Plant and Machinery	3,000	0	0			
Stock-in-Trade	4,600	0	0			
Sundry Debtors	3,000	0	0			
Cash	1,500	0	0			
Less Trade Creditors				19,100	0	0
				2,100	0	0
				<u>£17,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

The purchase consideration is £20,000, and is payable to the Vendor as follows :—£10,000 in Ordinary Shares of £5 each fully paid, £5,000 in 5 per cent. Preference Shares of £5 each fully paid, and the balance in cash. Show the opening Journal Entries in the books of the Company.

JOURNAL.

	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sundries.							
To Sundries—							
Leasehold Property		7,000	0	0			
Plant and Machinery		3,000	0	0			
Stock-in-Trade		4,600	0	0			
Sundry Debtors		3,000	0	0			
Cash		1,500	0	0			
Goodwill		3,600	0	0			
Sundry Creditors					2,100	0	0
Vendor					20,000	0	0
Being sundry assets and liabilities taken over as per contract dated		<u>£22,100</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>£22,100</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Vendor	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Sundries—		20,000	0	0			
Ordinary Share Capital—2,000 Shares of £5 each fully paid					10,000	0	0
Preference Share Capital—1,000 Shares of £5 each fully paid					5,000	0	0
Cash					5,000	0	0
Being discharge of purchase consideration as per contract dated		<u>£20,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>£20,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Note to Illustration.

In making the first Journal Entry the figure of Goodwill will be ascertained by taking the difference between the assets, less liabilities taken over, and the purchase consideration payable to the Vendor.

The following illustration shows the effect of the conversion of a Private Firm into a Limited Company on the books of the firm, and also the entries in the books of the Company :—

ILLUSTRATION—

The X. Company, Limited, was formed to purchase the business of A. and B., who share profits, two-thirds and one-third respectively, and whose Balance Sheet at 30th June, 1913, was as follows :—

BALANCE SHEET.

Dr.	A. AND B.			Cr.
	£	s.	d.	£ s. d.
To Creditors	2,700	0	0	By Goodwill 1,000 0 0
„ Bills Payable	900	0	0	„ Freehold Property 5,000 0 0
„ Loan Account	400	0	0	„ Plant and Machinery 2,500 0 0
„ Capitals :—				„ Stock 3,000 0 0
A. £8,000				„ Debtors £3,100
B. 5,000				Less Reserve 200
	13,000	0	0	„ Bills Receivable 800 0 0
				„ Investments 600 0 0
				„ Cash 1,200 0 0
	£17,000	0	0	£17,000 0 0

The Company takes over the assets at book value, with the exception of the Freehold Property, which is taken over at £6,000. The investments are retained by the firm, and sold by them for £450. They also discharge the loan of £400, but the Company takes over the remaining liabilities.

The purchase consideration for the net assets taken over is fixed at £18,950, payable as follows :—£9,500 5 per Cent. Debentures, £7,600 fully paid Ordinary Shares of £1 each, and the balance in cash. A. and B. agree to divide the assets forming the purchase consideration in proportion to the balances standing to the credit of their respective Capital Accounts, after the adjustments rendered necessary by the sale of the business and investments have been completed.

Show the Ledger Accounts closing the firm's books, and the Journal Entries opening the Company's books.

FIRM'S BOOKS.

REALISATION ACCOUNT.

Dr.	REALISATION ACCOUNT.			Cr.
	£	s.	d.	£ s. d.
To Freehold Property	5,000	0	0	By Creditors 2,700 0 0
„ Plant and Machinery	2,500	0	0	„ Bills Payable 900 0 0
„ Goodwill	1,000	0	0	„ Reserve for Bad Debts 200 0 0
„ Stock	3,000	0	0	„ Purchasing Co. 18,950 0 0
„ Debtors	3,100	0	0	
„ Bills Receivable	800	0	0	
„ Cash	1,200	0	0	
„ Balance, being profit on realisation	6,150	0	0	
	£22,750	0	0	£22,750 0 0
To Capital Accounts :—	£	s.	d.	By Balance 6,150 0 0
A. two-thirds of £6,150	4,100	0	0	
B. one-third „ „	2,050	0	0	
	£6,150	0	0	£6,150 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		CASH BOOK.		<i>Cr.</i>	
		£	s. d.		£ s. d.
To Purchasing Co.		1,850	0 0	By Loan Account	400 0 0
„ Investments		450	0 0	„ Balance	1,900 0 0
		£2,300	0 0		£2,300 0 0
<hr/>					
		£	s. d.		£ s. d.
To Balance.. .. .		1,900	0 0	By A. Capital Account	1,200 0 0
		£1,900	0 0	„ B. „ „	700 0 0
					£1,900 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		INVESTMENTS.		<i>Cr.</i>	
		£	s. d.		£ s. d.
To Balance.. .. .		600	0 0	By Cash	450 0 0
		£600	0 0	„ Balance, being loss	150 0 0
					£600 0 0
<hr/>					
		£	s. d.		£ s. d.
To Balance.. .. .		150	0 0	By Capital Accounts—	
		£150	0 0	A. two-thirds of £150	100 0 0
				B. one-third of £150	50 0 0
					£150 0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		LOAN ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>	
		£	s. d.		£ s. d.
To Cash		400	0 0	By Balance	400 0 0

NEW COMPANY'S BOOKS. JOURNAL.

<i>Dr.</i>		£	s. d.	<i>Cr.</i>		£	s. d.
Sundries.							
To Sundries—							
Freehold Property		6,000	0 0				
Plant and Machinery		2,500	0 0				
Stock		3,000	0 0				
Debtors		3,100	0 0				
Bills Receivable		800	0 0				
Cash		1,200	0 0				
Goodwill		6,150	0 0				
Creditors				2,700	0 0		
Bills Payable				900	0 0		
Reserve for Bad Debts				200	0 0		
Vendor				18,950	0 0		
		£22,750	0 0		£22,750	0 0	
Being sundry assets and liabilities taken over as per contract dated							

NOTE.—The figure of Goodwill is ascertained by taking the difference between the assets, less liabilities taken over, and the purchase consideration payable to the Vendor.

<i>Dr.</i>		£	s. d.	<i>Cr.</i>		£	s. d.
Vendor.		18,950	0 0				
To Sundries—							
Ordinary Share Capital				7,600	0 0		
Debentures				9,500	0 0		
Cash				1,850	0 0		
		£18,950	0 0		£18,950	0 0	

Being 7,600 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, and 9,500 5 % Debentures issued fully paid, and cash paid in settlement of purchase consideration as per contract dated

Note to Illustration.

The figure of Goodwill can be proved as follows :—

The Goodwill is the difference between the book value of the net assets taken over as shown by the books of the firm (subject to any revaluation of the assets by the new Company) and the purchase consideration.

					£	s.	d.
Thus the book value of the assets taken over was	..	..	..	..	16,400	0	0
Less book value of liabilities taken over	..	..	..	..	3,600	0	0
Book value of net assets taken over	..	..	..	..	£12,800	0	0
The purchase consideration was	..	..	..	..	18,950	0	0
Less book value of net assets as above..	..	..	..	..	12,800	0	0
Goodwill subject to adjustment	..	..	..	..	6,150	0	0
Add original value of Goodwill taken over and included in book value of net assets	..	..	..	..	1,000	0	0
					7,150	0	0
Less adjusted difference in the revaluation of freehold premises	..			..	1,000	0	0
Goodwill as shown in new Company's books	..	..		..	£6,150	0	0

(b) Apportionment of Profit prior to Incorporation.

Frequently a Company takes over a business as and from a date prior to the incorporation of the Company itself. In such an event any profits earned prior to the date of incorporation to which the Company may be entitled cannot be regarded as profits available for dividend, but are of a capital nature, since the Company cannot earn profits before it comes into existence. When the Vendor is not entitled to take such profits himself, he is usually entitled to interest on the purchase consideration from the date when the business was taken over, to the date when the purchase consideration is discharged. If that is so, the interest payable to the Vendor for the period from the date of taking the business over till the date of incorporation can be charged against the profits earned during that period, any interest payable in respect of any period after the date of incorporation being charged against the Profit and Loss Account. The remaining balance of profits earned prior to incorporation (if any) should either be written off the Goodwill, or, if there be no Goodwill, some other fixed asset, or carried forward as a capital reserve not available for revenue purposes.

If stock is not taken at the date of incorporation, and the exact profits thereto cannot consequently be ascertained, it is usual to arrive

at the proportion of profits applicable to the period prior to incorporation, either by apportioning the whole profits earned according to the periods themselves, or in proportion to the turnover of those periods, the latter being, strictly speaking, the more correct method.

The date of the division, in these cases, should be the date of incorporation, and not the date of the certificate entitling the Company to commence business; since once that certificate has been issued, the Company's power of legally carrying on business dates back to the date of incorporation.

§ 11.—Forfeited Shares.

The Articles will usually give power to the Directors to forfeit shares in respect of which calls are unpaid and overdue, proper notice having been given to the Shareholder that unless he pays up his calls his shares will be forfeited. The revised Table A also gives power to forfeit for non-payment of premium.

When such forfeiture takes place the Capital Account should be debited with the amount called up in respect of the shares, and Forfeited Shares Account credited. The calls in arrear in respect of these shares will have shown as a debit balance, either to the debit of the Call Account or the Sundry Shareholders' Account. These should be written off against the Forfeited Shares Account. The credit balance of this account will then represent the actual cash received in respect of the shares forfeited.

Until these shares are re-issued this balance should stand as a separate item in the Balance Sheet, as a liability under the heading of Forfeited Shares Account.

Forfeited Shares can be re-issued as fully paid at any price, as long as that price, plus the cash originally received before forfeiture, together amount to at least the par value of the shares in question. If in such a case after the proper adjustments have been made there still remains a credit balance on the Forfeited Shares Account, this can be transferred to General Reserve, or even to Profit and Loss Account (unless the Articles forbid), although this course is not advisable.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Company has an issued Capital of £20,000 in shares of £1 each fully paid, with the exception of 200 shares 10s. paid. The latter are forfeited for non-payment of calls, and subsequently re-issued fully paid at the price of 15s. per share. Show the entries in the Company's Journal and Ledger recording these transactions.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Share Capital Account <i>Dr.</i>	200	0	0			
To Forfeited Shares Account				200	0	0
Being 200 shares of £1 each forfeited for non-payment of calls as per minute dated						
Forfeited Shares Account <i>Dr.</i>	100	0	0			
To Sundry Shareholders				100	0	0
Being calls in arrear 10s. per share on 200 shares forfeited now transferred.						
Sundries. <i>Dr.</i>						
To Share Capital Account				200	0	0
Sundry Shareholders	150	0	0			
Forfeited Shares Account	50	0	0			
Being re-issue of 200 forfeited shares of £1 each as fully paid at 15s. per share.						

LEDGER.

Dr.

SHARE CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Forfeited Shares Account	200	0	0	By Balance	20,000	0	0
„ Balance	20,000	0	0	„ Sundries	200	0	0
	<u>£20,200</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>20,200</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£20,000	0	0

Dr.

FORFEITED SHARES ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Sundry Shareholders	100	0	0	By Share Capital Account	200	0	0
„ Share Capital Account	50	0	0				
„ Balance	50	0	0		<u>£200</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	<u>£200</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	By Balance	£50	0	0

Dr.

SUNDRY SHAREHOLDERS' ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Balance	100	0	0	By Forfeited Shares Account	100	0	0
„ Share Capital Account	150	0	0	„ Cash	150	0	0
	<u>£250</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£250</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Note to Illustration.

As the shares in question are now re-issued, the balance of the Forfeited Shares Account, after transferring 5s. per share (the amount necessary to make the price of re-issue up to par), is an absolute profit, and may either be carried forward in the Balance Sheet or transferred to Reserve Account, or even to Profit and Loss, unless the Articles forbid; but this last course is not to be recommended.

§ 12.—Bonus Shares.

(a) Issue of Bonus Shares at par.

When a Company has accumulated large profits in the shape of Reserves which it wishes to continue to utilize in the business as working capital, but at the same time it is considered desirable to afford the present Shareholders some advantage in respect thereof, it is usual to capitalise such reserves by issuing Bonus Shares as fully paid up to the Shareholders in respect of such profits or some part thereof.

No cash passes between the Company and its Shareholders in respect of these transactions, the Shareholders' resolution to pay the bonus being so framed as to give the Company authority to apply the same in the requisite manner.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Company having a Reserve of £25,000 and a paid-up Capital of £100,000 in £1 shares resolves to pay a bonus of 20 per cent. out of its Reserve by the issue of one share fully paid for each five shares held. Show the Journal Entries recording the transaction.

JOURNAL.

Reserve Account Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Bonus Account	20,000	0	0	20,000	0	0
Being Bonus of 20 % payable out of the Reserve Account in fully paid shares as per Resolution of Shareholders dated						
Bonus Account Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Share Capital Account	20,000	0	0	20,000	0	0
Being issue of 20,000 shares of £1 each fully paid in satisfaction of Bonus at the rate of one share for every five held.						

(b) Issue of Bonus Shares at a Premium.

When the shares of the Company stand at a high premium it is not good financial policy to issue such Bonus Shares at par, since, although this may be of very great advantage to present Shareholders, it may operate very unfavourably for the Company and future Shareholders. The reason for this is that the new shares in respect of which the Company has accumulated profits to the extent of the par value will rank for dividend in the same manner as the original shares, which had the advantage of the use as additional working capital of the very reserves now being distributed as Bonus. These having now disappeared by the issue of the new shares, it may be difficult for the Company to continue to pay on the total issue the same rate of dividend as formerly.

The proper method when the market quotation is at a premium is to issue the Bonus Shares at a fair average premium, when the proportion of the Bonus in respect of such premium will remain in the business, and will not rank for future dividends.

ILLUSTRATION -

A Company having a Capital of £50,000 in shares of £1 each fully paid, standing at £4 10s. 0d. per share, distributes a Bonus out of the Reserve Account at the rate of 100 per cent., payable in fully paid shares at a premium of £3 per share.

Show the Journal Entries necessary to record these transactions.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Reserve Account Dr.	50,000	0	0			
To Bonus Account				50,000	0	0
Being Bonus at the rate of 100% on 50,000 shares of £1 each as per Resolution dated						
Bonus Account Dr.	50,000	0	0			
To Sundries—						
Share Capital Account				12,500	0	0
Premium on Shares Account				37,500	0	0
Being payment of Bonus by the issue of 12,500 shares of £1 each fully paid at a premium of £3 per share, as per Resolution dated						
	£50,000	0	0	£50,000	0	0

(c) Application of Bonus to Payment of Calls.

Another method when the existing shares are only partly called up is to apply the bonus to the payment of a call on the shares.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Company having a Nominal and Issued Capital of £100,000 in 10,000 shares of £10 each, £7 10s. 0d. per share called up, declares a bonus out of the Reserve Account at the rate of 33½ per cent. on the paid-up Capital to be applied for the purpose of making the shares fully paid.

Show the Journal Entries necessary to record these transactions.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Call Account Dr.	25,000	0	0			
To Share Capital Account				25,000	0	0
Being final call of £2 10s. per share on 10,000 shares as per Resolution of the Board dated						
Reserve Account Dr.	25,000	0	0			
To Bonus Account				25,000	0	0
Being Bonus of £2 10s. per share on 10,000 shares payable out of the Reserve Account as per Resolution of Shareholders dated						
Bonus Account Dr.	25,000	0	0			
To Call Account				25,000	0	0
Being application of Bonus of £2 10s. per share on 10,000 shares to payment of Call as per Resolution dated						

§ 13.—Payment of Interest out of Capital.

§ 91 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, authorizes the payment of Interest out of Capital in certain cases as follows :—

Where any shares of a Company are issued for the purpose of raising money to defray the expenses of the construction of any works or buildings, or the provision of any plant which cannot be made profitable for a lengthened period, the Company may pay interest on so much of such Share Capital as is for the time being paid up for the period and subject to the conditions and restrictions in this section mentioned, and may charge the same to capital as part of the cost of construction of the work, building, or plant.

Provided that :—

- (1) No such payment shall be made unless the same is authorized by the Company's Articles of Association, or by special resolution of the Company.
- (2) No such payment, whether authorized by the Articles of Association or by special resolution, shall be made without the previous sanction of the Board of Trade.
- (3) Before sanctioning any such payment the Board of Trade may, at the expense of the Company, appoint a person to inquire and report to them as to the circumstances of the case, and may, before making the appointment, require the Company to give security for payment of the costs of the inquiry.
- (4) The payment shall be made only for such period as may be determined by the Board of Trade ; and such period shall in no case extend beyond the close of the next half-year after the half-year during which the works or buildings have been actually completed or the plant provided.
- (5) The rate of interest shall in no case exceed four per cent. per annum, or such lower rate as may for the time being be prescribed by Order in Council.
- (6) The payment of such interest shall not operate as a reduction of the amount paid up on the shares in respect of which it is paid.

- (7) The accounts of the Company shall show the capital on which, and the rate at which, interest has been paid out of capital during the period to which the accounts relate.

§ 14.—The Preparation of a Company's Books and Accounts for Audit.

Proper arrangements should always be made to facilitate as much as possible the work of the Auditor, and enable him to examine the books and accounts with the least amount of inconvenience to himself and to the Company's staff.

First and foremost a proper system of accounting must be in force. The books must be balanced, since it is not the duty of an Auditor to balance the same, nor can he be called upon to do so, unless separately instructed in his capacity as Accountant. All subsidiary books should be cast in ink, and the totals posted to the proper accounts in the Impersonal Ledger. The various Bought and Sold Ledgers should be separately proved by means of Total Accounts, and their balances brought down in ink, or, if it is inconvenient to rule off and bring down such balances, a note of the amount thereof should be made on each Ledger Account in red ink at the side.

The Cash Book should be balanced off, and a record of the reconciliation of the Pass Book entered therein. All vouchers should be numbered consecutively, and the numbers entered in the Cash Book, the vouchers themselves being filed on some proper system, care being taken to see that, in the event of a voucher being missing, a note is inserted in the file, giving a reference to any other evidence available. Bought invoices should be either attached to the statements when filed as vouchers, or they should be numbered and filed consecutively, the corresponding numbers being entered in the Bought Journal.

When the Trial Balance has been obtained, proper provision must be made for Bad Debts, Depreciation, &c., and all other necessary adjustments should be made. The Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account can then be drafted, and, after having been passed by the Directors, presented to the Auditor. In many cases it is usual for the Auditor to prepare the accounts himself in his capacity as Accountant.

In the final Accounts, ledger folios should be inserted against each item which refers to a single ledger account, schedules being attached showing folios and details of all items composed of several separate balances taken together. In this manner a full and clear record is obtained of the way in which the various totals, particularly of Balance Sheet items, are arrived at.

§ 15.—The Balance Sheet and Accounts of a Company.

(a) Form of the Accounts.

Remarks have already been made in Chapter I., § 10, referring to the various classes of assets and their grouping in a Balance Sheet. In the case of a Company, the form of the published accounts is of particular importance, since they are usually printed and circulated among the Shareholders and others. Consequently it is desirable that the amount of detail disclosed should not be such as to damage the position of the Company, by affording information to its rivals in trade. As to how much it is necessary to condense the Accounts for this purpose will depend upon the particular circumstances of each case. It is very rare to find a Trading Account published disclosing the turnover; and the Profit and Loss Account will disclose as much or as little detail as the case warrants.

It is most important, however, notwithstanding these considerations, that the accounts as presented to the Shareholders should convey to them a reasonably full and clear view of the Company's position, and no condensation should be permitted that has the effect of making the position of the Company look better than it really is; *e.g.* an overdraft from the bank should not be included among Sundry Creditors, but shown separately; Creditors for Cash Loans should not be mixed with Trade Creditors; further, such mingling of assets of a different nature as Goodwill and Freehold Land, Book Debts and Cash should not be permitted.

In the Balance Sheet the authorized capital and the various classes of shares of which it is composed should be clearly stated, the issued capital being shown in addition.

Under § 113 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, the Balance Sheet must be signed by two of the Directors, or, if there is only one, by that Director; and the Auditors' Report must be attached to the Balance Sheet, or a reference thereto inserted at the foot of the Balance Sheet.

The Balance Sheet required to be included in the Annual Summary filed with the Registrar has already been referred to in § 4 (c) (11) of this Chapter. It will be particularly noted that the way in which the values of the fixed assets have been arrived at must be stated.

The treatment of Underwriting Commission and Discount on Issue of Debentures in a Company's Balance Sheet, required by § 90 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, has also been referred to in § 8 (5) of this Chapter.

ILLUSTRATION—

From the following Trial Balance of the Johnson Engineering Company, Limited, on 31st December, 1913, prepare Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts and Balance Sheet. The Nominal Capital of the Company is £80,000, divided into 4,000 Ordinary Shares of £10 each, and 4,000 6 per Cent. Cumulative Preference Shares of £10 each.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Stock-in-Trade 1st January, 1913	13,300	0	0			
Discounts	600	0	0			
Carriage	1,150	0	0			
Patterns	7,500	0	0			
Rates, Taxes, Gas, Water and Insurance	1,100	0	0			
Patents, Trade Marks, &c.	3,000	0	0			
Materials Purchased	24,850	0	0			
Wages	26,100	0	0			
Coal and Coke	1,220	0	0			
Freehold Land and Buildings	25,000	0	0			
Plant and Machinery	15,000	0	0			
Loose Tools and Utensils	3,000	0	0			
Goodwill	7,500	0	0			
Sundry Debtors	5,820	0	0			
Bills Receivable	2,690	0	0			
Advertising	300	0	0			
Commission	1,350	0	0			
Trade Expenses	1,120	0	0			
Repairs	920	0	0			
Bad Debts	510	0	0			
Cash in Hand	820	0	0			
Debenture Interest, Half-year to 30th June, 1913	200	0	0			
Preference Dividend, Half-year to 30th June, 1913	600	0	0			
Directors' Fees	1,000	0	0			
Bank Interest and Charges	820	0	0			
2,000 Ordinary Shares				20,000	0	0
2,000 Preference Shares				20,000	0	0
4 % Debentures				10,000	0	0
Provincial Bank, Limited—Overdraft				15,140	0	0
Sundry Creditors				3,580	0	0
Bills Payable				1,250	0	0
Sales				72,340	0	0
Rents				730	0	0
Profit and Loss Account—Balance, 1st January, 1913				1,340	0	0
	£144,360	0	0	£144,360	0	0

The Stock at 31st December, 1913, was £14,160. Write off Depreciation—Plant and Machinery 5 per cent., Loose Tools and Utensils 20 per cent., Patterns 10 per cent., Patents, Trade Marks, &c., 10 per cent. Provide $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. on the Sundry Debtors for discount and £430 for bad debts.

JOHNSON ENGINEERING COMPANY, LIMITED.

Dr. BALANCE SHEET 31ST DECEMBER, 1913. Cr.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Authorized Capital—							By Goodwill						
4,000 Ordinary Shares of £10 each	40,000	0	0				Freehold Land and Buildings				7,500	0	0
4,000 6% Cumulative Preference Shares of £10 each	40,000	0	0				Plant and Machinery	15,000	0	0			
							Less Depreciation	750	0	0	14,250	0	0
				£80,000	0	0	Loose Tools and Utensils	3,000	0	0			
Issued Capital—							Less Depreciation	600	0	0	2,400	0	0
2,000 Ordinary Shares of £10 each fully paid	20,000	0	0				Patterns	7,500	0	0			
2,000 6% Cumulative Preference Shares of £10 each fully paid	20,000	0	0				Less Depreciation	750	0	0	6,750	0	0
				40,000	0	0	Patents, Trade Marks, &c.	3,000	0	0			
4% Debentures				10,000	0	0	Less Depreciation	300	0	0	2,700	0	0
Sundry Creditors—							Stock				14,160	0	0
Provincial Bank—							Sundry Debtors	5,320	0	0			
Overdraft	15,140	0	0				Less Reserve for						
On Open Account	3,560	0	0				Bad Debts	£430	0	0			
Bills Payable	1,250	0	0				Reserve for						
Debenture Interest	200	0	0				Discount	122	5	0			
				20,150	0	0				552	5	0	
Profit and Loss Account—							Bills Receivable				4,767	15	0
Balance brought forward	1,340	0	0				Cash in Hand				2,690	0	0
Net Profit for the year	9,687	15	0								360	0	0
Less Preference Dividend for half-year to 30th June, 1913	600	0	0										
				10,427	15	0							
				£80,577	15	0					£80,577	15	0

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr. FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913. Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Stock 1st January, 1913	13,300	0	0	By Sales	72,340	0	0
" Materials Purchased	24,650	0	0	" Stock 31st December, 1913	14,160	0	0
" Wages	26,100	0	0				
" Coal and Coke	1,260	0	0				
" Carriage	1,150	0	0				
" Balance, being Gross Profit carried down	20,040	0	0				
	£86,500	0	0				
To Rates, Taxes, Gas, Water and Insurance	1,100	0	0	By Gross Profit brought down	20,040	0	0
" Advertising	300	0	0	" Rents	730	0	0
" Commission	1,350	0	0				
" Trade Expenses	1,120	0	0				
" Repairs	930	0	0				
" Bank Interest and Charges	820	0	0				
" Discount (£600+£122 5s.)	722	5	0				
" Bad Debts (£510+£430)	940	0	0				
" Debenture Interest	400	0	0				
" Depreciation:—							
Plant and Machinery	£750	0	0				
Loose Tools and Utensils	600	0	0				
Patterns	750	0	0				
Patents, Trade Marks, &c.	300	0	0				
	2,400	0	0				
" Directors' Fees	1,000	0	0				
" Balance, being net Profit carried down	9,687	15	0				
	£20,770	0	0				
To Preference Dividend for half-year to 30th June, 1913	600	0	0	By Balance brought forward from last year	1,340	0	0
" Balance as per Balance Sheet	10,427	15	0	" Net Profit brought down	9,687	15	0
	£11,027	15	0				

Note to Illustration.

The provision for discount should be calculated on the figure for Sundry Debtors, viz., £5,320 less £430 the amount reserved by way of Bad Debts.

In the case of Companies such as Mines, if a Balance Sheet is required before the Company has reached a revenue-earning stage, it is not customary to show a Profit and Loss Account, but to carry forward all expenditure in the Balance Sheet.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following are the balances on the books of the X. Mining Company, Limited, at 31st December, 1913, the Company not having at that date reached a revenue-earning stage. Draw up Balance Sheet.

	£	s.	d.
Authorized Share Capital—150,000 Shares of £1 each	150,000	0	0
Issued Share Capital—120,000 Shares of £1 each, 15s. called up	90,000	0	0
Calls in arrear on 200 Shares	100	0	0
Calls paid in advance	400	0	0
Sundry Creditors	800	0	0
Mine Property Account	73,305	0	0
Preliminary and Formation Expenses	1,500	0	0
Mine Development Account	4,000	0	0
Mine Buildings	2,500	0	0
Machinery and Plant	1,100	0	0
General Stores—Stock on Hand	550	0	0
General Charges at Mine	1,600	0	0
Incidental Receipts at Mine	60	0	0
General Charges in London	1,400	0	0
Transfer Fees	20	0	0
Sundry Debtors	150	0	0
Cash at Banks	5,000	0	0
Cash in Hand	75	0	0

The shares in respect of which there are calls in arrear have been forfeited.

THE X. MINING COMPANY, LIMITED.

Dr.

BALANCE SHEET 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Cr.

Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	By	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Authorized Share Capital— 150,000 Shares of £1 each				150,000	0	0	By Mine Property				73,305	0	0
„ Issued Share Capital— 120,000 Shares of £1 each, 15s. per share called up	90,000	0	0				„ Mine Development a/c				4,000	0	0
Less 200 shares forfeited	150	0	0				„ Mine Buildings				2,500	0	0
119,850 Shares	89,850	0	0				„ Machinery and Plant				1,100	0	0
Add Calls paid in advance	400	0	0				„ General Stores—Stock on hand				550	0	0
„ Forfeited Shares Account				90,250	0	0	„ Preliminary and Forma- tion Expenses				1,500	0	0
„ Sundry Creditors				50	0	0	„ General Charges at Mine..	1,600	0	0			
				800	0	0	Less Incidental Receipts	60	0	0			
							„ General Charges in London	1,400	0	0			
							Less Transfer Fees	20	0	0			
							„ Sundry Debtors				1,380	0	0
							„ Cash—				150	0	0
							At Banks	5,000	0	0			
							In Hand	75	0	0			
											5,075	0	0
											£91,100	0	0

NOTE.—In practice it would be advisable to set out the General Charges in London and at the mine in detail.

(b) Contingent Liabilities.

This phrase implies that there are certain transactions the result of which is not yet known, and which may or may not involve the payment of moneys at some subsequent date.

The most familiar example is in the case of Bills Receivable having been discounted. At the date of the Balance Sheet, if any of these bills are still outstanding, there will be a contingent liability to the extent thereof, since, if the acceptors do not meet them at maturity, the holders will have a right of recourse against the drawer or prior endorsers. Since it is unknown at the date of the Balance Sheet whether the bills will be met in due course or not, a note should be inserted stating that there is a contingent liability in respect of bills under discount, amounting to £ When it is expected that one or more of the bills will not be met, proper reserve should be made against the anticipated loss.

Other instances of Contingent Liabilities are Uncalled Liability on Shares held, Liabilities under Guarantees, or in respect of outstanding actions, &c. Contingent Liabilities may also exist in respect of contracts for work only partly performed, trade contracts, &c., but it is only usual to note on the face of the Balance Sheet the existence of those Contingent Liabilities which, should they accrue, might involve actual loss to the concern. Other Contingent Liabilities which, when they accrue, will result in the acquisition of an asset of corresponding value, are sometimes omitted; though a note should be made where the amount involved is of any consequence.

(c) Arrears of Cumulative Preference Share Dividend.

It is considered by some that these arrears are in the nature of a Contingent Liability, which should be stated as such on the Balance Sheet of a Company. Whether this is so or not depends on the Articles of the Company, but as most Articles give power to the Directors to put to reserve before the payment of any dividend, preference or otherwise, the payment of these arrears will be contingent, not only on the fact of profits being earned, but also on the resolution of the Directors to pay them. The latter being optional, destroys the argument that

these arrears are Contingent Liabilities, since the term itself negatives any idea of option in the matter. Moreover, the Balance Sheet is not the Balance Sheet of the Ordinary Shareholders or the Preference Shareholders, but of the Company as a whole, and whether future dividends will be payable to one or another class of Shareholders does not affect the position of the Company at any given time. As, however, the information is of interest to both classes of Shareholders, the existence of any such arrears should be noted on the Balance Sheet, though this certainly cannot be insisted upon.

§ 16.—The Amalgamation of Companies.

The principal point to consider in dealing with cases where a new Company is formed to take over the businesses of two or more Companies, will be the valuation of the assets of each particular Company in relation to the assets of the other or others. It is usual for the new Company to take over the liabilities of the old Companies, and for fully paid shares in the new Company to be issued to Shareholders in the old Companies in proportion to their holdings and the relative value of their shares.

Where accumulated profits, such as a credit balance to Profit and Loss, General Reserve Account, &c., remain undistributed in the books of the old Companies, it is important to note that these are not available for revenue purposes in the case of the new Company, since they will be represented by assets which are actually purchased by the new Company. If the amounts in question are large they should certainly be capitalised, and additional shares in the new Company issued to the Shareholders in the old Companies who may be entitled to such profits.

Where these balances are not sufficiently important they should either be put to a Special Reserve Account, not available for revenue purposes, or be written off the Goodwill, or some of the fixed assets acquired.

ILLUSTRATION--

Two Companies, whose businesses are of a kindred nature, wish to amalgamate, and a new Company is formed to take over their respective Assets and Liabilities. The following are the respective Balance Sheets:—

JONES & JOHNSON, LIMITED.

Dr.	BALANCE SHEET 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.						Cr.
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Share Capital—				Goodwill	30,000	0	0
75,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid	75,000	0	0	Freehold Premises	10,000	0	0
Sundry Creditors	3,300	0	0	Plant and Machinery	18,300	0	0
Reserve Account	4,200	0	0	Stock	16,000	0	0
Profit and Loss Account	800	0	0	Sundry Debtors	7,500	0	0
				Cash	1,500	0	0
	£83,300	0	0		£83,300	0	0

BLACK & SONS, LIMITED.

Dr.	BALANCE SHEET 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.						Cr.							
	£			s. d.				£			s. d.			
Share Capital—							Goodwill	..	..	..	..	20,000	0	0
45,500 Shares of £1 each fully paid	45,500	0	0				Plant and Machinery	..	..	..	..	13,450	0	0
Sundry Creditors	2,000	0	0				Stock	..	..	..	..	11,550	0	0
Profit and Loss Account	4,500	0	0				Sundry Debtors..	..	..	..	..	6,000	0	0
							Cash	..	..	..	..	1,000	0	0
	£52,000	0	0									£52,000	0	0

Assuming the assets in each case to be worth their book value, what would be the best way of carrying out the amalgamation? Give the Balance Sheet of the new Company.

The book value of the net assets of Jones & Johnson, Limited, is arrived at as follows:

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Gross Assets	83,300	0	0				
Less Liabilities	3,300	0	0				
					£80,000	0	0

From the Shareholders' point of view this amount is represented by:—

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Share Capital	75,000	0	0				
Reserve Account	4,200	0	0				
Profit and Loss Account	800	0	0				
					£80,000	0	0

In a similar manner the book value of the net assets of Black & Sons, Limited, is £50,000, represented as follows:—

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Share Capital	45,500	0	0				
Profit and Loss Account	4,500	0	0				
					£50,000	0	0

It is apparent, therefore, that shares in the new Company should be issued as follows:—

To the Shareholders of Jones & Johnson, Limited, 80,000 shares of £1 each fully paid, being at the rate of 16 new shares for every 15 old; and

To the Shareholders of Black & Sons, Limited, 50,000 shares of £1 each fully paid, being at the rate of 100 new shares for every 91 old.

- (5) If any expenses are paid by the Vendor Company, credit cash and debit the Realisation Account.
- (6) The balance on the Realisation Account will represent profit or loss, which should be transferred to the Shareholders' Account.
- (7) Any profit balances, such as the credit balance of Profit and Loss, Reserve Account, &c., should be transferred to the Shareholders' Account, together with the balance of the Capital Account.
- (8) Debit the Shareholders' Account with the assets forming the purchase consideration when the distribution takes place, and credit the respective accounts of Cash, Shares in Purchasing Company, &c. This will close the books of the Vendor Company.

(b) Journal Entries for Opening the Purchasing Company's Books.

- (1) Debit Accounts for the various assets acquired, and the Goodwill (if any), and credit the Vendor Company and any liabilities that may be taken over. The Goodwill will be the difference between the actual assets acquired, less liabilities, and the purchase consideration payable to the Vendor Company.
- (2) Debit the Vendor Company, and credit Share Capital Account, Cash, &c., representing the discharge of the purchase consideration.

(c) Shares issued at a Premium Valuation.

When the Purchasing Company's shares are issued to the Shareholders in the Vendor Company at a premium valuation, this premium should be brought into the books of both Companies, in order that the transaction may be completely recorded. If it is not brought into the Vendor Company's books, the result of the transaction there may show as a loss, when, as a matter of fact, there may have been a large profit; while if it is not brought into the Purchasing Company's books, the price paid for the assets acquired will appear to be very much less than, as a matter of fact, it really is, and consequently the price actually paid

for Goodwill will be correspondingly diminished. In the Purchasing Company's books the premium on the shares issued to the Vendor Company should be placed first to a Premium on Shares Account. Whether this account should be used for writing down the Goodwill of the business acquired, or carried to General Reserve Account, or otherwise dealt with, will depend upon the circumstances of the case.

(d) Treatment of Revenue Balances.

The accumulated profit balances of the Vendor Company should not be brought into the Purchasing Company's books, since, as mentioned in the preceding section, these are not available for distribution; moreover, they were represented by assets in the Vendor Company's Balance Sheet, which have been purchased by the other Company, and consequently, if the latter brings in these accumulated profits, this treatment will have the effect of proportionately increasing the book value of the Goodwill, and will misrepresent the proper state of affairs. The items should be ignored altogether in the Purchasing Company's books.

ILLUSTRATION—

The Wolverhampton Electric Company, Limited, is absorbed by the United Electric Company, Limited, the consideration being the assumption of the liabilities, the discharge of the debenture debt at a premium of 5 per cent., by the issue of 5 per cent. debentures in the United Company, and a payment in cash of £3 per share, and the exchange of three £1 shares in the United Company, at an agreed value of £1 10s. 0d. per share, for every share in the Wolverhampton Company.

Close off the books of the Wolverhampton Company, giving both Journal Entries and Ledger Accounts, and show the opening Journal Entries in the books of the United Company.

The following is the Balance Sheet of the Wolverhampton Company at the date of Transfer:—

WOLVERHAMPTON ELECTRIC COMPANY, LIMITED.

Dr.	BALANCE SHEET 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.				Cr.			
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	
Share Capital—				Goodwill	25,000	0	0	
60,000 £5 Shares fully paid	300,000	0	0	Land and Buildings	76,500	0	0	
5% Debentures	150,000	0	0	Plant and Machinery	220,000	0	0	
Sundry Creditors	20,000	0	0	Patents	5,000	0	0	
Workmen's Profit-Sharing Fund	10,000	0	0	Patterns and Drawings	2,500	0	0	
Accident Compensation Fund	5,000	0	0	Work in Progress and Stocks on Hand	106,000	0	0	
General Reserve Account	32,000	0	0	Sundry Debtors	45,000	0	0	
Profit and Loss Account	3,000	0	0	Investments on Compensation Fund				
				Account	5,000	0	0	
				Cash at Bank and in Hand	35,000	0	0	
	£520,000	0	0		£520,000	0	0	

WOLVERHAMPTON COMPANY'S JOURNAL.

Realisation Account Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Sundry Assets	520,000	0	0	520,000	0	0
Being sundry assets sold to the United Electric Co. as per Balance Sheet of 31st December, 1913.						
Sundry Liabilities Dr.						
To Realisation Account				30,000	0	0
Sundry Creditors	20,000	0	0			
Workmen's Profit-Sharing Fund	10,000	0	0			
Being liabilities taken over by United Electric Co.						
Realisation Account Dr.	7,500	0	0			
To Debenture Account				7,500	0	0
Being Premium of 5% now provided for.						
Purchasing Co. (United Electric Co., Limited) Dr.	607,500	0	0			
To Realisation Account				607,500	0	0
Being Purchase Price as per Agreement.						
Sundries— Dr.						
To Purchasing Co.				607,500	0	0
Cash	180,000	0	0			
Shares (United Electric)	279,000	0	0			
180,000 Shares of £1 each, fully paid, at £1 10s. per share.						
Debenture Account	157,500	0	0			
5% Debentures exchanged.						
Being discharge of Purchase Consideration.						
Sundries— Dr.						
To Shareholders' Account				450,000	0	0
Accident Compensation Fund	5,000	0	0			
General Reserve Account	32,000	0	0			
Profit and Loss Account	3,000	0	0			
Realisation Account:—Profit on Transfer	110,000	0	0			
Share Capital Account	300,000	0	0			
Being Balances Transferred.						
Shareholders' Account Dr.	450,000	0	0			
To Sundries—						
Cash				180,000	0	0
United Electric Shares Account				270,000	0	0
Being 3 Shares of £1 each valued at £1 10s. per share for each of 60,000 Shares, and £3 per share in cash for each of 60,000 Shares distributed to Shareholders.						

WOLVERHAMPTON COMPANY'S LEDGER.

Dr.	REALISATION ACCOUNT.				Cr.		
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Sundry Assets	520,000	0	0	Sundry Liabilities	30,000	0	0
Premium on Debentures	7,500	0	0	United Electric Co., Limited	607,500	0	0
Shareholders' Account, Profit on absorption	110,000	0	0				
	<u>£637,500</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£637,500</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Dr.	SUNDRY LIABILITIES.				Cr.		
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Realisation Account	30,000	0	0	Sundry Creditors	20,000	0	0
				Profit-Sharing Fund	10,000	0	0
	<u>£30,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£30,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

<i>Dr.</i>		DEBENTURE ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>		
		£	s. d.		£	s. d.
United Electric Co., Limited	157,500	0 0	Balance	150,000	0 0
				Realisation Account—Premium ..	7,500	0 0
		<u>£157,500</u>	<u>0 0</u>		<u>£157,500</u>	<u>0 0</u>

<i>Dr.</i>		SHAREHOLDERS' ACCOUNT.						<i>Cr.</i>			
		£		s. d.				£		s. d.	
Cash	.. ..	180,000	0	0	Share Capital	.. ..	300,000	0	0		
United Co.'s Shares Account	.. ..	270,000	0	0	Sundries	.. ..	150,000	0	0		
		£450,000		0 0				£450,000		0 0	

<i>Dr.</i>		UNITED ELECTRIC SHARES ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>		
		£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
United Electric Co., Limited	270,000	0	0	Shareholders' Account	.. ..	270,000	0 0

<i>Dr.</i>		WORKMEN'S COMPENSATION FUND.										<i>Cr.</i>					
			£		s.		d.					£		s.		d.	
Shareholders' Account			5,000		0		0		Balance			5,000		0		0	

Dr.		GENERAL RESERVE ACCOUNT.						Cr.			
			£	s.	d.				£	s.	d.
Shareholders' Account			32,000	0	0	Balance			32,000	0	0

<i>Dr.</i>		PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT.										<i>Cr.</i>	
			£		s. d.					£		s. d.	
Shareholders' Account			3,000		0 0		Balance			3,000		0 0	

Dr.		UNITED ELECTRIC COMPANY, LIMITED.										Cr.			
Realisation Account		£	s.	d.	Sundries	..	..	..	..	£	s.	d.
					607,500	0	0						607,500	0	0

UNITED COMPANY'S JOURNAL.

	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sundries.							
To Sundries—							
Land and Buildings		76,500	0	0			
Plant and Machinery		220,000	0	0			
Patents		5,000	0	0			
Patterns and Drawings		2,500	0	0			
Work in Progress and Stocks on Hand		106,000	0	0			
Sundry Debtors		45,000	0	0			
Investments		5,000	0	0			
Cash at Bank and in Hand		35,000	0	0			
Goodwill		142,500	0	0			
Wolverhampton Electric Company, Limited					607,500	0	0
Sundry Creditors					20,000	0	0
Workmen's Profit-Sharing Fund					10,000	0	0
Being Sundry Assets and Liabilities taken over as per Purchase Agreement		£637,500	0	0	£637,500	0	0
		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Wolverhampton Electric Company, Limited	Dr.	607,500	0	0			
To Sundries:—							
Cash					180,000	0	0
5% Debenture Account					157,500	0	0
Share Capital Account—							
180,000 Shares of £1 each					180,000	0	0
Premium on Shares Account					90,000	0	0
Being discharge of Purchase Consideration, the shares being taken as issued at £1 10s. per share.		£607,500	0	0	£607,500	0	0

Notes to Illustration.

(1) WORKMEN'S PROFIT-SHARING FUND.

This represents accumulations of past profits placed to the credit of those workmen who have not drawn their shares out in cash. Consequently it must be taken into the books of the United Company as a liability.

(2) ACCIDENT COMPENSATION FUND.

This fund has been raised by the Wolverhampton Company out of profits, and is represented by specific investments. Since there remains a credit balance on the Fund Account at the date of the sale of the undertaking, it is obvious that the Wolverhampton Company has made a profit to the extent of £5,000 by taking their own risks instead of insuring outside. Therefore, although the United Company takes over the investments representing such insurance profits, it only buys them *qua* investments, and should not bring the Fund Account into its books. In the Vendor Company's books the balance of this Fund Account will be transferred to the Shareholders' Account in common with the other accumulated profit balances.

(3) GOODWILL.

The final figure of Goodwill £142,500 showing in the United Company's books, is arrived at by taking the difference between the actual assets acquired and the purchase consideration, plus liabilities taken over.

The amount can be proved as follows:—

	£	s.	d.
Goodwill as per Vendor Company's books	25,000	0	0
Profit on absorption ditto	110,000	0	0
Premium on Debentures unrepresented by assets	7,500	0	0
	£142,500	0	0

(4) PREMIUM ON SHARES.

This has been recorded in the books of both Companies. Had it been omitted, in the Vendor Company's books the profit on absorption would only have shown as £20,000 instead of £110,000, and in the Purchasing Company's books the Goodwill Account would only have stood at £52,500 instead of £142,500.

(e) Treatment where Shares are partly called up.

The following is an illustration of the absorption of one Banking Company by another, where the shares in each Company are only partly called up. In such a case as this, if the shares of the Purchasing Bank are issued at a premium valuation, the premium in respect thereof would be placed immediately to the Reserve Account of the Bank, as this account is of a permanent nature, and is not used for ordinary transactions.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Bank, having a Capital of £1,000,000 in 50,000 shares of £20 each (upon which £3 10s. 0d. per share was paid up), and a reserve of £150,000, and whose shares stood in the market at £12, was taken over by a Bank having a capital of £3,000,000 in 50,000 shares of £60 each (upon which £10 per share was paid up), and a reserve of £400,000, and whose shares stood in the market at £37, on the terms that one share in the Purchasing Company was given for three shares in the Purchased Company.

What are the entries to be made in the Purchasing Company's books to give effect to the arrangement, and how will its Share Capital and Reserve then stand ?

	£	s.	d.
The net assets of the Purchased Bank will be equivalent to the			
total of the Paid-up Capital	175,000	0	0
And the Reserve	150,000	0	0
	<u>£325,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

And the Journal Entry in the Purchasing Company's books will therefore be :—

	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sundry Net Assets.		325,000	0	0			
To Sundries—							
Share Capital Account :—							
Being one Share of £60—£10 per Share paid up—issued for every three Shares of 50,000 Shares held in the Purchased Bank = 16,666 Shares £10 paid up ..					166,660	0	0
Cash :—							
Payment in lieu of fraction of Shares						6	13 4
Reserve Account					158,333	6	8
Being excess of Assets acquired over purchase consideration.							
		<u>£325,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>£325,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

The Purchasing Company's Share Capital will then be as follows :—66,666 Shares of £60 each, £10 per Share paid up, £666,660, and its Reserve will stand at £558,333 6s. 8d.

The excess of net assets acquired over the par value of the Shares issued in the above Illustration is consequent upon the market value of the Shares issued, and represents the premium valuation thereof.

§ 18.—Reduction of Capital.

The Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, § 46, makes provision for the Reduction of Share Capital under certain conditions as follows :—

46.—(1) Subject to confirmation by the Court, a Company limited by shares, if so authorised by its articles, may by special resolution reduce its share capital in any way, and in particular (without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power) may—

- (a) Extinguish or reduce the liability on any of its shares in respect of share capital not paid up; or
- (b) Either with or without extinguishing or reducing liability on any of its shares, cancel any paid-up share capital which is lost or unrepresented by available assets; or
- (c) Either with or without extinguishing or reducing liability on any of its shares, pay off any paid-up share capital which is in excess of the wants of the Company,

and may, if and so far as is necessary, alter its memorandum by reducing the amount of its share capital and of its shares accordingly.

(2) A special resolution under this section is in this Act called a resolution for reducing share capital.

Where the proposed reduction of Share Capital involves either diminution of liability in respect of unpaid Share Capital, or the payment to any Shareholder of any paid-up Share Capital, and in any other case if the Court so directs, Creditors are entitled to object, and those so objecting must be either paid off or secured.

In assenting to a scheme, the principal points the Court takes into consideration are the protection of the rights of Creditors, and the equitable adjustment of the loss between the various classes of Shareholders, having regard to their rights both from Dividends and Capital points of view. The arrangement of a scheme acceptable to all parties and to the Court is a matter of much difficulty, and it is not possible here to deal with the subject otherwise than quite generally, since every case must be considered on its own merits.

(a) Writing off Capital unrepresented by available Assets.

The following Illustration shows the entries in a Company's books consequent on a reduction of capital unrepresented by available assets.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Brewery Company's Balance Sheet was as follows :—

CAPITAL AND LIABILITIES.

	£	s.	d.
15,000 Ordinary Shares of £10 each fully paid	150,000	0	0
20,000 7 % Preference Shares £10 each fully paid	200,000	0	0
21,732 5 % Preference Shares £10 each fully paid	217,320	0	0
5½ % Debenture Stock	150,360	0	0
4 % " "	420,000	0	0
Mortgage Creditors	263,700	0	0
Trade and Loan Creditors	117,000	0	0
Unpaid Dividends and Interest	200	0	0
	£1,518,220	0	0

ASSETS.

	£	s.	d.
Goodwill and Ingoings	180,600	0	0
Freehold Properties	1,103,550	0	0
Leasehold	41,200	0	0
Short Leaseholds	5,250	0	0
Plant and Utensils	6,100	0	0
Horses and Carts, &c.	11,650	0	0
Bottling Plant	450	0	0
Furniture and Fittings	13,300	0	0
Debtors	17,000	0	0
Prepaid Rents, Rates, Licenses, Insurance and Compensation Charges	7,000	0	0
Stocks	36,000	0	0
Cash in Hand and at Bankers	12,000	0	0
Capital Suspense for renovation of houses	46,420	0	0
Profit and Loss	38,000	0	0
	<u>£1,518,220</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

An action against certain members of the Board was in progress, which ultimately resulted in a cash return by them of £11,000, and a revaluation of the properties was obtained, and it was agreed (with the sanction of the Court) that the assets should be reduced by £202,928, to include a necessary expenditure to be incurred upon renovation of houses estimated at £38,000, such reduction being as follows:—

	£	s.	d.
Freehold Property	67,508	0	0
Plant and Utensils	3,000	0	0
Horses and Carts, &c.	4,000	0	0
Furniture and Fittings	6,000	0	0
Capital Suspense	46,420	0	0
Future Expenditure on renovation of houses	38,000	0	0
Profit and Loss—Balance	38,000	0	0

The various classes of Shareholders made considerable sacrifices, the Ordinary Shareholders reducing their share denomination from £10 to £3, the 7 per Cent. Preference Shareholders reducing their rate of dividend to 5½ per cent., and the 5 per Cent. Preference Shareholders reducing their share denomination from £10 to £6, both of the latter classes, however, to rank for a non-cumulative further dividend of 1½ per cent. whenever a dividend of 6 per cent. was paid to the Ordinary Shareholders.

Make the Journal Entries recording the above transactions, and draw up the Balance Sheet thereafter.

JOURNAL.

Sundries:—	Dr.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Capital Reduction Account:— .. .. .	..				191,928	0	0
Ordinary Share Capital—							
Reduction of £7 per share on 15,000 shares .. .. .	..	105,000	0	0			
5 % Preference Share Capital—							
Reduction of £4 per share on 21,732 shares .. .. .	..	86,928	0	0			
Being reduction of Capital sanctioned by Order of the Court dated							
Cash:—	Dr.	11,000	0	0			
To Capital Reduction Account .. .. .	..				11,000	0	0
Being amount recovered by Members of the Board as the result of a legal action, to be utilised in writing off Capital Losses.							
Capital Reduction Account	Dr.	202,928	0	0			
To Sundries:—							
Freehold Property .. .. .	..				67,508	0	0
Plant and Utensils .. .. .	..				3,000	0	0
Horses and Carts, &c. .. .. .	..				4,000	0	0
Furniture and Fittings .. .. .	..				6,000	0	0
Capital Suspense Account .. .. .	..				46,420	0	0
Suspense Account for future expenditure on renovation of houses .. .. .	..				38,000	0	0
Profit and Loss Account—Debit Balance .. .. .	..				38,000	0	0
Being losses written off as per order of the Court dated							
		£202,928	0	0	£202,928	0	0

THE BREWERY COMPANY, LIMITED AND REDUCED.

Dr.

BALANCE SHEET.

Cr.

To Share Capital:—	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	By Goodwill and Ingoings	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
15,000 Ordinary Shares of £10 each fully paid, reduced by order of the Court to £3 each	45,000	0	0				Freehold Properties ..	1,103,550	0	0	180,600	0	0
20,000 7 % Preference Shares of £10 each fully paid, reduced by order of the Court to rank for Dividend at 5½%	200,000	0	0				Less written off by order of the Court	67,508	0	0			
21,732 5 % Preference Shares of £10 each fully paid, reduced by order of the Court to £6 each	130,392	0	0				Leasehold Properties ..				1,036,042	0	0
5½ % Debenture Stock 4 %	150,000	0	0				Short Leaseholds ..				41,200	0	0
	420,000	0	0				Plant and Utensils ..	6,100	0	0	5,250	0	0
							Less written off by order of the Court	3,000	0	0			
Mortgage Creditors ..							Horses and Carts, &c. ..	11,650	0	0	3,100	0	0
Trade and Loan Creditors							Less written off by order of the Court	4,000	0	0			
Unpaid Interest and Dividends							Bottling Plant ..				7,650	0	0
Suspense Account:—							Furniture and Fittings ..	13,000	0	0	450	0	0
Amount provided by order of the Court for future expenditure on renovation of houses							Less written off by order of the Court	6,000	0	0			
							Stocks				7,000	0	0
							Debtors				36,000	0	0
							Prepaid Rents, Rates, Licences, Insurance, and Compensation Charges				17,000	0	0
							Cash in Hand and at Bankers				7,000	0	0
											23,000	0	0
											£1,364,292	0	0

(b) Return of Capital out of Profits.

Under § 40 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, when any Company has accumulated a sum of undivided profits, which with the

consent of the Shareholders may be distributed among the Shareholders in the form of a dividend or bonus, it shall be lawful for the Company by special resolution to return the same or any part thereof to the Shareholders in reduction of the paid-up capital of the Company, the unpaid capital being thereby increased by a similar amount.

The precise meaning of this section has been the subject of much discussion, since it has been stated that apparently a Company can go on returning the profits in reduction of paid-up capital indefinitely, without disturbing the credit balance of Profit and Loss; but it is contended that the proper construction of the Act is to set aside to a Capital Reserve the proportion of profits so dealt with.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the Balance Sheet of a Company:—

BALANCE SHEET.

LIABILITIES.		ASSETS.	
	£ s. d.		£ s. d.
Share Capital:—		Sundry Assets	50,500 0 0
30,000 Shares £1 each fully paid ..	30,000 0 0		
Creditors	5,000 0 0		
General Reserve Account	20,000 0 0		
P. & L. Account	1,500 0 0		
	<u>£56,500 0 0</u>		<u>£56,500 0 0</u>

It is desired to return 10s. in the £ in respect of Capital out of the Reserve. The Balance Sheet will then be as follows:—

BALANCE SHEET.

LIABILITIES.		ASSETS.	
	£ s. d.		£ s. d.
Share Capital:—		Sundry Assets	41,500 0 0
30,000 Shares £1 each, 10s. paid ..	15,000 0 0		
Creditors	5,000 0 0		
Capital Reserve Account	15,000 0 0		
General	5,000 0 0		
Profit and Loss Account	1,500 0 0		
	<u>£41,500 0 0</u>		<u>£41,500 0 0</u>

(c) Other modes of Reduction.

Capital can also be reduced by forfeiture of shares and surrender of shares. The latter is not always valid, and each case must be determined upon its merits. The former is only valid in respect of non-payment of calls or premiums when sanctioned by the Articles.

§ 19.—Re-constructions.

The sale of the undertaking of an existing Company to a new Company specifically formed for that purpose is termed a re-construction, and *may* be resorted to for the following objects:—

- (1) For the purpose of raising fresh capital by issuing partly paid shares in the new Company in exchange for fully paid shares in the old Company, and calling up the balance of such new shares as and when required.
- (2) For amalgamating two or more Companies.
- (3) For taking new powers in the Memorandum, or changing the domicile of the Company.
- (4) For rearranging the capital and the rights of Shareholders between themselves.
- (5) For effecting a compromise with creditors, or the allotment to them of shares or debentures in settlement of their claims.

The cases of amalgamation and absorption of one Company by another have already been dealt with.

As regards the issue of partly paid shares, this involves a liability on the part of the new Shareholders, and consequently the original Shareholders cannot be compelled to take up such shares unless they wish to do so. Where there are dissentient Shareholders, provided they give notice of dissent in time, they can either require the Liquidator of the old Company not to carry out the scheme, or to purchase their interest at a price which, if not settled by agreement, shall be determined by arbitration.

Frequently it is arranged that the shares not taken up by Shareholders shall be allotted to the nominee of the Liquidator, who shall sell the same for the best price he can obtain, and divide the proceeds among the Shareholders who refuse to become parties to the scheme.

In cases where a Company has sustained a considerable loss of capital and is unable to satisfy its creditors in full, the re-construction scheme commonly provides for a reduction of the original capital, a compromise

with the creditors either for cash or for the issue of fully paid shares or debentures, and the provision of new working capital by the issue of shares partly paid up, in exchange for the shares held in the old Company.

ILLUSTRATION—

The final Trial Balance of the Patent Bottle Company, Limited, was as follows :—

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Share Capital—						
50,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid ..				50,000	0	0
Creditors				26,500	0	0
Patent Rights	48,000	0	0			
Debtors	4,500	0	0			
Stock	10,000	0	0			
Preliminary Expenses	1,800	0	0			
Profit and Loss Account	12,050	0	0			
Cash	150	0	0			
	<u>£76,500</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>£76,500</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Efforts to secure sufficient new capital to pay off the liabilities and place the concern on a sound basis having proved unsuccessful, it was decided to re-construct, and the following scheme was submitted to, and approved by, the Shareholders and Creditors :—

- (1) The Company to go into voluntary liquidation, and a new Company having a Nominal Capital of £100,000 to be formed, called the New Patent Bottle Company, Limited, to take over the assets and liabilities of the old Company.
- (2) The assets to be taken over at book value, with the exception of the Patent Rights, which were to be subject to adjustment.
- (3) The creditors to be discharged by the new Company on the following basis :—

	£	s.	d.
Preferential to be paid in full	500	0	0
Unsecured to be discharged by cash composition of 10s. in the £	13,400	0	0
Unsecured to be discharged by issue of 6 per cent. Debentures fully paid at a bonus of 10 per cent. ..	12,600	0	0
	<u>£26,500</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

- (4) 50,000 Shares of £1 each, 10s. paid up, to be issued to the Shareholders in the old Company, payable 5s. on Application and 5s. on Allotment.
- (5) The costs of liquidation amounting to £250 to be paid by the new Company as part of the purchase consideration.

Close the books of the old Company, and show the opening entries in the new Company's books, preparing therefrom a Balance Sheet ; assuming all the shares and debentures to have been allotted, and all cash in respect of the shares to have been received.

OLD COMPANY'S BOOKS. JOURNAL.

Realisation Account Dr.	£ 76,500	s. d. 0 0	£ 76,500	s. d. 0 0
To Sundry Debit Balances (as per Trial Balance)				
Being debit balances transferred.				
Purchasing Company Dr.	1,260	0 0	1,260	0 0
To Sundry Creditors				
Being Bonus of 10 % on £12,600, payable in 6 % Debentures fully paid, as per agreement.				
Purchasing Company Dr.	45,050	0 0	45,050	0 0
To Realisation Account				
Being Purchase consideration payable under scheme as follows :—				
50,000 Shares of £1 each, 10s. paid up, to be issued to Shareholders	£25,000	0 0		
£12,600 6 % Debentures fully paid, to be issued to Creditors in part payment	12,600	0 0		
Cash to Creditors in part payment of Unsecured Creditors and in full discharge of Preferential Creditors	7,200	0 0		
Cash for Liquidation Expenses	250	0 0		
	<u>£45,050</u>	<u>0 0</u>		
Realisation Account Dr.	250	0 0	250	0 0
To Cash				
Being payment of Liquidation Expenses.				
Sundries :— Dr.			46,310	0 0
To Purchasing Company	25,000	0 0		
Shares Account—50,000 Shares £1 each, 10s. paid up	13,860	0 0		
Debentures Account—£13,860 6 % Debentures	7,450	0 0		
Cash				
	<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0 0</u>	<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0 0</u>
Being assets handed over by New Company to Liquidator in settlement of Purchase consideration.				
Sundry Creditors Dr.	27,760	0 0		
To Sundries :—			13,860	0 0
Debenture Account			7,200	0 0
Cash			6,700	0 0
Realisation Account				
	<u>£27,760</u>	<u>0 0</u>	<u>£27,760</u>	<u>0 0</u>
Being discharge of amounts due to Sundry Creditors as per agreement and transfer of balance to Realisation Account.				
Shareholders' Account Dr.	25,000	0 0	25,000	0 0
To Realisation Account				
Being loss on Realisation.				
Share Capital Account Dr.	50,000	0 0	50,000	0 0
To Shareholders' Account				
Being Share Capital Transferred.				
Shareholders' Account Dr.	25,000	0 0	25,000	0 0
To Shares Account				
Being issue of 50,000 Shares £1 each, 10s. paid up, in New Company in exchange for Shares in Old Company.				

LEDGER.

Dr.	REALISATION ACCOUNT.				Cr.				
		£	s.	d.			£	s.	d.
To Sundries		76,500	0	0	By Purchasing Company		45,050	0	0
„ Cash for Expenses		250	0	0	„ Sundry Creditors		6,700	0	0
					„ Shareholders' Account, being Loss		25,000	0	0
		£76,750	0	0			£76,750	0	0

Dr.

PURCHASING COMPANY'S ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Creditors, 10% Bonus	1,260	0	0	By Sundries	46,310	0	0
„ Realisation Account	45,050	0	0				
	<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Dr.

SUNDRY CREDITORS' ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Debentures	13,860	0	0	By Balance	26,500	0	0
„ Cash	7,200	0	0	„ Purchasing Company	1,260	0	0
„ Realisation Account	6,700	0	0				
	<u>£27,760</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£27,760</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Dr.

SHAREHOLDERS' ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Realisation Account, Loss	25,000	0	0	By Share Capital Account	50,000	0	0
„ Shares Account	25,000	0	0				
	<u>£50,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£50,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Dr.

CASH BOOK.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Purchasing Company	7,450	0	0	By Sundry Creditors	7,200	0	0
				„ Liquidation Expenses	250	0	0
	<u>£7,450</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£7,450</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

NEW COMPANY'S BOOKS.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Sundry Assets :—				Dr.			
To Vendor					46,310	0	0
Patent Rights	31,660	0	0				
Debtors	4,500	0	0				
Stock	10,000	0	0				
Cash	150	0	0				
	<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Being assets taken over in accordance with Scheme of Re-construction.							
Vendor	£	s.	d.	Dr.	£	s.	d.
To Sundries :—	46,310	0	0				
Share Capital Account—50,000 Shares £1 each, 10s. paid up					25,000	0	0
Debentures 6%					13,860	0	0
Cash					7,450	0	0
	<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£46,310</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Being Shares and Debentures issued and Cash paid in settlement of Purchase consideration.							
Application and Allotment Account	£	s.	d.	Dr.	£	s.	d.
To Share Capital	25,000	0	0		25,000	0	0
Being 5s. per Share payable on application and 5s. on allotment of 50,000 Shares issued.							

Dr.

CASH BOOK.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Vendor	150	0	0	By Vendor	7,450	0	0
„ Application and Allotment	25,000	0	0	„ Balance	17,700	0	0
	<u>£25,150</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£25,150</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
To Balance.. .. .	£17,700	0	0				

Dr.

BALANCE SHEET.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Nominal Capital :—				By Patent Rights	31,860	0	0
100,000 Shares £1 each	100,000	0	0	„ Debtors	4,500	0	0
„ Issued Capital :—				„ Stock	10,000	0	0
50,000 Shares £1 each, fully paid	50,000	0	0	„ Cash	17,700	0	0
„ 6% Debentures	13,860	0	0				
	<u>£63,860</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£63,860</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

Notes to Illustration.

(a) PAYMENT OF CREDITORS.

As the Liquidator is responsible to the Creditors of the Old Company to see that the conditions as set forth in the scheme of Re-construction are duly carried out, the liabilities will be discharged through him, and the transactions will consequently be recorded in the books of the Old Company.

(b) THE ADJUSTED VALUE OF THE PATENT RIGHTS.

The value placed upon the Patent Rights is arrived at by taking the difference between the Purchase price payable to the Vendor and the assets taken over upon which an agreed value was placed. The debit balance to Profit and Loss Account and the Preliminary Expenses as shown in the Trial Balance of the Old Company are, of course, ignored in the books of the New Company.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER IX.

TOTAL ACCOUNTS AND SECTIONAL BALANCING.

§ 1.—TOTAL ACCOUNTS.

- (a) Total Debtors' Account.
- (b) Total Creditors' Account.
- (c) Transfer Journal.
- (d) Columnar Books.

2.—SECTIONAL BALANCING OR SELF-BALANCING LEDGERS.

3.—ERRORS IN BALANCING.

CHAPTER IX.

TOTAL ACCOUNTS AND SECTIONAL BALANCING.

§ 1.—Total Accounts.

In a business of any magnitude it is very desirable to raise Total Accounts in respect of the Sold and Bought Ledgers, representing Debtors and Creditors, for the following reasons :—

- (1) In order that a Trial Balance may be prepared without taking out the individual personal balances, thus enabling Draft Accounts at any time to be drawn out more quickly.
- (2) To locate errors, and thus prevent waste of time in balancing.
- (3) If these accounts are not under the control of the Ledger Keepers, they can be made to form an important part of the internal check.

(a) Total Debtors' Account.

The object of this account is to show a balance which will equal the net total of all the individual balances in the Sales Ledgers. It should be remembered that the Sales Ledgers may contain a few isolated accounts showing credit balances. The net balance of the Total Debtors' Account, however, will only represent the difference between the total of the debit balances and the total of the credit balances (if any).

As soon as the balance of the Total Account is agreed with the Schedule of Balances extracted from the Sales Ledgers, balances will be brought down on either side of the Total Account representing the total debit and credit balances in the Sales Ledgers..

The principle of a Total Debtors' Account is as follows:—Every item that has been posted in detail to the debit of the various Personal Accounts in the Sales Ledgers, must be posted in total to the debit of the Total Debtors' Account in the Impersonal or Private Ledger, and in

the same way, each item that has been posted in detail to the credit of the various Personal Accounts in the Sales Ledgers, must be posted in total to the credit of the Total Debtors' Account.

On the debit side of the Total Debtors' Account will be found :—

- (1) Opening balances.
- (2) Goods sold during the period.
- (3) Dishonoured bills and cheques (if any).
- (4) Discount originally allowed but subsequently disallowed.
- (5) Cash and other items (if any).
- (6) Transfers (if any).

On the credit side of the Total Debtors' Account will be found :—

- (1) Opening credit balances (if any).
- (2) Cash received during the period.
- (3) Discount payable.
- (4) Returns Inwards, and Allowances.
- (5) Bills Receivable.
- (6) Bad Debts and other items (if any).
- (7) Transfers (if any).

Dealing with the debit side :—

- (1) The opening balances will be brought down from the previous period, and will agree with the total of the last Schedule of Debtors.
- (2) The goods sold during the period will be obtained from the Sales Day Book, the totals of this book being posted monthly or quarterly, as the case may be.
- (3) Dishonoured bills will be obtained from an analysis of the Transfer Journal. This should not involve any serious difficulty, as the number of such items will not in all probability be great.

Should any of the dishonoured bills have been discounted, the entry debiting the Personal Account in the Sales Ledger will probably have been made direct from the Cash Book. In such cases the adjusting entry in the Total Debtors' Account should have been made simultaneously with the cash posting. The whole of these dishonoured bill items can be easily checked, however, as the

Remarks column in the Bills Receivable Book should show at a glance all bills which have been discounted, and all which have been dishonoured.

- (4) The item of Discount on the debit side of the Total Debtors' Account will be due in all probability to Dishonoured Bills, the Discount being credited to the Personal Account at the time when the bill was given, and debited as soon as the bill proved worthless. The total of Discount thus debited will be obtained from an analysis of the Transfer Journal.

Dealing with the credit side :—

- (1) The opening credit balances (if any) represent the total of the Personal balances which were in credit at the close of the preceding period.
- (2) The total cash received in respect of Debtors, and which has been posted to the Sales Ledgers during the period, will be obtained from the Sales Ledger column in the Cash Book. The total of this column will be posted to the Total Debtors' Account monthly or quarterly, as the case may be.
- (3) Discount Payable would be obtained from the totals of the Discount Payable column in the Cash Book, and from the Cash Discount column in the Bills Receivable Book (if any). In cases where no such column is provided in the Bills Receivable Book, the Discount will either have been entered in the Discount column in the Cash Book, or else a separate Journal entry will have been made for each item in the Transfer Journal. In the latter case the total will be obtained from an analysis of this book.
- (4) Returns Inwards will be obtained from the totals of the Sales Returns Book, which will be posted to the Total Debtors' Account monthly or quarterly, as the case may be. Allowances will be obtained from the analysis of the Transfer Journal.
- (5) Bills Receivable will be obtained from the total of the Bills Receivable Book, which will be posted to the Total Debtors' Account monthly or quarterly, as the case may be.

- (6) The Bad Debts will be obtained from the analysis of the Transfer Journal.

(b) Total Creditors' Account.

The object of this account is to show in one account a balance equal to the total of all the individual balances in the Bought Ledgers added together. The account is raised in a similar manner to the Total Debtors' Account.

On the credit side will be found :—

- (1) The opening balances.
- (2) Goods purchased during the period.
- (3) Transfers and other items (if any).

On the debit side will be found :—

- (1) Opening debit balances (if any).
- (2) Cash paid during that period.
- (3) Discount Receivable.
- (4) Returns Outwards.
- (5) Bills Payable.
- (6) Transfers and other items (if any).

Dealing with the credit side :—

- (1) The opening balances will be brought down from previous period, and will agree with the total of the last Schedule of Creditors.
- (2) Goods purchased during the period will be obtained from the Bought Day Book, the totals of this book being posted monthly or quarterly, as the case may be.

Dealing with the debit side :—

- (1) The opening debit balances (if any) will represent the total of the Personal balances which were in debit at the close of the preceding period.
- (2) The total cash paid in respect of creditors which has been posted to the Bought Ledger during the period will be obtained from the Bought Ledger column in the Cash Book. The total of this column will be posted monthly or quarterly, as the case may be.

ILLUSTRATION—

On the 1st January, 1913, the balances as per the Schedule of Sales Ledger balances were £16,000 debit and £64 credit, and the Bought Ledger balances at the same date came to £8,760 credit and £59 debit.

During the six months ending 30th June, 1913, the Sales amounted to £46,000, Purchases to £39,340; the Cash received from Debtors £42,240, and the Cash paid to Creditors £39,552; the Discount Payable £1,760, and the Discount Receivable £1,648; Returns Inwards £850, Returns Outwards £620; Bills Receivable £1,780, Bills Payable £2,740; the Dishonoured Bills amounted to £190; Discount allowed to Debtors, but subsequently disallowed, amounted to £10; Bad Debts written off £320; and the Transfers from the credit of the Bought Ledgers to the debit of the Sales Ledgers equalled £13.

The Schedule of Sales Ledger balances at the 30th June amounted to £15,208 debit and £9 credit; and on the Bought Ledger to £3,559 credit and £65 debit.

Prepare from these particulars a Total Debtors' Account and a Total Creditors' Account, bringing down the balances as at 30th June, proving the correctness of the Sales and Bought Ledgers respectively.

Dr.		TOTAL DEBTORS' ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
		£		s. d.			
1913.							
Jan. 1	To Balance	16,000	0	0	1913.	Jan. 1	By Balance
June 30	" Sales	46,000	0	0	June 30	" Cash	42,240 0 0
	" Dishonoured Bills ..	190	0	0		" Discount Payable ..	1,760 0 0
	" Discount	10	0	0		" Returns Inwards ..	850 0 0
	" Transfers	13	0	0		" Bills Receivable ..	1,780 0 0
	" Balance	9	0	0		" Bad Debts	320 0 0
						" Balance	15,208 0 0
		£62,222		0	0		
1913.					1913.		
July 1	To Balance	£15,208	0	0	July 1	By Balance	£9 0 0

Dr.		TOTAL CREDITORS' ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
		£		s. d.			
1913.							
Jan. 1	To Balance	59	0	0	1913.	Jan. 1	By Balance
June 30	" Cash	39,552	0	0	June 30	" Purchases	39,340 0 0
	" Discount Receivable ..	1,648	0	0		" Transfers	13 0 0
	" Returns Outwards ..	620	0	0		" Balance	65 6 0
	" Bills Payable	2,740	0	0			
	" Balance	3,559	0	0			
		£48,178		0	0		
1913.					1913.		
July 1	To Balance	£65	0	0	July 1	By Balance	£3,559 0 0

Note to Illustration.

The accuracy of the Total Accounts should be tested by drawing out a Trial Balance, including the balances on these accounts. If this agrees it may be assumed that the Total Accounts are correct, but it is advisable to check all Impersonal postings to avoid the possibility of compensating errors.

(d) Columnar Books.

The books of prime entry should where necessary be so ruled as to provide the necessary totals. The following rulings would apply to the Cash Book, Sales Day Book, and Bought Day Book where there are two Sales Ledgers and one Bought Ledger.

ILLUSTRATION—

CASH BOOK.														Cr.						
Date.	Parti- culars.	Folio.	Dis- count.	De- tails.	Bank.	S.L., Town.		S.L., Country.		Imper- sonal Ledger.	Date.	Parti- culars.	Folio.	Dis- count.	De- tails.	Bank.	Bought Ledger.		Imper- sonal Ledger.	Amt.
						Dis- count.	Amt.	Dis- count.	Amt.								Dis- count.	Amt.		
SALES DAY BOOK.																				
Date.	Name.	Particulars.	Folio.	Total.	Sales Ledger.		Sales Ledger.													
					Town.	Country.														
BOUGHT DAY BOOK.																				
Date.	Name.	Particulars.	Folio.	Amount.																

§ 2.—Sectional Balancing or Self-Balancing Ledgers.

The separate proving of Ledgers forms an important part in almost every system of Accounts. The method of having separate columns for each Ledger in the Cash Book and books of prime entry cannot be generally adopted, conveniently, where there are a large number of Ledgers, owing to the rulings, which render the book too cumbrous. Even the system of having separate books of prime entry for each Ledger cannot often be used, as the clerks who make the prime entries are frequently junior clerks, who cannot be expected to know to which Ledger each particular item refers.

Thus a method to a certain extent analytical becomes almost imperative. The books of prime entry, which include the Day Books, Returns Books, &c., should be ruled with columns merely for purposes of departmentalisation, and not in any way for the purpose of proving the Ledgers. The number of such books should be governed entirely by the volume of transactions involved, and the requirements of the scheme of work in the counting-house. Each Ledger clerk should post from the books of prime entry those items which refer to the particular Ledger or Ledgers under his control.

The following is an outline of a scheme for sectional balancing, and is based on a system adopted with complete success by a large manufacturing concern :—

- (1) A prime entry should be made for each transaction. No transfers from one Ledger to another should be made without the entry first being passed through the Transfer Journal. This rule should be most rigidly enforced, as otherwise a great deal of difficulty may be experienced in agreeing the balances of the particular Ledger with the Total Account applicable to that Ledger.
- (2) In the books of prime entry the posting references should be made as follows :—Each Ledger should be distinguished by a particular letter, and this letter should be written in fairly large

print just outside the folio column in the book of prime entry. The folio column will, of course, contain merely the reference to the particular page of the Ledger concerned, and so by glancing down the page of any of the books of prime entry, the letters denoting the particular Ledgers are apparent.

- (3) At the end of each month a clerk should take each of the books of prime entry, including the Cash Book, and prepare separate lists of the amounts referring to each particular Ledger. These lists should be called over and checked, and any error adjusted before entering the totals into the Summary Book. It should be remembered that the reference to the particular Ledger is entered in bold type, and consequently the accurate preparation of these lists is by no means a difficult task.
- (4) The totals of the lists referring to any book of prime entry should agree with the total of that book for the period, and when such lists have been checked they should be entered into a Summary Book, which should have separate columns or pages for each Ledger in use.
- (5) The Summary Book should then contain particulars of all the entries in the books of prime entry correctly analysed, so that with the balances brought forward from the previous period Total Accounts result for each Ledger. The net total of the balances upon any one Ledger should then agree with the balance of the columns in the Summary Book applicable to that Ledger.
- (6) The clerks who take out the Ledger balances on to the sheets, or into the Balance Books, should have had nothing whatever to do with the postings of these particular Ledgers; and no Ledger balances whatsoever should be taken out by the clerk who prepares the analysed lists for entry in the Summary Book.
- (7) The Summary Book should be under the immediate control of some responsible official, and no Ledger clerk should be allowed access to it.

The practice of having the Total Accounts relating to each Ledger at the back of the Ledger itself in addition to Total Accounts in the Nominal or Private Ledgers, is both unnecessary and undesirable.

It is unnecessary, as it involves the Account being prepared twice merely to serve a theoretical purpose ; and

It is undesirable, as it not only destroys a valuable form of Internal Check, but places the ordinary Ledger clerks in possession of total figures.

The following is an illustration of a Sales Ledger Summary Book, ruled for a business having five Sales Ledgers.

ILLUSTRATION—

Dr.

SALES LEDGERS SUMMARY BOOK.

Cr.

Date.	Particulars.	Ledg. A	Ledg. B	Ledg. C	Ledg. D	Ledg. E	Total.	Date.	Particulars.	Ledg. A	Ledg. B	Ledg. C	Ledg. D	Ledg. E	Total.
1910. Jan. 1	To Balance							1910. Jan. 1	By Balance						
" 31	" Sales							" 31	" Cash						
	" Dishonoured Bills								" Discount Payable						
	" Discount								" Returns Inwards						
	" Transfers								" Bills Receivable						
	" Cash								" Bad Debts						
	" Balance								" Transfers						
									" Balance						
1910. Feb. 1	To Balance							1910. Feb. 1	By Balance						

Note to Illustration.

A separate page in the Summary Book could be allotted to each Ledger if desired.

In practice the Summary Book would not be balanced off and agreed more often than quarterly or even half-yearly.

The Total column will be found useful for purposes of checking with the monthly totals in the books of prime entry, and can be used as a Total Debtors' Account.

§ 3.—Errors in Balancing.

If it is found that the balances upon any particular Ledger do not agree with the Total Account relating thereto, the following work should be performed :—

- (1) Check the additions of the books of prime entry relating to the particular ledger.
- (2) Recheck the Total Accounts.
- (3) Check the postings made in such ledger.
- (4) Recheck the balances.
- (5) Recast the balances.
- (6) Check the opening balances with previous Schedule of Accounts in the Ledger concerned, seeing that they are properly brought down.

If this does not bring the error to light, it will be necessary to analyse the Ledger and agree the totals of the books of prime entry with the analysis.

If the Trial Balance disagrees apart from the Total Accounts, or if no Total Accounts system is in force, the procedure for the discovery of the cause of difference will be on the following lines :—

After the Trial Balance has been recast, it should be seen whether the amount of the error is capable of being interpreted as a mis-posting. Thus, if the difference is £4 5s. 2d., it may arise through £4 10s. 0d. being posted as 4s. 10d., and all items of that amount in the books of prime entry should be subjected to scrutiny.

If the amount of the error is divisible by two, it is possible either that a posting of half the amount has been made to the wrong side of the Ledger, or that a balance of half the amount has been placed in the wrong column of the Trial Balance.

If the error is not discovered after any of these ideas have been considered, and the books scrutinised in respect thereof, the balances should be rechecked in detail on to the Trial Balance.

If the error still remains undetected, the whole of the books of prime entry must be cast, and, if necessary, the postings must be also rechecked. All carry forwards must be watched, since a reversion of figures in this respect may be the cause of the discrepancy. In casting the Ledgers, exceptional care should be taken to see that balances have been properly carried down, and that the accounts do actually balance; and it may be necessary to check the opening balances from the previous Balance Sheet and Schedules.

If total accounts have not been kept, these may, in the last resource, be compiled; and with their aid the error should certainly be located.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER X.

DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS, BRANCH ACCOUNTS, AND FOREIGN EXCHANGE.

§ 1.—DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS.

2.—BRANCH ACCOUNTS.

3.—WHOLESALE BRANCHES.

4.—RETAIL BRANCHES.

(a) Goods charged to Branches at selling price.

(b) Goods charged to Branches at cost price.

(c) Goods charged out at cost, plus percentage.

5.—BRANCHES WHERE THE WHOLE OF THE DETAIL IS RECORDED IN THE BRANCH BOOKS.

6.—FOREIGN EXCHANGE.

7.—FOREIGN BRANCHES.

(a) Branches working on a fixed rate of exchange.

(b) Branches working on a fluctuating rate of exchange.

8.—FOREIGN MINE ACCOUNTS.

CHAPTER X.

DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS, BRANCH ACCOUNTS,
AND FOREIGN EXCHANGE.

§ 1.—Departmental Accounts.

In the case of a business where there are two or more departments, it is very important that the accounts should be so arranged as to enable the trading results of each department to be accurately ascertained as regards turnover and expenses as well as profits.

The principle of Departmental Accounts can be applied to any kind of business, whether it is of a manufacturing or a retail nature. It is proposed, however, to deal in this section only with accounts of this nature affecting a Wholesale Business, since the principle on which the Departmental Accounts of a Retail Business should be kept, approximates very closely to the systems necessary for Retail Branches, which are fully discussed subsequently.

In order to obtain the desired particulars, separate records must be kept of the purchases and sales of each department. Stock of each department must be separately taken, and the expenses that can be allocated direct to any department must be charged thereto, other expenses which cannot be so allocated being divided on some reasonable basis, either in proportion to the turnover of each department, or (as in the case of rent) to the amount of floor space occupied, or in any other way which may be advisable under the circumstances. In order to allocate the purchases and sales correctly, either separate day books must be kept for each department, or columnar day books with a column for each department; otherwise the day books must be analysed. The first method is not always convenient, as it frequently involves a large number of duplicate entries, especially as regards purchases.

Where the number of departments is reasonably limited, it is most convenient to adopt columnar forms of bought and sold day books,

THE EXCELSIOR TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.

Dr. DEPARTMENTAL TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS FOR THE YEAR ENDING 30TH SEPTEMBER, 1914. Cr.

	Dept. A.		Dept. B.		TOTAL.			Dept. A.		Dept. B.		TOTAL.	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
To Stock	8,000	0 0	3,000	0 0	11,000	0 0	By Sales	30,000	0 0	20,000	0 0	50,000	0 0
" Purchases	23,000	0 0	15,000	0 0	38,000	0 0	" Stock	6,000	0 0	2,800	0 0	8,800	0 0
" Wages	1,000	0 0	500	0 0	1,500	0 0							
" Balance, being Gross Profit.	4,500	0 0	4,300	0 0	8,800	0 0							
	£36,000	0 0	£22,800	0 0	£58,800	0 0		£36,000	0 0	£22,800	0 0	£58,800	0 0
To Managing Director's Salary	600	0 0	400	0 0	1,000	0 0	By Gross Profit	4,000	0 0	4,300	0 0	8,300	0 0
" Directors' Fees	300	0 0	200	0 0	500	0 0	" Balance, being Net Loss	50	0 0	—	—	—	—
" Carriage and Freight	900	0 0	600	0 0	1,500	0 0							
" Salaries	450	0 0	300	0 0	750	0 0							
" Travelling Expenses	540	0 0	360	0 0	900	0 0							
" Incidental Expenses	60	0 0	60	0 0	120	0 0							
" Rates and Taxes	180	0 0	120	0 0	300	0 0							
" Fuel, Light and Water	72	0 0	48	0 0	120	0 0							
" Insurance	30	0 0	24	0 0	54	0 0							
" Stationery and Stamps	102	0 0	68	0 0	170	0 0							
" Discounts	360	0 0	240	0 0	600	0 0							
" Bad Debts	300	0 0	200	0 0	500	0 0							
" Depreciation Interest	120	0 0	80	0 0	200	0 0							
" Balance, being Net Profit carried to Balance Sheet	---	---	1,600	0 0	1,550	0 0		£4,050	0 0	£4,300	0 0	£8,300	0 0
	£4,050	0 0	£4,300	0 0	£8,300	0 0							

in detail at the head office. The branch will not be permitted to collect cash from its debtors, but statements will be sent out by the Head Office, and cash remitted direct by the customer thereto, and as a result, the only cash receipts by the branch will take the form of cash sales, which will probably not be numerous. The expenses at the branch will be of a cash nature, and will be dealt with through an Imprest Petty Cash Account with the Head Office, the manager sending up each month or other period a statement showing his disbursements, and receiving a cheque for the precise amount thereof.

In such a case the record of the sales and other transactions with customers entered into by the branch will be made in triplicate, one copy going to the customer as an invoice, the second being sent up to the head office day by day, while the third remains at the branch for reference. From these returns the Head Office will write up the sales ledgers applicable to the branch. The same principle will apply to returns and allowances.

If the nature of the stock renders it possible, it is desirable that quantity accounts should be kept of the stock sent to, and the sales made by, each branch, the balance being agreed with the stock on hand taken at each balancing period, any discrepancies then discovered being enquired into.

Where it is not desired to ascertain the exact profit or loss made at the branch, the result of the trading can be approximately arrived at by deducting the expenses from the estimated gross profit on turnover based on the experience of previous periods. Where, however, it is desired to ascertain the exact result, the goods sent to the branch by the head office must be charged out at cost, when it will be possible to prepare an ordinary Trading Account in respect of the branch from the Head Office books.

The above system of Branch Accounts is the simplest of its kind, and is very similar to the Departmental Accounts dealt with in § 1. The case of Wholesale Branches where all the transactions are recorded in the branch books will be similar to the class discussed under § 5.

§ 4.—Retail Branches.

(a) Goods charged to Branches at selling price.

The principal point in formulating a system of accounts for retail branches where cash transactions are numerous, is that it shall form an adequate check on the transactions both as regards stock and cash. Bearing this in mind, where the selling price of the articles is a fixed one, and the number and variety is not such as to prevent its adoption, the system of charging goods issued to the branch at selling price will be found the most advantageous. At the head office there will be a branch ledger, which will contain the following accounts for each branch :—

Stock Account,
Expense Accounts,
Total Debtors' Account ;

the latter account not being requisite where there are no credit sales.

All goods issued to the branch will be charged up to the Stock Account at selling price, the total amount received from the branch in respect of cash sales, and the total credit sales at the branch being credited to this account. An exact record must be kept of all allowances off selling price, and these will also be credited here when necessary. The balance of this Branch Stock Account at the end of each period will represent the closing stock at the branch at selling price, and must be agreed with the actual stock taken, any difference being either traced to its origin, or, if small, written off. The next account will start on the debit side with the opening stock at selling price.

The expenses will no doubt be paid by the head office partly by cheque direct and partly on the imprest system, and will be charged up to the expense accounts. The branch will send up monthly details of its credit sales to the head office, showing the total sales effected, cash received in respect thereof, discount, returns and allowances, bad debts, and any special items, and at balancing periods, a schedule of the closing balances. From these particulars the Total Debtors' Account can be written up in the Branch Ledger at the Head Office, credit sales being debited thereto, and credited to the stock account as previously mentioned.

The cash remitted to the head office in respect of credit sales would be credited to this account, and entries put through to record the returns, allowances, bad debts, &c. The closing balance on this account should then agree with the total of debtors outstanding.

In the above instance it has been presumed that all purchases are made by the head office, as will usually be the case where retail branches are concerned.

Where the system described is adopted, it will not be possible to ascertain from the books the exact profit or loss at the branch, owing to the fact that the goods are charged out at selling price; but this disadvantage is more than counterbalanced by the very material benefit obtained from being able to prove the correctness of the stock, and consequently also of the cash. Moreover, in businesses of this nature the average rate of gross profit is usually constant, and consequently as long as the turnover of the branch is known, the result of trading can easily be calculated.

In the Head Office Books it will be remembered that the closing balances of Stock on Hand at the branches are brought down at selling price. If no adjustments were made, this would have the effect of taking credit for profit on stock not yet sold, and consequently allowance must be made for the difference between selling price and cost price of these stocks. The simplest way to make this adjustment will be as follows:—

The goods sent to the branches, which were in the first instance debited to the various Branch Stock Accounts, will have been credited to a Goods Sent to Branches Account. The total of the closing stocks at selling price will be ascertained, and such amount will be brought down as a credit balance on this Goods Sent to Branches Account, thus forming a counterbalancing item for the respective debit balances on the Branch Stock Accounts, and enabling them to be eliminated altogether from the final Balance Sheet.

The remaining amount to the credit of the Goods Sent to Branches Account will represent the actual sales at the branches, and will be transferred to the General Trading Account. The stock of goods at the branches must be calculated at cost, and brought in as part of the

general stock of the business. If this method is pursued each year, the difference between the cost and the selling price of the closing stocks will be automatically adjusted.

ILLUSTRATION--

Messrs. J. Foster & Co. have a Head Office which acts as a distributing centre to their two Branches, where all Sales are made. All Purchases are made by the Head Office, and goods are charged out to the branches at Selling price. All expenses are paid by the Head Office, where the books are kept, except the Sales Ledgers, which are kept at the Branches. The Head Office, however, keeps Total Debtors' Accounts in respect of these. On taking Stock at Branch A. at selling price, it was found that the actual Stock was short by £12, compared with the balance of the Stock Account. In the same way the actual Stock at Branch B. was greater by £7 than the balance on their Stock Account. It was decided to write off these differences.

From the particulars given, write up the Branch Accounts in the Head Office Books, and prepare Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts for the year ending 31st December, 1913, and Balance Sheet as at that date.

	Head Office.			Branch A.			Branch B.		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Stock at 1st Jan. at Selling Price				2,000	0	0	1,400	0	0
Goods sent to Branches				15,000	0	0	10,000	0	0
Net Credit Sales				9,820	0	0	6,390	0	0
Cash Sales				5,150	0	0	3,321	0	0
Goods Returned to Head Office				200	0	0	120	0	0
Allowances off Selling Price				118	0	0	76	0	0
Debtors at 1st Jan.				750	0	0	540	0	0
Cash received from Debtors				9,615	0	0	6,192	0	0
Discounts allowed to Debtors				160	0	0	107	0	0
Bad Debts				105	0	0	41	0	0
Stock at 1st Jan., at Cost, at Head Office and Branches	7,600	0	0						
Ditto 31st December	6,900	0	0						
Purchases	13,621	0	0						
Salaries	1,020	0	0	620	0	0	490	0	0
Trade Expenses	420	0	0	115	0	0	76	0	0
Rent, Rates and Taxes	349	0	0	325	0	0	190	0	0
Depreciation	650	0	0						
Discounts Received	264	0	0						
Creditors	2,432	0	0						
J. Foster, Capital Account	14,942	0	0						
„ Drawing Account	5,140	0	0						
Leasehold Premises	5,200	0	0						
Fixtures and Fittings	3,120	0	0						
Cash at Bank	1,640	0	0						
„ in Hand	22	0	0	18	0	0	10	0	0

 $D\tau.$

STOCK ACCOUNT, BRANCH A.

Cr.

1913.		£	s.	d.		1913.		£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Balance—Stock ..	2,000	0	0		Dec. 31	By Net Credit Sales ..	9,820	0	0
Dec. 31	„ Goods from Head Office	15,000	0	0			„ Cash Sales ..	5,150	0	0
							„ Returns to Head Office	200	0	0
							„ Allowances off Selling Price ..	118	0	0
							„ Difference in Stock ..	12	0	0
							„ Balance—Stock ..	1,700	0	0
		£17,000	0	0				£17,000	0	0
1914.										
Jan. 1	To Balance—Stock ..	£1,700	0	0						

Dr.		STOCK ACCOUNT, BRANCH B.				Cr.					
1913.		£		s. d.		1913.		£		s. d.	
Jan. 1	To Balance—Stock	1,400	0	0		Dec. 31	By Net Credit Sales	6,390	0	0	
Dec. 31	„ Goods from Head Office ..	10,000	0	0			„ Cash Sales	3,321	0	0	
	„ Difference in Stock	7	0	0			„ Returns to Head Office ..	120	0	0	
							„ Allowances off Selling Price	76	0	0	
							„ Balance—Stock	1,500	0	0	
		<u>£11,407</u>		<u>0 0</u>				<u>£11,407</u>		<u>0 0</u>	
1914.											
Jan. 1	To Balance—Stock	£1,500	0	0							

Dr.		TOTAL DEBTORS' ACCOUNT, BRANCH A.				Cr.			
		£	s.	d.			£	s.	d.
1913.					1913.				
Jan. 1	To Balance	750	0	0	Dec. 31	By Cash	9,615	0	0
Dec. 31	„ Net Credit Sales..	9,820	0	0		„ Discounts	160	0	0
						„ Bad Debts	105	0	0
						„ Balance	690	0	0
		£10,570	0	0			£10,570	0	0
1914.									
Jan. 1	To Balance	£690	0	0					

Dr.		TOTAL DEBTORS' ACCOUNT, BRANCH B.				Cr.					
1913.		£		s. d.		1913.		£		s. d.	
Jan. 1	To Balance	540	0	0	Dec. 31	By Cash	6,192	0	0		
Dec. 31	„ Net Credit Sales.. ..	6,390	0	0		„ Discounts	107	0	0		
						„ Bad Debts	41	0	0		
						„ Balance	590	0	0		
		<u>£6,930 0 0</u>					<u>£6,930 0 0</u>				
1914.											
Jan. 1	To Balance	£590	0	0							

Dr.		GOODS SENT TO BRANCHES ACCOUNT, A.				Cr.			
1913. Dec. 31	To Returns from Branch .. " Allowances off Selling Price " Difference in Stock .. " Transfer to Sales Account " Balance—Stock Suspense	£ 200 118 12 14,970 1,700	s. 0 0 0 0 0	d. 0 0 0 0 0	1913. Jan. 1 Dec. 31	By Balance—Stock Suspense " Goods to Branch ..	£ 2,000 15,000 £17,000	s. 0 0 0	d. 0 0 0
		<u>£17,000 0 0</u>					<u>£17,000 0 0</u>		
					1914. Jan. 1	By Balance—Stock Suspense	£1,700	0	0

Dr.		GOODS SENT TO BRANCHES ACCOUNT, B.				Cr.			
1913.		£	s.	d.	1913.		£	s.	d.
Dec. 31	To Returns from Branch ..	120	0	0	Jan. 1	By Balance—Stock Suspense	1,400	0	0
	„ Allowances off Selling Price ..	76	0	0	Dec. 31	„ Goods to Branch ..	10,000	0	0
	„ Transfer to Sales Account ..	9,711	0	0		„ Difference in Stock ..	7	0	0
	„ Balance—Stock Suspense	1,500	0	0					
		<u>£11,407</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>			<u>£11,407</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
					1914.				
					Jan. 1	By Balance—Stock Suspense	£1,500	0	0

In most cases of this kind the goods will be charged out at cost. As a result, it will not be possible in the Head Office Branch Ledger to keep a Goods Account which can be reconciled by including the closing stock, but on the other hand, all materials will be found for the preparation of a proper Trading Account for the Branch, the opening and closing stocks being taken at cost price, and the goods charged out being also at cost price. The cash and credit sales will be ascertained in a similar manner to that described under the other system, as also will all the other items.

Although the exact result of the trading can be ascertained, it cannot be contended that such an absolute check is afforded by this system as by the former, and consequently it may be advantageous to supplement it by a statistical stock record compiled monthly in the following manner :—

The opening stock will be taken, and to it added the purchases. From the total thus arrived at will be deducted the gross sales; the gross profit estimated at the average rate will be added, and the result will then represent the estimated stock on hand. By a comparison of these monthly figures it can be seen whether the stock fluctuates, and if there is any reason to suspect any irregularity, the actual stock can be taken without notice being afforded to the manager, and it can then be seen what justification there is for the suspicion. It must be remembered, however, that this arrangement forms no part of the double entry book-keeping, and is merely in the nature of a periodical estimate.

ILLUSTRATION—

BRANCH A. MONTHLY STOCK ACCOUNTS—JANUARY TO JUNE.

	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	April.	May.	June.
	£	£	£			
Opening Stock	1,400	1,225	1,175			
Add Purchases	200	250	350			
	1,600	1,475	1,525			
Less Sales	500	400	420			
	1,100	1,075	1,105			
Add Gross Profit 25 % on Sales..	125	100	105			
Estimated Closing Stock	£1,225	£1,175	£1,210			

In cases where credit sales at the branches are at all numerous, it is advisable for Total Debtors' Accounts to be kept in respect thereof at the Head Office; in other cases where the credit is short and the amount outstanding at any time not very large, such accounts are not kept, but the outstanding debtors are brought into the accounts at the end of each period in the same manner as Stock.

ILLUSTRATION—

Goods are charged out from the Head Office of a Company to its Branches at cost price. Cash received at the Branches is paid into the Head Office daily. From the following particulars, prepare Profit and Loss Account of the X. Branch for the year ending 31st December, 1913:—

	£	s.	d.
Goods sent to Branch, less Returns..	4,070	0	0
Stock 1st January, 1913	690	0	0
Cash received from Branch	6,200	0	0
Stock 31st December, 1913	740	0	0
Debtors 1st January, 1913	75	0	0
Debtors 31st December, 1913	89	0	0
Rent, Rates and Taxes	160	0	0
Wages and Sundry Expenses..	340	0	0

Dr.

X. BRANCH PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Cr.

FOR YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

1913.		£	s.	d.	1913.		£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Stock ..	£690	0	0	Dec. 31	By Cash ..	6,200	0	0
	„ Debtors ..	75	0	0		„ Stock ..	£740	0	0
						„ Debtors ..	89	0	0
		765	0	0			829	0	0
Dec. 31	„ Goods from H.O. ..	4,070	0	0					
	„ Rent, Rates and Taxes..	160	0	0					
	„ Wages and Sundry Expenses..	340	0	0					
	„ Net Profit.. ..	1,694	0	0					
		£7,029	0	0			£7,029	0	0
1914.									
Jan. 1	To Balance—								
	Stock ..	£740	0	0					
	Debtors ..	89	0	0					
		£829	0	0					

(c) Goods charged out at cost price plus a percentage.

An alternative method to charging goods out at cost is to charge them out plus a percentage representing the estimated gross profit on the cost (which is distinct from, and must not be confused with, the rate of gross profit on the sales). If this is done, the opening and closing stocks must be taken into account, plus the same percentage, and as a result the Trading Account of the Branch should show little or no

balance one way or the other. If there is a profit or loss of any amount it will be apparent that either there is some error, or the rate of gross profit assumed is not correct. In the case of a loss, attention should also be directed to the possibility of fraud having taken place in connection with either cash or goods, thereby reducing the profit that should have been earned by the Branch in the ordinary way. Under this system the accounts in the Head Office Branch Ledger will be similar to those described under sub-section (b). It should be remembered, however, that the closing stocks must be adjusted to cost in the same way as described above under sub-section (a).

Under this method it will be possible for the Head Office to compile from their own books not only a Trading Account on the gross principle, but also (by adjusting the percentages on the opening and closing stocks and purchases) an actual Trading Account disclosing the net profit or loss made by the Branch.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Company charges out goods supplied by the Head Office to its Branches at cost, plus 25 per cent. From the following particulars show the Trading Account of the Branch in the Head Office Books, and prepare a Memorandum Trading Account showing the real gross Profits.

	£	s.	d.
Goods sent to Branch, less Returns..	11,000	0	0
Sales	10,400	0	0
Stock at commencement	1,500	0	0
Stock at close	2,120	0	0

Dr. BRANCH TRADING ACCOUNT IN HEAD OFFICE BOOKS. Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Stock	1,500	0	0	By Sales.. .. .	10,400	0	0
„ Goods from Head Office	11,000	0	0	„ Stock	2,120	0	0
„ Gross Profit	20	0	0				
	£12,520	0	0		£12,520	0	0
To Balance—Stock	£2,120	0	0				

Dr. ACTUAL TRADING ACCOUNT. Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Stock	1,200	0	0	By Sales.. .. .	10,400	0	0
„ Goods from Head Office	8,800	0	0	„ Stock	1,696	0	0
„ Gross Profit	2,096	0	0				
	£12,096	0	0		£12,096	0	0

Note to Illustration.

In the Head Office books, if it was desired to show the real profit at the Branch as part of the double entry, the entries would be as follows:—

<i>Dr.</i>	BRANCH ADJUSTMENT ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>
		£	s.	d.	
To Balance Down—					By Balance brought forward—
% on Closing Stock	424	0	0		% on Opening Stock
„ Profit and Loss Account :—					Goods sent to Branches Account—
Actual Gross Profit	2,096	0	0		% on Goods sent
					„ Branch Trading Account—apparent
					Profit transferred
		£2,520	0	0	
					By Balance

<i>Dr.</i>	GOODS SENT TO BRANCHES ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>
	£	s. d.	
To Branch Adjustment Account—			
% on Goods sent	2,200	0 0	By Goods to Branch
„ Trading Account—cost of Goods sent	8,900	0 0	11,000
	£11,000	0 0	
			£11,000
			0 0

The credit balance on the Branch Adjustment Account of £424 would be set off in drawing the Final Accounts against the debit balance of £2,120, which represents Stock at Branch plus 25 per cent., and this Stock would then show in the Balance Sheet at its proper figure of cost, viz., £1,696.

It should be observed that when 25 per cent. is added to the cost, and it is desired to ascertain the cost when only the gross figures are given, 20 per cent. must be deducted only, as 25 per cent. added to the net, is equal to 20 per cent. taken off the gross.

§ 5.—Branches where the whole of the detail is recorded in the Branch Books.

In the case of Branches where on account of their distance from the Head Office, or owing to the amount of detail involved, and to the necessity of keeping the permanent record on the spot, it is found necessary to have the whole of the accounts kept at the branch, the following system will apply.

There will be an account in the Branch books called "Head Office Current Account," and in the Head Office books there will be a corresponding account called "Branch Current Account." All remittances of cash to or from the Head Office, and transfers of goods, &c., will be passed through this account, either in detail or in total, at the end of each period. In the Branch books this account can be regarded as representing the capital at the Branch, and consequently if the assets

in the Branch books exceed the liabilities, the Head Office Current Account will necessarily show a credit balance. In the Head Office books the Branch Current Account will, in the same way, show as a debit balance representing the excess of assets over liabilities at the Branch.

At the end of each balancing period, where the Branch makes out a Trading and Profit and Loss Account, the balance of that account will be transferred to the Head Office Account, and the Branch Balance Sheet will then disclose the assets and the liabilities at the Branch, and the balance due to or from the Head Office.

The Head Office on receiving these accounts will incorporate the profit at the Branch by debiting the Branch Current Account and crediting Profit and Loss Account. Assuming no other adjustments are necessary, it will then be found that the balance on the Branch Account in the Head Office books agrees with the balance of the Head Office Account in the Branch books, and consequently Head Office and Branch Balance Sheets can be amalgamated, the various assets and liabilities being added together under their respective headings, while the Current Account Balances, being contras, can be eliminated.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following are Trial Balances of the Head Office and Leeds Branch, respectively, of a business at 31st December, 1913. Prepare amalgamated Balance Sheet, and show the Leeds Current Account in the Head Office books.

DEBIT BALANCES.	Head Office.			Leeds.		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Goodwill	5,000	0	0			
Stock	6,500	0	0	3,200	0	0
Debtors	7,300	0	0	4,100	0	0
Cash at Bank	2,100	0	0	520	0	0
Plant and Machinery	4,300	0	0	1,700	0	0
Leeds Current Account 1st Jan., 1913	6,380	0	0			
Goods sent to Leeds	1,500	0	0			
Cash sent to London				2,000	0	0
	£33,080	0	0	£11,520	0	0
CREDIT BALANCES.	Head Office.			Leeds.		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Share Capital:—21,000 Shares of £1 each, fully paid	21,000	0	0			
P. and L. Account—Balance at 1st Jan., 1913	530	0	0			
" Profit for year	6,200	0	0	1,900	0	0
Creditors	3,100	0	0	1,600	0	0
Reserve for Bad Debts	250	0	0	140	0	0
Goods received from London				1,500	0	0
Cash received from Leeds	2,000	0	0			
Head Office Current Account 1st Jan., 1913				6,380	0	0
	£33,080	0	0	£11,520	0	0

<i>Dr.</i>	LEEDS CURRENT ACCOUNT IN HEAD OFFICE BOOKS.	<i>Cr.</i>
------------	---	------------

1913.				£	s.	d.	1913.				£	s.	d.
Jan. 1	To Balance	..	..	6,880	0	0	Dec. 31	By Cash	..	..	2,000	0	0
Dec. 31	„ Goods	..	..	1,500	0	0		„ Balance	..	..	7,780	0	0
	„ Profit and Loss Account:—												
	Profit	..	..	1,900	0	0							
				<u>£9,780</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>					<u>£9,780</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
1914.													
Jan. 1	To Balance	..	..	£7,780	0	0							

<i>Dr.</i>	BALANCE SHEET, 31st DECEMBER, 1913.	<i>Cr.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------	------------

[illegible]

It frequently happens that at the date of the Balance Sheet, items either of cash or of stock may be in transit between the Head Office and the Branches, or between one Branch and another Branch. In such a case it will be apparent that whereas for example the Head Office will have debited the Branch with cash sent on the last day of the year, the Branch will not have credited the Head Office, owing to the fact that the item of cash was not received till the beginning of the new year. Adjustments must be made in respect of such items.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Company has its Head Office in London, and Branches at Liverpool and Sheffield. The following are the separate Balance Sheets on 31st December, 1913.

<i>Dr.</i>	LONDON.	<i>Cr.</i>
------------	---------	------------

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Share Capital:—				By Stock	36,250	0	0
100,000 Shares of £1 each, fully paid	100,000	0	0	" Debtors	42,500	0	0
" Creditors	6,000	0	0	" Sheffield Current Account (after			
" Liverpool Current Account (after				debiting £100 Cash remitted on			
debiting £100 Cash remitted on				31st December, 1913, and			
31st December, 1913, and received				at Sheffield on 3rd Jan., 1914)	27,140	0	0
at Liverpool on 1st Jan., 1914)	390	0	0	" Cash at Bank	11,500	0	0
" Profit and Loss Account:—							
Balance at 1st Jan. .. £1,750	0	0					
Add Profit for year .. 9,250	0	0					
	11,000	0	0				
	£117,390	0	0		£117,390	0	0

LIVERPOOL BOOKS.

Dr.

SHEFFIELD CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Balance.. .. .	£. s. d. 220 0 0	By Balance	£. s. d. 70 0 0
		„ Stock in transit	150 0 0
	<u>£220 0 0</u>		<u>£220 0 0</u>
		By Balance	£220 0 0

Dr.

STOCK IN TRANSIT.

Cr.

To Sheffield Current Account	£. s. d. 150 0 0	By Balance	£. s. d. 225 0 0
„ Head Office Current Account ..	75 0 0		
	<u>£225 0 0</u>		<u>£225 0 0</u>
To Balance	£225 0 0		

Dr.

HEAD OFFICE CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Balance.. .. .	£. s. d. 565 0 0	By Stock in transit	£. s. d. 75 0 0
		„ Balance	490 0 0
	<u>£565 0 0</u>		<u>£565 0 0</u>
To Balance.. .. .	£490 0 0		

SHEFFIELD BOOKS.

Dr.

HEAD OFFICE CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Balance.. .. .	£. s. d. 26,840 0 0	By Balance	£. s. d. 26,840 0 0
		„ Cash in transit	500 0 0
	<u>£26,840 0 0</u>		<u>£26,840 0 0</u>
		By Balance	£26,840 0 0

Dr.

CASH IN TRANSIT.

Cr.

To Head Office Current Account.. ..	£. s. d. 500 0 0		
-------------------------------------	---------------------	--	--

Dr.

LIVERPOOL CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Balance.. .. .	£. s. d. 220 0 0		
-------------------	---------------------	--	--

In some cases it is found convenient to keep the record of the fixed assets, such as land, buildings, plant and machinery, &c., in the Head Office books rather than in the Branch books. If it is desired to charge the Branch with depreciation on these assets, the Head Office Account in the Branch books will be credited with the amount thereof, and Depreciation Account debited. The assets being in the Head Office books, the Head Office will make an entry crediting the Asset Accounts and debiting the Branch Current Account with the amount of depreciation. Should, however, the depreciation not be charged to the Branch, but dealt with in the general accounts, no such entry will be necessary.

In combining the final accounts of a business where there are only one or two Branches, it is frequently found convenient to show the accounts in columnar form, a column being provided for the Head Office, for each Branch, and for the Total Figures. When this is done care should be taken to see that the amount of sales from the Head Office to Branches, and the amount of purchases by Branches from Head Office, together with any similar transactions as between the Branches themselves, should be eliminated from the total column, otherwise the total figures will be unduly swollen by the inclusion of transactions within the business itself, which are merely departmental, and have no relation to the actual turnover. If the Balance Sheet is in columnar form, it will be necessary to include the balances of the Current Accounts between the Head Office and Branches in the respective columns to which they relate, in order that the totals of these columns should agree, but these Current Account Balances should not be extended, since they represent the net assets or liabilities at the Branches, which have already been taken into account.

When inter-Branch transactions occur, each Branch must have a current account for the Branch with which the transactions are effected, and these accounts must be agreed at the end of each period in a similar manner to the current accounts between the Head Office and Branches.

ILLUSTRATION -

A., B., and C. are partners in a firm having separate businesses in London, Edinburgh, and Dublin. A. manages in London, and receives two-thirds of the profits there, the balance being shared equally between B. and C. B. manages in Edinburgh, and receives half of the profits there, the balance being shared equally between A. and C. C. manages in Dublin, and receives one-third of the profits there, the balance being shared equally between A. and B. The Capital Account of each partner is kept in the books of his House. Each House from time to time buys from and sells to the other Houses at agreed rates sufficient to give the selling House a reasonable profit on the handling of the goods, and such transactions have been adjusted through the Current Accounts.

From the following Trial Balances of the respective Houses, prepare Columnar Trading and Profit and Loss Account for the year ending 31st December, 1913, and Columnar Balance Sheet as at that date. It is agreed that the Special Legal Expenses incurred in London shall be borne by the three Houses equally. Show the Current Accounts and Partners' Capital Accounts in the books of each House. Interest on Capital to be charged at 5 per cent. per annum, but no interest on drawings. Provide depreciation on plant and machinery at 10 per cent. per annum. Closing Stocks : London, £14,000 ; Edinburgh, £11,500 ; Dublin, £7,500.

Dr. TRIAL BALANCES, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913. *Cr.*

Debit Balances.	London.		Edinburgh.		Dublin.		Credit Balances.	London.		Edinburgh.		Dublin.	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
Stock 1st January ..	15,000	0 0	10,000	0 0	7,000	0 0	Sales ..	57,000	0 0	39,000	0 0	25,000	0 0
Purchases ..	40,000	0 0	25,000	0 0	12,000	0 0	Do. Internal ..	7,000	0 0	2,500	0 0	1,500	0 0
Do. Internal ..	1,000	0 0	4,000	0 0	6,000	0 0	Creditors ..	16,800	0 0	7,000	0 0	7,600	0 0
Wages ..	5,000	0 0	3,500	0 0	2,500	0 0	Current Accounts :—						
Trade Expenses ..	4,900	0 0	2,900	0 0	1,550	0 0	London ..			3,000	0 0	2,000	0 0
Special Legal Expenses	600	0 0					Dublin ..			1,000	0 0		
Plant ..	7,000	0 0	4,000	0 0	3,000	0 0	Capital Accounts :—						
Debtors ..	17,800	0 0	8,600	0 0	6,550	0 0	A. ..	20,000	0 0	8,000	0 0	5,000	0 0
Current Accounts :—							C. ..						
Edinburgh ..	3,000	0 0			1,000	0 0							
Dublin ..	2,000	0 0			500	0 0							
Cash ..	2,500	0 0	1,500	0 0									
Drawing Accounts :—													
A. ..	2,000	0 0	1,000	0 0									
B. ..													
C. ..													
	£100,800	0 0	£60,500	0 0	£41,100	0 0		£100,800	0 0	£60,500	0 0	£41,100	0 0

GENERAL TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Dr.

Cr.

	London.	Edinburgh.	Dublin.	TOTAL.		London.	Edinburgh.	Dublin.	TOTAL.
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
To Stock 1st Jan...	15,000 0 0	10,000 0 0	7,000 0 0	32,000 0 0	By Sales ..	57,000 0 0	39,000 0 0	25,000 0 0	121,000 0 0
" Purchases ..	40,000 0 0	25,000 0 0	12,000 0 0	77,000 0 0	Do, Internal ..	7,000 0 0	2,500 0 0	1,500 0 0	11,000 0 0
" Do, Internal ..	1,000 0 0	4,000 0 0	6,000 0 0	11,000 0 0	" Stock, 31st December	14,000 0 0	11,500 0 0	7,500 0 0	33,000 0 0
" Wages ..	5,600 0 0	3,500 0 0	2,500 0 0	11,600 0 0					
" Gross Profit ..	17,000 0 0	10,500 0 0	6,500 0 0	34,000 0 0					
	<u>£78,000 0 0</u>	<u>£53,000 0 0</u>	<u>£34,000 0 0</u>	<u>£154,000 0 0</u>		<u>£78,000 0 0</u>	<u>£53,000 0 0</u>	<u>£34,000 0 0</u>	<u>£154,000 0 0</u>
To Trade Expenses ..	4,900 0 0	2,900 0 0	1,550 0 0	9,350 0 0	By Gross Profit ..	17,000 0 0	10,500 0 0	6,500 0 0	34,000 0 0
" Special Legal Expenses ..	200 0 0	200 0 0	200 0 0	600 0 0					
" Depreciation ..	700 0 0	400 0 0	300 0 0	1,400 0 0					
" Interest on Capital ..	1,000 0 0	400 0 0	250 0 0	1,650 0 0					
" Net Profit ..	10,200 0 0	6,600 0 0	4,200 0 0	21,000 0 0					
	<u>£17,000 0 0</u>	<u>£10,500 0 0</u>	<u>£6,500 0 0</u>	<u>£34,000 0 0</u>		<u>£17,000 0 0</u>	<u>£10,500 0 0</u>	<u>£6,500 0 0</u>	<u>£34,000 0 0</u>
To A. ..	6,800 0 0	1,650 0 0	1,400 0 0	9,850 0 0	By Balance ..	10,200 0 0	6,600 0 0	4,200 0 0	21,000 0 0
" B. ..	1,700 0 0	3,300 0 0	1,400 0 0	6,400 0 0					
" C. ..	1,700 0 0	1,350 0 0	1,400 0 0	4,450 0 0					
	<u>£10,200 0 0</u>	<u>£6,600 0 0</u>	<u>£4,200 0 0</u>	<u>£21,000 0 0</u>		<u>£10,200 0 0</u>	<u>£6,600 0 0</u>	<u>£4,200 0 0</u>	<u>£21,000 0 0</u>

LONDON BOOKS.

Dr.

A. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Drawings	2,000	0	0	By Balance	20,000	0	0
„ Balance	28,850	0	0	„ Interest	1,090	0	0
				„ Profit and Loss Account:—			
				London Profit	6,800	0	0
				Edinburgh Profit	1,650	0	0
				Dublin Profit	1,400	0	0
	£30,850	0	0		£30,850	0	0
				By Balance	£28,850	0	0

Dr.

EDINBURGH CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Balance	3,000	0	0	By Profit and Loss Account:—			
„ A., Edinburgh Profit	1,650	0	0	London Profit B.	1,700	0	0
„ Law Charges	200	0	0	„ Balance	3,150	0	0
	£4,850	0	0		£4,850	0	0
To Balance	£3,150	0	0				

Dr.

DUBLIN CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Balance	2,000	0	0	By Profit and Loss Account:—			
„ A., Dublin Profit	1,400	0	0	London Profit C.	1,700	0	0
„ Law Charges	200	0	0	„ Balance	1,900	0	0
	£3,600	0	0		£3,600	0	0
To Balance	£1,900	0	0				

EDINBURGH BOOKS.

Dr.

B. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Drawings	1,000	0	0	By Balance	8,000	0	0
„ Balance	13,800	0	0	„ Interest	400	0	0
				„ Profit and Loss Account:—			
				Edinburgh Profit	3,300	0	0
				London Profit	1,700	0	0
				Dublin Profit	1,400	0	0
	£14,800	0	0		£14,800	0	0
				By Balance	£13,800	0	0

Dr.

LONDON CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To B., London Profit	1,700	0	0	By Balance	3,000	0	0
„ Balance	3,150	0	0	„ Law Charges	200	0	0
				„ Profit and Loss Account :—			
				Edinburgh Profit, A.	1,650	0	0
	<u>£4,850</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£4,850</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£3,150	0	0

Dr.

DUBLIN CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To B., Dublin Profit	1,400	0	0	By Balance	1,000	0	0
„ Balance	1,250	0	0	„ Profit and Loss Account :—			
				Edinburgh Profit, C.	1,650	0	0
	<u>£2,650</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£2,650</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£1,250	0	0

DUBLIN BOOKS.

Dr.

C. CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Drawings	1,000	0	0	By Balance	5,000	0	0
„ Balance	9,000	0	0	„ Interest	250	0	0
				„ Profit and Loss Account :—			
				Dublin Profit	1,400	0	0
				London Profit	1,700	0	0
				Edinburgh Profit	1,650	0	0
	<u>£10,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£10,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£9,000	0	0

Dr.

LONDON CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To C., London Profit	1,700	0	0	By Balance	2,000	0	0
„ Balance	1,900	0	0	„ Law Charges	200	0	0
				„ Profit and Loss Account :—			
				Dublin Profit, A.	1,400	0	0
	<u>£3,600</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£3,600</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
				By Balance	£1,900	0	0

Dr.

EDINBURGH CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Balance	1,000	0	0	By Profit and Loss Account :—			
„ C., Edinburgh Profit	1,650	0	0	Dublin Profit, B.	1,400	0	0
				„ Balance	1,250	0	0
	<u>£2,650</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£2,650</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
To Balance	£1,250	0	0				

Dr. COLUMNAR BALANCE SHEET, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Cr.

	London.	Edinburgh.	Dublin	TOTAL.		London.	Edinburgh.	Dublin.	TOTAL.
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
To Creditors ..	16,800 0 0	7,000 0 0	7,600 0 0	31,400 0 0	By Plant ..	6,300 0 0	3,600 0 0	2,700 0 0	12,600 0 0
„ Current A/cs.: ..					„ Stock ..	14,000 0 0	11,500 0 0	7,500 0 0	33,000 0 0
London ..		3,150 0 0	1,900 0 0		„ Debtors ..	17,800 0 0	8,600 0 0	6,550 0 0	32,950 0 0
Dublin ..		1,250 0 0			„ Current A/cs.: ..				
„ Capital A/cs.: ..					Edinburgh ..	3,150 0 0		1,250 0 0	
A. ..	28,850 0 0			28,850 0 0	Dublin ..	1,900 0 0			
B. ..		13,800 0 0		13,800 0 0	„ Cash ..	2,500 0 0	1,500 0 0	500 0 0	4,500 0 0
C. ..			9,000 0 0	9,000 0 0					
	<u>£45,650 0 0</u>	<u>£25,200 0 0</u>	<u>£18,500 0 0</u>	<u>£83,050 0 0</u>		<u>£45,650 0 0</u>	<u>£25,200 0 0</u>	<u>£18,500 0 0</u>	<u>£83,050 0 0</u>

§ 6.—Foreign Exchange.

By “Exchange” is meant the conversion of moneys of one country into the terms of another. The market rate between two countries is fixed by the actual supply and demand for Bills of Exchange, and in this country the current rates, known as the “Course of Exchange,” are published by the Bill Brokers from the London Royal Exchange twice weekly.

The necessity for converting sterling into foreign currency, and *vice versa*, arises where a transaction is entered into between two persons living in different countries. For instance, a London merchant may receive goods from a German merchant, the same being invoiced to him in German currency, which would probably be converted into sterling at a fixed average rate. In order to settle the account he will buy in the London market for sterling a Bill on Germany for the requisite number of marks.

If the rate of exchange is in favour of this country, *i.e.* if there are more Bills available than are in demand, a sovereign will purchase a greater number of marks than would otherwise be the case, and a profit on exchange will result. The converse is the case where the rate of exchange is against this country.*

*For further information on this subject the reader is referred to *An Outline of the Money Market*, by Ernest Evan Spicer, F.C.A. (Gee & Co.).

ILLUSTRATION—

A. in London owes B. & Company in Paris 2,515 francs. B. & Company's account in A.'s Ledger shows a credit balance of £100, A. having converted the francs into sterling at the rate of 25·15. A. desires to pay B. & Company, and for that purpose purchases in London a draft on Paris for 2,515 francs, for which he pays at the rate of 25·18.

Make the entries in A.'s Books, posting up and balancing off B. & Co.'s Account.

A.'S BOOKS.

Dr.			B. & CO.'S ACCOUNT.			Cr.		
	Francs.	Sterling. £ s. d.				Francs.	Sterling. £ s. d.	
To Cash for Draft	2515·00	99 17 8	By Balance	2515·00		2515·00	100 0 0	
„ Profit on Exchange ..		2 4						
	2515·00	£100 0 0				2515·00	£100 0 0	

§ 7.—Foreign Branches.

In these cases when the Branches are of a trading or manufacturing nature, it will be found necessary to keep the whole of the detail accounts at the Branch, and consequently the same system can be applied as that described in § 5.

Where the Branch is situated in a British Colony adopting the British coinage system, no difficulty will arise in connection with the question of exchange, since all accounts will be in sterling. When, however, the currency of the Branch accounts is not sterling, the problem of exchange at once presents itself, and requires to be dealt with.

(a) Branches working on a Fixed Rate of Exchange.

Where the rate of exchange is so stable that fluctuations can be disregarded, it is usual to work on a fixed rate, and this is frequently done in connection with the United States of America and France, to mention two examples. As a result the only difference on exchange will arise in connection with the remittances of cash to and from the Branch. In the Head Office books the Branch Current Accounts should be ruled with two columns, currency and sterling, the former being a memorandum column only. The remittances should be entered in these columns as and when made. At the end of the period when the Branch remits its accounts, including a copy of its Head Office Account, every item will be converted at the fixed rate of exchange, with the exception of the

remittances. The difference between the amount of these remittances, converted at the actual and fixed rate respectively, will represent profit or loss on exchange, and will be debited or credited to the Branch Office Account in the Head Office books, and credited or debited to Difference on Exchange Account. The conversion of the Head Office balance in the Branch books at the fixed rate will then equal the sterling balance of the Branch Account in the Head Office books, and the accounts can be amalgamated in the usual manner.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following are the final balances of a Branch in Paris at 31st December, 1913. Convert at the fixed rate of exchange of Fcs.25.25 to the £. The cash remitted from Paris appeared in the London books as £98 6s. 6d. Make the necessary adjustments in the London books by Journal entry, and show the Branch Current Account in the London books and the London Current Account in the Branch books.

FINAL BALANCES, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

	Fcs.	Fcs.
Cash at Bank	6,045.72	
Cash in Hand	570.53	
Stock 31st December, 1913	28,045.88	
Plant	25,676.61	
Office Furniture	2,449.99	
Reserve for Bad Debts		4,221.33
Land and Premises	60,000.00	
Debtors	43,677.21	
Profit and Loss Account—Profit for year		5,159.52
Creditors		56,932.03
Remittances to London	2,500.00	
Head Office Account—Balance at 1st January, 1913		102,653.06
	<u>Fcs.168,965.94</u>	<u>Fcs.168,965.94</u>

RULE FOR CONVERTING CURRENCY INTO STERLING WHEN THE RATE IS PER £.

Divide the currency figure by the rate of exchange, and the quotient will be £ sterling; the decimal remainder must then be converted into shillings and pence.

FINAL BALANCES, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913, CONVERTED at Fcs.25.25 per £.

	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
Cash at Bank	239 8 9	
Cash in Hand	22 11 11	
Stock 31st December, 1913	1,110 14 8	
Plant	1,016 17 10	
Office Furniture	97 0 8	
Reserve for Bad Debts		167 3 8
Land and Premises	2,376 4 9	
Debtors	1,729 15 10	
Profit and Loss Account—Profit for year		204 6 9
Creditors		2,254 14 8
Remittances to London (actual rate)	98 6 6	
Head Office Account—Balance at 1st January, 1913		4,065 9 4
Difference in Exchange	13 6	
	<u>£6,691 14 5</u>	<u>£6,691 14 5</u>

LONDON JOURNAL.

		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
1913.							
Dec. 31	Exchange Account Dr.	13	6				
	To Paris Current Account						13 6
	(Being difference in Exchange on remittances)						
Dec. 31	Paris Current Account Dr.	204	6	9			
	To Profit and Loss Account						204 6 9
	(Being Fcs.5,159.52 profit for year @ Fcs.25.25 per £)						

LONDON LEDGER.

Dr.

PARIS CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

		Francs.	Sterling.			Francs.	Sterling.
1913.			£ s. d.	1913.			£ s. d.
Jan. 1	To Balance ..	102,653.06	4,065 9 4	Dec. 31	By Remittances ..	2,500.00	98 6 6
Dec. 31	" P. & L. Account:--				" Difference in		
	Profit for year	5,159.52	204 6 9		Exchange ..		13 6
					" Balance ..	105,312.58	4,170 16 1
	Fcs.	107,812.58	£4,269 16 1		Fcs.	107,812.58	£4,269 16 1
1914.							
Jan. 1	To Balance ..	105,312.58	£4,170 16 1				

PARIS LEDGER.

Dr.

LONDON CURRENT ACCOUNT.

Cr.

		Francs.			Francs.
1913.			1913.		
Dec. 31	To Remittances	2,500.00	Jan. 1	By Balance	102,653.06
	" Balance	105,312.58	Dec. 31	" P. & L. Account:--	
				Profit for Year	5,159.52
	Fcs.	107,812.58		Fcs.	107,812.58
1914.			1914.		
Jan. 1	By Balance	105,312.58	Jan. 1	By Balance	105,312.58

NOTE.—It is not usual to provide memorandum sterling columns in the currency books, though this can be done if desired.

(b) Branches Working on a Fluctuating Rate of Exchange.

Where the exchange is of such a fluctuating nature that it would be incorrect to work on a fixed basis, the accounts of the Branch are usually converted on the following principle:—

- (1) Fixed assets at the same rate as before.
- (2) Floating assets and liabilities at the rate of the day of the Balance Sheet.
- (3) Revenue Balances at the average rate of the period.
- (4) Remittances at the actual rate.

Additions to fixed assets should be converted at the average rate ruling during the period, or if special remittances are made for the purpose, at the average rate of such remittances.

If depreciation on these fixed assets is provided for on a percentage basis, the conversion thereof cannot be worked on the average rate for the period, although it is a revenue item, but must be arrived at by way of a percentage on the opening sterling figure, since the depreciation must be converted on the same basis as the asset itself. The reason why fixed assets are converted at the same rate as before, although the exchange may vary, is that such assets remain in the country itself, and are not in the ordinary way subject to conversion into cash in the same manner as floating assets are. At the same time, if the rate of exchange permanently rises, it is in many cases thought prudent to provide a special reserve for such loss on exchange in the case of fixed assets.

The average rate for the conversion of Revenue Balances will be taken either from the average rates published in certain newspapers at regular intervals, or by taking the rate at the first day of each month during the period, adding the rates up and dividing by a number equal to the number of months. As regards goods sent out or received from the Branch, these will be converted at the rate ruling on the day when the goods were despatched by the Branch or received by them as the case may be.

These general rules are subject to modification in certain circumstances, e.g., in connection with Stores Accounts, which it is customary to adjust on a standard basis so that no profit or loss on Exchange is written off in respect of the conversion of the stock of stores in hand at the end of each balancing period.

The Branch Trial Balance will be ruled with two additional sterling columns, a further column being provided for the appropriate rate of exchange, and each item will be converted at its proper rate, with the exception of the opening balance on the Head Office Account, which will be taken at the sterling figure as shown in the last accounts. It is convenient to show the remittances and other items relating to the Head Office separately in the Branch Trial Balance, and to leave the Head Office Current Account at its opening figure until the conversions

have been made, owing to the differing rates of exchange at which the various classes of items must be calculated.

The sterling columns of the Trial Balance will be added up, and the difference thereon will represent the difference on exchange, which will be adjusted through the Branch Office Account in the Head Office Books in the manner previously explained. If the difference is a loss, it should be written off; if a profit, it is advisable to carry the amount forward to the next account, since the fluctuation of the exchange may possibly result in a loss during the succeeding period.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the London Trial Balance of the China Trading Company, Limited, at 31st December, 1913:—

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Share Capital:—						
Authorized, 50,000 Shares of £1 each—						
Issued, 36,000 ditto fully paid ..				36,000	0	0
Office Expenses	250	0	0			
Directors' Fees	500	0	0			
Sundry Creditors				100	0	0
Salaries	300	0	0			
P. & L. Account—Balance at 1st January, 1913 ..				887	10	6
China Branch Account	36,687	10	6			
Remittances from China				2,750	0	0
Exchange Account—Balance at 1st January, 1913 ..				400	0	0
Cash at Bank	3,000	0	0			
	<u>£40,137</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>£40,137</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>6</u>

The China Branch prepare their own Profit and Loss Account, but do not deal with Depreciation. They send over the following Trial Balance at 31st December, 1913:—

	Taels.	Taels.
Cash	12,000	
Stock 31st December, 1913	55,000	
Plant	30,000	
Furniture and Fittings	5,000	
Land and Premises	120,000	
Debtors	80,000	
Creditors		60,000
Remittances to London	20,000	
P. and L. Account:—		
Profit for year		35,000
Head Office Account:—		
Balance at 1st January, 1913		227,000
	<u>322,000</u>	<u>322,000</u>

The original rate of exchange applying to fixed assets is 3s. 6d. per tael; the average rate during the period is 3s. per tael; and the rate on the day of the Balance Sheet is 2s. 6d. per tael.

Convert the Foreign Trial Balance, showing the difference on exchange. Provide depreciation on the Plant and Furniture in China at 10 per cent. per annum, through the London books. Show the Branch Account in the Head Office books and the Head Office Account in the Branch books, and prepare Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet of the Company.

CHINA TRIAL BALANCE, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

	Rate of Exchange.	Dr. Tael.	Cr. Tael.	Dr. Sterling.	Cr. Sterling.
	s. d.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.
Cash	2 6	12,000		1,500 0 0	
Stock 31st December, 1913	2 6	55,000		6,875 0 0	
Plant	3 6	30,000		5,250 0 0	
Furniture and Fittings	3 6	5,000		875 0 0	
Land and Premises	3 6	120,000		21,000 0 0	
Debtors	2 6	80,000		10,000 0 0	
Creditors	2 6		60,000		7,500 0 0
Remittance to London		20,000		2,750 0 0	
P. & L. Account:—					
Profit for year	3 0		35,000		5,250 0 0
Head Office Account:—					
Balance at 1st January, 1913			227,000		36,087 10 6
Difference in Exchange				587 10 6	
		322,000	322,000	£48,837 10 6	£48,837 10 6

HEAD OFFICE LEDGER.

Dr.

CHINA BRANCH ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1913.		Tael.	Sterling.	1913.		Tael.	Sterling.
			£ s. d.				£ s. d.
Jan. 1	To Balance	227,000	36,087 10 6	Dec. 31	By Remittances	20,000	2,750 0 0
Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account:—				„ Depreciation @ 3s. 6d.	3,500	612 10 0
	Profit for year @ 3s.	35,000	5,250 0 0		„ Exchange Account		587 10 6
					„ Balance	238,500	37,387 10 0
		262,000	£41,337 10 6			262,000	£41,337 10 6
1914.							
Jan. 1	To Balance	238,500	£37,387 10 0				

CHINA LEDGER.

Dr.

HEAD OFFICE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

1913.		Tael.	1913.		Tael.
Dec. 31	To Remittances	20,000	Jan. 1	By Balance	227,000
	„ Plant Account—Depreciation @ 10 %	3,000	Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account	35,000
	„ Furniture Account—Depreciation at 10 %	500			
	„ Balance	238,500			
		262,000			262,000
			1914.		
			Jan. 1	By Balance	238,500

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr.

FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Cr.

	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		£ s. d.
To Head Office Expenses:—			By Profit on Trading	5,250 0 0
Salaries	300 0 0			
Office Expenses	250 0 0			
Directors' Fees	500 0 0			
		1,050 0 0		
„ Depreciation		612 10 0		
„ Loss on Exchange		187 10 6		
„ Balance, being Profit carried to Balance Sheet		3,399 19 6		
		£5,250 0 0		£5,250 0 0

Dr.		BALANCE SHEET, 31st DECEMBER, 1913.		Cr.	
		£ s. d.		£ s. d.	£ s. d.
To Share Capital :—			By Land and Premises ..		21,000 0 0
Authorized—			" Plant	5,250 0 0	
50,000 Shares of £1			Less Depreciation 10 %	525 0 0	
each	£50,000 0 0				4,725 0 0
Issued—			Furniture and Fittings ..	875 0 0	
36,000 Shares of £1		36,000 0 0	Less Depreciation 10 %	87 10 0	
each, fully paid					787 10 0
„ Sundry Creditors :—			Stock		6,875 0 0
In China	7,500 0 0		Debtors		10,000 0 0
In London	100 0 0	7,600 0 0	Cash at Bank—		
„ Profit and Loss A/c :—			In China	1,500 0 0	
Balance at 1st Jan.	887 10 6		In London	3,000 0 0	4,500 0 0
Add Profit for year	3,399 19 6				
		4,287 10 0			
		£47,887 10 0			£47,887 10 0

Note to Illustration.

The China Branch will be advised of the amount of depreciation which is to be written off in order that they may make a corresponding entry in their books, thus adjusting their Account with the Head Office to the same figure as the Branch Account in the Head Office books.

Similar instructions will have to be given in all cases where entries affecting the Branch are made in the Head Office books.

It should be observed that the final sterling balance of the China Branch Account in the Head Office books does not represent the conversion of the currency balance at any of the rates given, since it is composed of various assets and liabilities converted at different rates. The sterling balance of the Branch Account must always agree with the sterling figures of the net assets at the Branch concerned.

§ 8.—Foreign Mine Accounts.

In the case of a Mine where the transactions at the Mine are small and mainly of a cash nature, and it is not found necessary to employ a competent book-keeper at the Mine, monthly cash accounts will be submitted by the manager, duly certified by him, and accompanied by vouchers. A Mine Cash Book and Ledger will be kept at the Head Office, ruled for currency, in addition to the Head Office Sterling Books, and the Cash Account entered in such cash book monthly, postings being made therefrom to the ledger, which will contain a Current Account with the Head Office on precisely similar lines to that described in § 6. Sometimes these Mine books are not kept at the Head Office, but the expenditure is analysed from the manager's monthly return, and converted at the proper rate of exchange, an entry being made in the Head Office Sterling Journal, crediting the Mine Account, and debiting the Expenditure

at Mine with the various items. This method, however, is not recommended, inasmuch as it does not constitute a clear and consecutive record of the transactions at the Mine, and necessitates frequent reference to the Mine Returns, which are in many cases indifferently rendered.

In all but the simplest cases this system will be found inadequate, and it will be necessary for a competent book-keeper to be employed at the Mine, where proper books should be kept, comprising a Cash Book, Ledger and Journal, Wages Books and other statistical records. Even where a proper system of books is kept at the Mine (and particularly where no local audit is performed), it is advisable that a duplicate set of Mine Books should be kept at the Head Office in currency, and written up regularly from the Mine Returns. These returns should be made monthly, and duly certified by the Mine manager and book-keeper. It is convenient that the paper on which they are entered should be a facsimile ruling of the books at the Mine, and folioed to correspond with the actual folios in those books on which the entries occur. The returns will be as follows :—

- (1) Copy of cash book supported by vouchers, duly numbered and filed in order.
- (2) Copy of journal, in which will be recorded all transactions other than those of a cash nature, particularly the proper allocation of expenditure during the month as between capital and revenue accounts. Full narrative should be inserted explanatory of each item.
- (3) A copy of the Mine Ledger on separate sheets numbered to correspond with the actual ledger folios, each account starting with the balance as per last month's return, and containing the transactions during the month, closing with the balance.
- (4) Monthly Trial Balance.

In addition to these monthly returns, the following should also be sent over on the occasion of each balancing period :—

- (1) Certified copy of the bank pass book, certificate of the bank balance, and reconciliation statement.
- (2) Certificate of cash in hand.

- (3) Certified schedules of stock of ore, stores of material in hand, &c.
- (4) Report on the condition of the Mine generally, with particular reference to the Development Accounts and the proportion thereof, which should be written off to revenue ; also as to the condition of the plant and machinery, and rate of depreciation necessary.

A duplicate set of Mine books will be kept at the Head Office as before described, and written up from these returns. At the end of each period the revenue balances in the Mine books will be transferred to the Head Office Account, and a corresponding entry made in the Head Office books, crediting the Mine Account and debiting Expenditure at Mine. The remaining balances in the Mine books will be converted at their proper rates, and the principle of amalgamating them with the Head Office figures will be the same as that described in dealing with Foreign Branch Accounts.

In many cases the ore sent from the Mine will be sold through agents, who will account for the same to the Head Office by way of Account Sales. In that event no record of ore sales will pass through the Mine books, but the same will be entirely dealt with by the Head Office. Where, however, the ore is realised by the Mine itself, the record thereof will appear in the Mine Accounts.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER XI.

COST ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—THE PRINCIPLE OF COST ACCOUNTS.

2.—CONTRACT COST ACCOUNTS.

- (a) The Purchase Journal.
- (b) Materials for Contracts.
- (c) Materials for Stores.
- (d) Materials returned from Contracts.
- (e) Plant used on Contracts.
- (f) Carriage of Materials.
- (g) Wages.
- (h) Establishment Charges.
 - (1) Working Expenses.
 - (2) Administration Expenses.
- (i) The Contract Ledger.
- (j) Taking Profit on Uncompleted Contracts.
- (k) The Reconciliation of the Cost Accounts with the Financial Books.

3.—OUTPUT COST ACCOUNTS.

- (a) Cost Sheets.
- (b) Production Accounts.
- (c) Working Accounts.

4.—FACTORY COST ACCOUNTS.

- (a) Departmental Cost Accounts.
- (b) Multiple Cost Accounts.
- (c) Process Cost Accounts.

5.—WORKING COST ACCOUNTS.

6.—PERCENTAGES IN TRADING ACCOUNTS.

CHAPTER XI.

COST ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—The Principle of Cost Accounts.

In practice the question of Cost Accounts is frequently one of considerable difficulty. It is only proposed here to deal with the question from a general point of view ; to set forth the basic principles upon which all systems of costing are founded. However technical the detail of the business to which it is desired to apply a system of Cost Accounts, the principle upon which such system must be formed is the same in all cases.

The object of Cost Accounts is not only to ascertain the precise cost of the work performed and profit thereon, but also the way in which that cost is made up, and the relation that each item of cost bears to previous transactions of a similar nature. The method to be adopted to arrive at this result will vary according to the nature of the business involved, but it may be convenient here to set out the general classes of Cost Accounts, and to consider these in detail afterwards.

- (1) *Contract or Terminal Cost Accounts*, where the object is to arrive at the cost of each Contract entered into, and the profit or loss thereon. This is applicable to businesses such as builders, contractors, engineers, &c.
- (2) *Output or Single Cost Accounts*, where the object is to arrive at the cost of a given output, and where there is a natural unit of cost, *e.g.* a ton of coal raised in the case of collieries, or a barrel of beer brewed in the case of breweries.
- (3) *Factory Cost Accounts*. These may be of three kinds—(1) Departmental Cost Accounts, where the factory is divided into various departments, and it is desired to find the cost of working each

department ; (2) Multiple Cost Accounts, where the object is to ascertain the cost where a number of products are manufactured, bearing little or no relation to one another ; (3) Process Cost Accounts, where the object is to cost each stage in the manufacture of a single article.

- (4) *Working Cost Accounts*, relating to such undertakings as railways, gas, water, electric light, &c.

§ 2.—Contract Cost Accounts.

The following is an outline of a system of Cost Accounts suitable for the business of a builder or contractor. There will be a Contract Ledger, in which an account will be opened for each Contract, the Contracts being numbered consecutively. The expenditure to be debited will be in respect of materials, wages, and establishment charges, and columns must be ruled in the Contract Ledger for each class of expenditure. It is obvious that if only the total cost of the materials and wages spent can be obtained, this information in itself will not be of sufficient value, and in order that the greatest amount of benefit can be derived from the Cost Accounts, it is necessary that the materials and wages columns should be sub-divided, so that the total cost of each class of material used and labour employed may be ascertained. This sub-division, however, does not affect the general principles of the system, and the extent to which it is adopted will depend on the expense that the owners of the business are prepared to incur in connection with it, since the more detail required the more expensive the operation of the system.

The expenditure under the heads of materials will be of two kinds:—

- (1) Materials purchased specially for the Contracts, and sent direct thereto ;
- (2) Materials purchased for store, and charged out to the Contracts as and when requisitioned.

(c) Materials for Store.

If it is desired to record the Store transactions in detail, it will be necessary to have a Store Ledger ruled with quantity and money columns, in which an account will be opened for each particular class of material. The advantage of this is considerable, inasmuch as it enables the stores on hand at the end of each period to be agreed with the balance of each Store Account. If there are any considerable differences these should be traced. There will always be a certain amount of difference arising owing to breakage in bulk, shrinkage in weight and so forth, which will require adjustment.

The amount of detail involved in keeping the Store Ledger in this manner is, however, very considerable, and consequently the system is not always adopted. In such an event it will be sufficient if accounts are opened in the Store Ledger equivalent to the headings of the subdivision of the Materials column in the Contract Ledger.

In either event as regards the Purchase Day Book the procedure will be the same.

The Materials for Store column will be analysed monthly, and debited in detail to the respective Store Accounts.

Materials issued from Store will only be sent out on the authority of a requisition note containing particulars of materials required, the number of the Contract to which they are to be charged, and the signature of the responsible official. These requisition notes will be sent up to the costing department, and the materials priced out at cost, and charged up to the Contracts through the Stores Issued Analysis book. The monthly totals of this Stores Analysis book will be debited, as regards materials sent to each Contract, to the Contract Account in question, and credited, as regards the Stores issued, to the respective Stores Accounts involved.

(d) Materials returned from Contracts.

A record will have to be kept of all materials returned from Contracts, and distinction made between those returned direct to Creditors and those returned to Store. The method of recording these returns will

be worked on the same principles as previously described, the Contract Accounts being credited, and the Creditors' Accounts or respective Store Accounts, as the case may be, debited.

(e) Plant used on Contracts.

A separate column should be provided in the Contract Ledger for Plant, and each Contract Account should be debited with the Plant, Loose Tools, &c., required. In the event of this Plant being specially erected, the cost of such erection should also be debited. At the conclusion of the Contract the Plant may be either sold or returned into Store. In the event of sale, the sale price will be credited to the Contract, and in the event of the Plant being returned into Store it should be returned at a proper valuation, so that the depreciation arising may fall upon the Contract in question.

A Plant Register should be kept, from which the details representing the balance on Plant Account in the Store Ledger can be ascertained. It can then be seen if the balance on the account represents a fair valuation of Plant not out on Contracts.

(f) Carriage of Materials.

Where large sums are paid for Carriage of Materials, a special column should be provided in the Contract Ledger for this item, and all Carriage that can be properly charged up to the Contract should be debited thereto.

(g) Wages.

The Wages column in the Contract Ledger may be sub-divided as required to record the most important classes of labour. In many cases it may be possible for separate wages sheets to be prepared each week in respect of each Contract, and where this can be done a considerable amount of analysis will be saved. In other cases, however, this will not be found practicable, and the whole of the wages must therefore be analysed by means of a Wages Analysis Book. In this way the amount of wages chargeable to each Contract can be ascertained and charged up thereto.

There will always be a certain number of men employed whose wages cannot be charged to any particular Contract. These items will rank as Establishment Charges, to be dealt with as hereafter described. The total of the Wages Analysis Book each week should agree precisely with the amount of wages paid.

(h) **Establishment Charges.**

The problem as to the best method of dealing with indirect expenditure in connection with Cost Accounts—generally known as On Cost—is one which has received much attention, and various solutions have been put forward. It is apparent that, in calculating the profit to be derived from a Contract, allowance must be made for all indirect expenditure. Such expenditure may be divided into two classes—Works Expenses and Administration Expenses.

(1) *Works Expenses* would include such items as the following :—

Wages that cannot be accurately charged up to any particular Contract, such as wages of the general foremen, yard wages, storekeeper's wages, &c.

Repairs to buildings, plant and machinery at Works.

Fuel and light, water, &c.

Rent, rates and taxes of Works.

Carriage not chargeable to any particular Contracts.

Depreciation.

(2) *Administration Expenses* would include such items as :—

Salaries of clerks.

Office expenses.

Office rent, rates and taxes.

Travelling expenses, and all other expenses necessary for carrying on the business.

The two principal methods by which these charges may be allocated over the various Contracts are :—

(1) By ascertaining the amount to be charged to each Contract in the ratio that the expenditure made on each Contract during the period bears to the total expenditure on the Contracts during the period.

- (2) By calculating the proportion, not on the total expenditure on Contracts, but on the total cost of labour incurred by each Contract during the period under review.

It is not proposed here to discuss the relative advantages of either system, or to refer to the other methods of apportionment that there are in use, as the matter is not of cardinal importance, and should be decided in practice purely on the merits of each particular case. It may be said, however, that a combination of the two principles above described would seem to meet the case best from a general point of view, *i.e.* dividing the Works Expenses in relation to the wages spent on each Contract during the period, and the Administration Expenses in relation to the total expenditure made on each Contract.

In many cases, particularly in respect of jobbing works, it is customary to charge an estimated percentage in respect of Establishment Charges, and this percentage is frequently based upon the figures of the previous period. It is clear that difficulties will arise in this connection owing to the fact that the Contracts are completed at irregular intervals. This, however, is a matter of detail, the treatment of which will depend on the precise circumstances of the business concerned.

Where it is not desired to divide the Establishment Charges into two sections in the manner above described, it is usual to adopt the principle of dividing the whole amount thereof in proportion to the wages paid.

Sometimes the Establishment Charges are not divided over the Contracts at all, and in these cases the Cost Accounts will only show the gross profit on each Contract.

(i) The Contract Ledger.

In the course of the above remarks the various items that go to the debit of the Contract Ledger have been dealt with, and the manner in which they are ascertained. The question of the Materials and Plant returned from Contracts has also been touched upon. In order to avoid having a large number of credit columns in the Contract Ledger, it is frequently arranged for these returns to be entered on the debit side

in red ink, and deducted in casting. The total of each column will then give the net figure of expenditure under its particular heading. Another method is to make these deductions in the Stores Issued Analysis Book before the debits are posted.

It is often undesirable that the profit or loss realised on Contracts should be known to the clerks generally, and consequently it may be convenient to utilise a Contract Summary Ledger into which the totals in respect of each Contract will be taken at regular periods. These totals will only represent the expenditure on the Contract, the ordinary Contract Ledger not containing credit items. The amounts to be placed to the credit of each Contract in the Contract Summary Ledger will ultimately be equivalent to the Contract price, together with any extras chargeable. It is inadvisable to credit the total Contract price in the first instance, as this will involve a corresponding debit to the Contractee's Personal Account, and will not correctly represent the position of affairs, as the Contractee is not a debtor for the full amount of the Contract until completion.

The usual custom in Contracts of any size is for the Contractee's Surveyor or Architect to examine the work done from time to time, and issue his certificate as to the value thereof, the Contractee being then liable to pay an instalment of the Contract price equal to the amount certified, or less a reduction of, say, 10 per cent. or 20 per cent. retained pending the completion of the Contract. Where this principle is adopted, it may be convenient to credit the Contract Account with the amount certified for, and debit the Contractee's Personal Account, the latter being credited with the cash paid, whether this be the full amount or less the deduction above-mentioned. In the same way the extras will be credited to the Contract Account, and debited to the Contractee when the invoice in respect thereof is sent out.

If this method is not adopted no credit should be passed to the Contract Account until the completion of the Contract, any sums received on account from the Contractee being in the meantime credited to his Personal Account.

On the preparation of a Balance Sheet the expenditure on all Contracts not yet completed will be brought in as an asset under the heading "Work in Progress," and all sums received in respect of such Contracts from the Contractees will be deducted from the asset figure and the net amount extended. If the Contract Accounts have been credited with the work certified for, and the Contractee's Accounts debited, these items should be eliminated from the Balance Sheet. In no case should the amounts received from the Contractees show as a liability in the Balance Sheet, neither should the Contractees show as debtors for the total Contract price less what they may have paid on account.

The following is a convenient form of Contract Ledger which can be modified as required :—

ILLUSTRATION—

CONTRACT LEDGER.

[illegible]

Note to Illustration.

The Materials and Wages Columns will be sub-divided as required. If the Materials and Plant returned are not dealt with by way of deduction as previously described, additional columns must be provided on the credit side therefor.

(j) Taking Profit on Uncompleted Contracts.

The question as to whether or not profit should be taken in respect of Contracts uncompleted at the date of the Balance Sheet is an important one. There can be no doubt that theoretically it is preferable not to take any profit until the whole Contract is completed, as in many cases, although the Contract may be near completion, some contingency might arise which would destroy the whole profit that was anticipated. In consequence of this possibility it is the practice of some businesses not to take any profit on Contracts until completion.

This practice, however, suffers from a serious disadvantage. It will frequently be found that large sums of cash are in hand representing realised profits to date on Contracts in course of completion, and yet owing to the fact that comparatively few Contracts have been completed within the financial year, the balance to the credit of the Profit and Loss Account is either very small or there may be even a debit balance. In such a case, in the event of the business being owned by a Limited Company, the question of dividends at once arises, and while it might not be possible to declare a dividend without taking profit on uncompleted Contracts, there might nevertheless be large sums of money in hand which could not be utilised in the business. This difficulty, however, can be overcome by the creation of an Equalisation of Dividends Reserve Account, which can be drawn upon to maintain the dividends in years when few Contracts fall in for completion, and can be built up correspondingly in other years when a large number of Contracts happen to fall in.

In whatever way this difficulty may be overcome, the fact remains that in order to work on the system of not taking profit until completion of the Contract, it will be necessary to maintain a larger working capital in the business than would otherwise be the case. In many instances, particularly in the case of private firms, the completion of the Contract is not awaited before profit is taken, and the question then arises—What is the best method of determining profit on uncompleted Contracts, and how much of such profits may properly be taken to the credit of Profit and Loss Account?

In considering the question as to whether profit can be taken, no hard-and-fast rule can be laid down as applicable to each and every Contract. Each Contract must be considered on its own merits, and all the circumstances surrounding it which might tend to influence the final result must be carefully considered; for instance, the possibility of a rise in raw material before the completion of the Contract, which is not covered by a protecting clause in the Contract itself. Assuming, however, that there is every reasonable ground to presume that things will take their normal course, there are two methods by means of which the estimated proportion of profit can be arrived at.

- (1) Where the Contract is nearly completed, an estimate should be made of the further expenditure which it will be necessary to incur, allowing in such estimate a reasonable proportion of profit. If this estimate be added to the total expenditure already incurred, the difference between the figure so arrived at and the amount that will be credited to the Contract on completion will represent profit to date.
- (2) Where the Contract is not sufficiently advanced to adopt the above method, it will be necessary to prepare a memorandum Profit and Loss Account of the Contract in the following manner:—On the debit side will be placed the total expenditure to date in respect of materials, wages and proportion of establishment charges, together with the value of any plant, &c., charged out to the Contract. On the credit side should be placed the total amount of the work certified for, the amount of work done but not yet certified for at cost, the value of stores and materials on hand at cost, and the present value of the plant employed on the Contract. The difference between the two sides will then represent, if a credit, the profit to date on the Contract.

No profit should be taken on any Contract which is not in a reasonable stage of advancement, and, as a general rule, it may be said that if the expenditure to date has not amounted to one-third of the total estimated expenditure, no profit should be taken. As regards the remaining Contracts, where the profit to date has been arrived at by one of the above methods, it is highly undesirable that the whole of such profit should be taken to the credit of the current Profit and Loss Account, since notwithstanding it may have been very clearly earned, at the same time contingencies may subsequently arise which may destroy the whole or a portion thereof. It is therefore advisable that only a proportion of such profit, say two-thirds, should be taken to the credit of Profit and Loss Account, the remaining one-third being available against contingencies.

A fact which has to be taken into account in dealing with this question of profit is the proportion of cash received from the Contractee

in relation to the work performed. Where no cash has been received, it is better that no profit should be taken, and where the cash received is out of proportion to the amount of work done, it may be advisable to take only profit in relation to the cash received rather than to the amount of work completed.

In the event of profit being taken, the amount thereof relative to each Contract will be debited to the Contract Account, and credited to Profit and Loss, and as a result, the amount standing in the Balance Sheet under the heading "Work in Progress" will include such profit so taken, and the wording of the Balance Sheet should disclose this fact. The amount credited to the Profit and Loss Account in respect of profit on Contracts uncompleted should be clearly shown as such.

ILLUSTRATION—

The Contract Ledger of a Company showed the following expenditure on account of Contract No. 1 at 31st December, 1913:—

	£	s.	d.
Materials	60,000	0	0
Plant	10,000	0	0
Wages	82,200	0	0
Establishment Charges	4,300	0	0
	<u>£156,500</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

The Contract was commenced in January, 1913, and the Contract price was £300,000. Cash received on account to date was £120,000, representing 80 per cent. of the work certified for, the remaining 20 per cent. being retained until completion. The value of materials on hand and work finished but not certified for was £5,000.

Prepare an account in respect of the Contract, showing the profit to date, assuming Depreciation on Plant at 10 per cent. per annum, and state the proportion of profit the Company would be justified in taking to the credit of Profit and Loss Account.

Dr.				CONTRACT No. 1, PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT.				Cr.					
				£	s.	d.					£	s.	d.
To Materials..	60,000	0	0	By Work certified for ..	..	..	..	150,000	0	0
„ Plant	10,000	0	0	„ Material on hand and work finished	..	..	..
„ Wages	82,200	0	0	„ but not certified for, at cost ..	..	..	..	5,000	0	0
„ Establishment Charges	4,300	0	0	„ Plant, less Depreciation ..	..	..	..	9,000	0	0
„ Balance, being Profit	7,500	0	0							
				£164,000	0	0					£164,000	0	0
				£	s.	d.					£	s.	d.
To Profit and Loss Account	4,000	0	0	By Balance ..	..	..	..	7,500	0	0
„ Balance forward	3,500	0	0							
				£7,500	0	0					£7,500	0	0
							By Balance ..	..	..	..	£3,500	0	0

Note to Illustration.

It is not advisable to take more than two-thirds of the profit shown in relation to the work certified for, leaving the balance to be carried forward against contingencies. The proportion in this case would amount to £5,000, but as only 80 per cent. of the work certified for has been received in cash, it is preferable to make the calculation on the basis of the cash received; consequently, 20 per cent. of the £5,000 will be further reserved, leaving £4,000 to be taken to the credit of Profit and Loss.

In the Balance Sheet the item will then show as follows:—

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Work in Progress, including proportion of estimated						
profit	160,500	0	0			
Less Cash received on account	120,000	0	0			
				40,500	0	0

(k) The Reconciliation of the Cost Accounts with the Financial Books.

In the course of the above remarks it has been assumed that the Cost Accounts have been kept throughout on double entry lines. It is highly desirable that this should be the case, as a memorandum system is not susceptible to proof, and leads to laxity and carelessness on the part of the clerks in charge of it. As, however, the Cost Accounts are usually worked by a separate department, it is not convenient for them to form part of the general double entry of the financial books as far as the detail is concerned, and consequently there should be an Adjustment Account between the cost books and the financial books. This will enable each set of books to act independently as a check upon the other.

In the financial books an Adjustment Account should be opened, through which will be passed in total all the transactions which are debited or credited in detail in the Stores Ledger or the Contract Ledger, transfers being made from the various nominal accounts concerned.

On the debit side of this account will be found the following:—

- (1) The total of the purchases, both those for Store and those delivered direct to Contracts.
- (2) The total of the wages debited to the Contracts.
- (3) The total of the Establishment Charges debited to Contracts.
- (4) Profit taken debited to Contracts.

While on the credit side will be found in total all items credited to the Contract Ledger and Stores Ledger.

The debit and credit entries as between the Stores Ledger and the Contract Ledger for materials used will not need to be recorded in this Adjustment Account. The debit balance on the Adjustment Account will then represent the net total of the balances on the Stores Ledger and the Contract Ledger taken together.

If it is desired to keep separate Adjustment Accounts for the Stores Ledger and the Contract Ledger, this of course can be easily arranged.

ILLUSTRATION—

John Boles and William Briggs, trading as Boles & Co., are Contractors. They have a Contract Ledger in which separate accounts are kept for each contract or piece of work, and these accounts are respectively debited with the cost of materials, labour and expenses, and credited, when the work is completed, with the proper contract price or charge, which is also passed through the Contracts Day Book to the debit of the customer. A Contract Ledger Account is kept in the Private Ledger, which is debited with the total amounts of materials and other items charged to Contracts, and credited with the total charges; thus the total balances of the Contract Ledger should agree with the balance of this Account. A Stores Ledger Account is kept on similar lines. Profits and losses are shared equally.

From the following Trial Balance on 30th June, 1914, write up Stores Ledger Account and Contract Ledger Account, and prepare Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet.

TRIAL BALANCE.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Stores in hand 30th June, 1913	800	0	0			
Work in Progress (balance of Cost Accounts as per Contract Ledger 30th June, 1913) ..	3,500	0	0			
Purchases (taken into Store)	6,282	6	0			
Wages (debited to Contract Accounts)	5,820	0	0			
Purchases (.. .. .)	6,778	0	0			
Sundry Payments and Expenses (ditto)	130	0	0			
Contracts and charges credited to Contract Accounts				25,250	0	0
Sales from Store				250	0	0
Salaries and Wages (not charged to Contract Accounts)	621	0	0			
Rent, Rates, Light, Water and Insurance	980	0	0			
Travelling, Commission and Advertising	2,100	0	0			
Trade and Sundry Expenses	506	0	0			
Discounts, Allowances and Bad Debts	330	0	0			
Sundry Debtors	12,063	0	0			
Machinery, Plant, Tools and Fixtures	6,450	0	0			
Sundry Creditors				5,990	0	0
Cash in hand	95	0	0			
" .. at Bankers	3,035	0	0			
Capital:—						
John Boles				10,000	0	0
William Briggs				8,000	0	0
	£49,490	0	0	£49,490	0	0

Materials taken from Store and debited to Contract Accounts amounted to £6,000.

Stores on hand 30th June, 1914, £1,008.

Work in Progress as per Schedule of Contract Accounts, £4,960.

Charge 10 per cent. depreciation on Machinery, Plant, Tools and Fixtures, and provide £600 to cover Discounts and Bad Debts.

§ 3.—Output Cost Accounts.

In businesses where there is a natural and uniform unit of production, it is necessary that the cost per unit of output should be ascertained at frequent intervals. In many cases the information as to the cost is all that is necessary, and it is not essential to show the profit on the working, since this can be readily ascertained by a comparison between the cost per unit and the selling price per unit.

In other cases, however, it is convenient to show not only the cost but also the profit. Statements are usually prepared monthly, and where they relate only to the cost per unit, are termed Cost Sheets. Where the statement shows both cost and profit, it becomes a Production or Output Account, and is equivalent to a Trading Account for the month arranged in a special form.

(a) Cost Sheets.

A Cost Sheet is a statement showing the output during a given period, and the cost of the same divided up under its various heads, with a particular column showing the percentage of each item of cost per unit of output. It may be convenient also to show the quantity of raw materials consumed, and the percentage of raw materials consumed per unit of output.

The advantages derived from the preparation of these sheets are considerable. The exact cost can be ascertained, and by a comparison of the percentage column with that of the previous Cost Sheets, the fall or rise in cost can be located, and the reason of it discovered. If it is due to errors, these can be rectified; if to waste or mismanagement, proper steps can be taken to prevent any recurrence of the same. Tenders can be more accurately made, and the selling price more closely adjusted.

The Cost Sheet is a memorandum statement, and has no direct relation to the double entry. The quantities will be derived from the various stock books, accurate records being kept of the quantities of materials consumed each month, and of the output. The money values will be taken from the financial books.

As regards Establishment Charges, it is a matter of opinion whether these should be included or not; if included, whether they should be shown in detail or in total. It is clear that the selling and distributing expenses do not bear any direct relation to the output of a given period, while at the same time these expenses must be borne in mind in fixing the selling price. It is therefore suggested that these expenses should be provided for by way of a general percentage, the rate of which must be carefully adjusted from time to time, in accordance with the actual facts as disclosed by the accounts. On the other hand, manufacturing and works expenses bear a direct relation to the output of each period, and should be capable of precise calculation.

The extent to which detail is carried in subdividing the various items of cost, particularly in connection with the wages, depends entirely upon the nature of the business, and the amount of information which it is desired the Cost Sheet shall disclose.

The principle involved is the same in all cases, whether there be a larger or smaller number of items concerned.

The following is a simple form of Cost Sheet for a Colliery:—

ILLUSTRATION—

COLLIERY.

COST SHEET for Month of February, 1914.

SALEABLE TONS RAISED, 10,000.						Cost per saleable ton raised.	Amount.	
						s. d.	£	s. d.
I.—WAGES:—								
	Underground	..	..	..	..	3 10.95	1,956	5 0
	Surface	..	..	..	..	5.20	216	13 4
II.—WORKING EXPENSES:—								
	Stores	..	..	..	..	.85	35	8 4
	Repairs and Renewals	..	..	..	..	1.70	70	16 8
	Stable Account	..	..	..	..	1.10	45	16 8
	Timber, &c.	..	..	..	..	2.20	91	13 4
	Surface Rents, Rates and Insurance	..	..	..	..	1.75	72	18 4
	Royalties	..	..	..	..	4.22	175	16 8
	Depreciation	..	..	..	..	2.30	95	16 8
III.—ADMINISTRATION EXPENSES:—								
	General Establishment Charges	..	..	..	..	3.15	131	5 0
TOTAL COST ..						5 9.42	£2,392	10 0

NOTE.—In practice it would be advisable to provide additional columns for the purpose of comparison with previous periods.

The following is a simple form of Cost Sheet for an Iron and Steel Works :—

ILLUSTRATION —

IRON AND STEEL WORKS.

COST SHEET for Month of January, 1914.

OUTPUT, 1,000 TONS.						Cost per ton of Output.	Amount.		
						£ s. d.	£	s.	d.
I.—MATERIALS CONSUMED :—									
	Puddled Bars..	..	..	..	..	1 12 7'30	1,630	8	4
	Scrap Iron ..	..	..	..	..	1 13 1'20	1,655	0	0
	Coal and Coke ..	..	..	..	..	6 7'60	331	13	4
II.—WORKING EXPENSES :—									
	Wages ..	..	..	..	..	13 8'40	685	0	0
	Stores ..	..	..	..	..	1 6'15	75	12	6
	Sand, &c. ..	..	..	..	..	11'50	47	18	4
	Repairs and Renewals ..	..	..	..	..	2 1'10	104	11	8
	Rent, Rates and Taxes ..	..	..	..	..	1 7'30	80	8	4
	Gas and Water ..	..	..	..	..	5'05	21	0	10
	Depreciation ..	..	..	..	..	1 9'35	88	19	2
III.—ADMINISTRATION EXPENSES :—									
	General Establishment Charges ..	..	..	..	..	2 7'10	129	11	8
TOTAL COST ..						£4 17 0'05	£4,850	4	2

NOTE.—In practice it would be advisable to provide additional columns for the purpose of comparison with previous periods, and also for quantities of materials consumed.

(b) Production Accounts.

It may be desirable in many cases to prepare accounts monthly, or at other intervals, to show not only the actual cost of the output but the profit on trading.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following are the balances of the Impersonal Ledger of a Colliery, relating to Revenue at the end of the year :—

	£	s.	d.
Wages paid for Coal Production ..	29,000	0	0
Coals for Colliery Consumption ..	2,500	0	0
Timber used in Coal Production ..	3,200	0	0
Ropes ditto ..	600	0	0
Sundry Stores ditto ..	3,800	0	0
Royalties paid ..	2,190	0	0
Rates, Taxes and General Charges chargeable to Coal Production Account ..	3,500	0	0
Salaries paid and chargeabl. to Coal Production Account ..	1,800	0	0
Coal sold (including Colliery consumption), 112,000 tons ..	44,200	0	0
Wages paid for Coke-making ..	2,600	0	0
Stores used ditto ..	1,850	0	0
Salaries paid and chargeable to Coke Production Account ..	400	0	0
Coke sold, 43,500 tons ..	27,000	0	0

The Stock of Coal at the beginning of the year amounted to 7,000 tons, valued at 5s. per ton, and at the end of the year 15,000 tons, valued at a similar rate.

The Stock of Coke at the beginning of the year amounted to 2,000 tons, valued at 10s. per ton, and at the end of the period 500 tons, valued at a similar rate.

The total production of the Colliery was 185,000 tons of Coal and 42,000 tons of Coke ; 65,000 tons of Coals were used for Coke-making.

Prepare separate Production Accounts for the Coal and Coke, showing the cost of each item of expense per ton of Coal and Coke respectively, taking the Coals used for Coke-making at cost price, working to two places of decimals only.

Dr.		COAL PRODUCTION ACCOUNT.						Cr.	
		Cost per ton pro- duced.	Details.		Amount.			Details.	Amount.
		s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
To Stock, 7,000 tons @ 5s. per ton					1,750	0 0	By Sales, 112,000 tons ..	44,200	0 0
,, Wages		3 1 64	29,000	0 0			,, Sales to Coke Production Account—		
,, Coals (Colliery consump- tion)		3 24	2,500	0 0			65,000 tons @ cost,		
,, Timber		4 15	3,200	0 0			5s. 0 32	16,386	13 4
,, Ropes		77	600	0 0					
,, Stores		4 93	3,800	0 0			,, Stock 15,000 tons @ 5s. per Ton		
,, Royalties		2 72	2,100	0 0					
,, Rates, Taxes and General Charges		4 54	3,500	0 0					
,, Salaries		2 33	1,800	0 0					
,, 185,000 tons cost £46,500 =		5 0 32			46,500	0 0			
,, Profit					16,036	13 4			
					£64,286	13 4			
									£64,286 13 4

Dr.		COKE PRODUCTION ACCOUNT.						Cr.	
		Cost per ton pro- duced.	Details.		Amount.			Amount.	
		s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
To Stock, 2 000 tons @ 10s. per ton					1,000	0 0	By Sales, 43,500 tons	27,000	0 0
,, Purchases of Coal— 65,000 tons @ 5s. 0 32d. per ton		7 9 35	16,336	13 4			,, Stock, 500 tons @ 10s. per ton	250	0 0
,, Wages		1 2 86	2,600	0 0					
,, Stores		10 57	1,850	0 0					
,, Salaries		2 29	400	0 0					
,, 42,000 tons cost £21,186 13s. 4d. =		10 1 07			21,186	13 4			
,, Profit					5,063	6 8			
					£27,250	0 0			
									£27,250 0 0

Sometimes it is found useful to combine a Cost Sheet and Production Account into one statement, so varied that the most useful information may be easily obtained. Where several products are produced, it may be desirable to ascertain, for instance, the quantity percentages which the same bear to the principal raw material used in the manufacture.

ILLUSTRATION—

From the following particulars make out a monthly cost sheet of the Coke and Bye-product Company :—

						April, 1914.
Coal used	..	..	..	..	..	6,900 tons.
Coke made	..	..	..	..	..	4,700 „
Tar made	..	..	..	..	..	325 „
Sulphate of Ammonia made	..	..	..	..	..	90 „
Sulphuric Acid used	..	..	..	..	..	75 „
Benzole made	..	..	..	..	..	12,300 galls.
Creosote Oil used	..	..	..	..	..	7 tons.
Wages	..	..	..	..	..	£550
Stores, &c.	..	..	..	..	..	55

The prices of the above materials and products were :—

Coal, 8s. per ton; Coke, 14s. 6d. per ton; Tar, 13s. 3d. per ton; Sulphate, £10 15s. per ton; Sulphuric Acid, £2 5s. per ton; Benzole, 3½d. per gallon; Creosote Oil, 3¼d. per gallon (1 ton=220 gallons).

Show the percentage (to two places of decimals) of Coke made, of Tar made, and of Sulphate of Ammonia made, to the weight of coal used.

THE COKE AND BYE-PRODUCT COMPANY.

Dr.

COST SHEET, APRIL, 1914.

Cr.

MATERIALS, &c.				PRODUCTS.				
Particulars.	Price.	Quantity.	Amount.	Particulars.	Price.	Quantity.	Percentage to weight of coal used.	Amount.
	Per Ton. £ s. d.	Tons.	£ s. d.		Per Ton. £ s. d.	Tons.		£ s. d.
Coal	8 0	6,900	2,760 0 0	Coke	14 6	4,700	68·12	3,407 10 0
Sulphuric Acid ..	2 5 0	75	168 15 0	Tar	13 3	325	4·71	215 6 3
	Per Gal.			Sulphate of Ammonia ..	10 15 0	90	1·30	967 10 0
Creosote Oil ..	3½	7	20 17 1		Per Gal.	Gallons.		
Wages			550 0 0	Benzole	3½	12,300		192 3 9
Stores			55 0 0					
Total Cost			3,554 12 1					
Profit			1,227 17 11					
			£4,782 10 0					£4,782 10 0

(c) Working Accounts.

Where complete Cost Accounts are not kept, or where only Cost Sheets are prepared, it is desirable to extend the division of the Profit and Loss Account by the Compilation of a Working Account or Manufacturing Account.

The Working Account is the first part of the Profit and Loss Account. It will be charged with all raw materials and partly manufactured stocks in hand at the commencement of the period, purchases of Raw Materials, Wages, and other items of prime cost; and will be credited with the Raw Materials and partly manufactured Stocks in hand at the end of the period. The difference between the two sides will then represent the net cost of the output for the period, and will be credited to the Working Account thus closing it off, and debited to the Trading Account.

The Trading Account will be debited with the opening stock of the manufactured Article, and with the cost of production of Stock manufactured during the period as shown by the Working Account; and will be credited with Sales, and with the manufactured Stock on hand at the date of the Account. The difference on the Trading Account will then show the Gross Profit, and the remaining portions of the Profit and Loss Account will be compiled in the usual manner.

Where the product manufactured is capable of reduction to a definite unit, *e.g.*, per ton of iron made, the cost per ton over the period can be exactly calculated by dividing the known output into the cost shown by the Working Account.

ILLUSTRATION—

NORTHERN IRON COMPANY, LIMITED.

The following are the balances on the books of the Northern Iron Company, Limited, after all depreciations have been adjusted. The authorized Capital of the Company is £175,000, in £10 Ordinary Shares.

TRIAL BALANCE, 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Freehold Land and Buildings	30,000	0	0			
Furnaces	30,000	0	0			
Plant and Machinery	16,000	0	0			
Share Capital issued and fully paid				100,000	0	0
Reserve				5,000	0	0
Reserve for Bad Debts				400	0	0
Sales				87,000	0	0
Wages (Furnaces)	10,000	0	0			
Wages (General)	1,000	0	0			
Salaries	550	0	0			
Carried forward	£87,550	0	0	£192,400	0	0

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Brought forward	87,550	0	0	192,400	0	0
Limestone Stock, 1st January, 1913	205	0	0			
Coal and Coke Stock ditto ditto	1,650	0	0			
Iron Ore Stock ditto ditto	1,000	0	0			
Pig Iron Stock ditto ditto	28,000	0	0			
Limestone Purchases	3,810	0	0			
Coal and Coke Purchases	25,217	0	0			
Iron Ore Purchases	15,110	0	0			
Sundry Creditors				6,120	0	0
Profit and Loss Account balance				3,271	0	0
Sundry Debtors	12,145	0	0			
Rates and Taxes	1,120	0	0			
Repairs, Renewals and Depreciation (Furnaces)	3,000	0	0			
Repairs and Renewals (General)	1,325	0	0			
Travelling	450	0	0			
Insurance	390	0	0			
General Expenses	1,471	0	0			
Bad Debts	205	0	0			
Carriage Inwards	1,843	0	0			
„ Outwards	2,300	0	0			
Depreciation (General)	2,412	0	0			
Bank	12,588	0	0			
	<u>£201,791</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>£201,791</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

The Stocks on hand at 31st December, 1913, were certified as follows:—

	£	s.	d.
Pig Iron	17,162	0	0
Limestone	91	0	0
Coal and Coke	1,230	0	0
Iron Ore	1,315	0	0

Carry forward a Reserve of 5 per cent. for Bad and Doubtful Debts.

Prepare Working Account showing cost of pig iron produced during the year, and Trading and Profit and Loss Account, and Balance Sheet.

NORTHERN IRON COMPANY, LIMITED.

Dr.		£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	Cr.
To Authorized Capital—					By Freehold Land and				
17,500 Shares of £10 each	£175,000	0	0		Buildings			30,000	0 0
„ Issued Capital—					„ Furnaces			30,000	0 0
10,000 Shares of £10 each fully paid..	100,000	0	0		„ Plant and Machinery			16,000	0 0
„ Sundry Creditors	6,120	0	0		„ Stock—				
„ Reserve	5,000	0	0		Raw Materials	12,145	0	0	
„ Profit and Loss Account	8,803	15	0		Pig Iron	17,162	0	0	
								19,798	0 0
					„ Sundry Debtors	12,145	0	0	
					Less Reserve	607	5	0	
					„ Cash at Bank			11,537	15 0
								12,588	0 0
								<u>£119,923</u>	<u>15 0</u>
								<u>£119,923</u>	<u>15 0</u>

WORKING ACCOUNT

Dr.

FOR YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Opening Stocks—							By Cost of Pig Iron						
Limestone	205	0	0				Manufactured				59,199	0	0
Coal and Coke ..	1,650	0	0				Closing Stocks—						
Iron Ore	1,000	0	0				Limestone	91	0	0			
				2,855	0	0	Coal and Coke ..	1,230	0	0			
Purchases—							Iron Ore	1,315	0	0	2,636	0	0
Limestone	3,810	0	0										
Coal and Coke ..	25,217	0	0										
Iron Ore	15,110	0	0										
				44,137	0	0							
Wages				10,000	0	0							
Carriage Inwards ..				1,843	0	0							
Repairs, Renewals and Depreciation ..				3,000	0	0							
				£61,835	0	0					£61,835	0	0

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Dr.

FOR YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Opening Stock of Pig Iron	28,000	0	0	By Sales	87,000	0	0
Working Account, Cost of Pig Iron				Closing Stock of Pig Iron	17,162	0	0
Manufactured	59,199	0	0		£104,162	0	0
Gross Profit	16,963	0	0				
	£104,162	0	0				
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Wages	1,000	0	0	By Gross Profit	16,963	0	0
Salaries	550	0	0				
Rates and Taxes	1,120	0	0				
Repairs and Renewals	1,325	0	0				
Travelling	450	0	0				
Insurance	390	0	0				
General Expenses	1,471	0	0				
Bad Debts	412	5	0				
Carriage Outwards	2,300	0	0				
Depreciation	2,412	0	0				
Net Profit	5,532	15	0				
	£16,963	0	0		£16,963	0	0
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Balance	8,803	15	0	By Balance from last account	3,271	0	0
	£8,803	15	0	Net Profit	5,532	15	0
					£8,803	15	0
				By Balance	£8,803	15	0

§ 4.—Factory Cost Accounts.

(a) Departmental Cost Accounts.

In a factory where there are various departments, each manufacturing articles of a kindred nature, and it is desired to ascertain the result of each department rather than the precise cost of each article produced, a system of accounts similar in all respects to that described under the section dealing with Departmental Accounts in Chapter X. can be utilised,

and the principles already laid down in connection with Contract Cost Accounts applied to it. All the materials and wages relative to each department will be allocated thereto, and the Establishment Charges will be apportioned on some proper basis, either in relation to the turnover or the labour, or in some instances the floor space occupied.

(b) Multiple Cost Accounts.

Where a large number of different articles are manufactured, and it is desired to ascertain the precise cost of each article, the system of Cost Accounts that will be required must necessarily be technical and elaborate, and it is beyond the scope of the present work to discuss such a system in detail. There are various methods in vogue, but the one known as the "Unit System" may be mentioned. This involves the creation of a standard unit of output, into the terms of which all articles manufactured are converted, thus affording a fixed basis of comparison for all items of cost, such as materials, wages, and Establishment Charges.

(c) Process Cost Accounts.

The system to be applied where it is desired to cost each stage in the manufacture of a single article is also a very technical one, and will vary according to the requirements of each particular business. It is only possible here to state that each process must be regarded in the light of a department, and the materials, wages, and establishment charges apportioned accordingly. It is important to observe that the finished material of the first stage will become the raw material of the second stage, and so on. If the finished material of the first stage is charged up to the second stage at cost, then each Process Account will simply show the bare cost, and will disclose neither profit nor loss. It is frequently found desirable, however, to fix a selling price as between one process and another, in order to enable the manager of each process to show as good results as he can, as he may receive a commission based on such results. When this is done, care must be exercised to see that the stocks remaining on account of each process at the end of any balancing period are adjusted back to their original cost, so that no profit shall be taken in respect of stock on hand at the date of the Balance Sheet, whether wholly or partially manufactured.

§ 5.—Working Cost Accounts.

This class of Cost Accounts relates to those businesses where it is desired to ascertain the cost of working rather than the cost of manufacture, and the nature of the account will vary with each particular kind of business. The principal point to observe is that the unit of cost must be carefully selected to afford a proper basis of comparison for the various items of expenditure. Sometimes two units are utilised, in order that the deficiencies arising on one basis may be corrected under another; for instance, in the case of railways, per train mile run and per ton carried; in gas works, per ton of coal carbonised and per thousand cubic feet of gas sold; in electric tramways, per kw. hour and per car mile.

The following is a form applicable to Electric Tramway undertakings recommended by the Departmental Committee on Local Authorities' Accounts, 1907.

ILLUSTRATION—

ABSTRACT OF POWER EXPENSES.

	Average per Kw. Hour.	Average per Car Mile.	£	s	d.
Salaries and Wages					
Fuel					
Water.. .. .					
Oil and Waste					
Miscellaneous Supplies					
Repairs to Steam Plant					
„ Electrical Plant					
„ Ducts, Feeder Cables, &c.					
„ Power and Sub-Station Buildings					
Total to Revenue Account..					
Proportion of Rents, Rates and Taxes					
„ Insurance Premiums					
„ General Management					
Amount laid aside to meet Depreciation and Renewals					
Interest on Capital £_____at £_____%					
Sinking Fund					

§ 6.—Percentages in Trading Accounts.

The utilisation of percentages in connection with Cost Accounts has been described in this Chapter, and it may be convenient here to point out how this principle can be applied to trading businesses with material advantages.

The comparison of charges one year with another though very valuable must be considered with caution, since with a fluctuating turnover the relative value of the expenditure as compared with previous years cannot be determined by mere inspection. By the use of percentages, however, the percentage which each item bears to the turnover can be compared with the percentage that the corresponding item bears to the turnover of previous periods and by this means the true relative value thereon can be more readily and correctly appreciated.

The unit basis in such cases is usually £100 of Sales, and if the ratio that each principal item of expenditure bears to £100 of sales is calculated, a series of percentages will be obtained which can be compared with those of previous periods, thus enabling any rise or fall to be located and inquired into.

The percentage of gross profits on turnover, in the case of a manufacturing or trading business, is a very important figure to ascertain, not only for the purpose of fixing the selling price or making contracts, but also as a check upon the stock. If the percentage of gross profit rises as compared with previous periods, and this is not due to a reduction in the cost of materials or labour, or an increase in selling price, it is probable that the stock is erroneous, either having been taken at too high a price, or items having been included which have not been brought into account in the Purchases.

It is apparent that the percentage of Gross Profit to turnover represents the difference between the percentage of Materials, Wages, &c.,

to turnover, and the unit basis of 100. If these percentages are shown upon the accounts, it is convenient to adjust the opening and closing Stocks into the Materials Account in the Impersonal Ledger, showing only in the Trading Account the net amount of Materials consumed, as in this way the precise percentage of Materials consumed per unit of sales can be arrived at. If this is not done, the opening and closing stocks must be adjusted with the Materials for the purpose of calculation.

Other percentages of importance are those in respect of Manufacturing Wages, Travellers' Commission and Expenses, Trade Expenses, Bad Debts, &c.

Where the number of Impersonal Accounts is very numerous, it is usual to group the items into classes, and calculate the percentage that the total of each class bears to the unit of sales. Wherever possible, however, it is desirable to show the percentage in respect of each item of expenditure.

Where this system is adopted, the Trading Account should be provided with columns to show these percentages, placed against the money columns, and, for the purpose of comparison, both money and percentage columns should be provided, to contain the figures for the corresponding period in the previous year.

Although as indicated the usual method is to calculate the percentages on the turnover it can be made on other bases, *e.g.*, on the prime cost, on the gross profit, &c. An alternative method in the case of a Manufacturing business is to calculate the percentage on the Sales adjusted by the difference in Manufactured Stocks, particularly where these fluctuate to any extent; but for facility and convenience there is no doubt that to calculate on the turnover is the most generally useful method and provides very considerable and reliable information.

ILLUSTRATION-

Dr.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

Cr.

FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Year 1912.	Per cent. on Sales.		Per cent. on Sales.	Year 1913.	Year 1912.	Per cent. on Sales.		Per cent. on Sales.	Year 1913.
£ s. d.				£ s. d.	£ s. d.				£ s. d.
52,130 0 0	52·13	To Materials ..	52·96	63,552 0 0	100,000 0 0	100·00	By Sales ..	100·00	120,000 0 0
11,840 0 0	11·84	„ Wages ..	11·61	13,932 0 0					
36,030 0 0	36·03	„ Balance, being Gross Profit	35·43	42,516 0 0					
£100,000 0 0	100·00		100·00	£120,000 0 0	£100,000 0 0	100·00		100·00	£120,000 0 0
9,900 0 0	9·90	To Travellers' Commission and Expenses	9·30	11,160 0 0					
3,800 0 0	3·80	„ Salaries ..	3·42	4,104 0 0	36,030 0 0	36·03	By Gross Profit	35·43	42,516 0 0
3,050 0 0	3·05	„ Trade Expenses ..	3·10	3,720 0 0					
2,590 0 0	2·59	„ Repairs and Renewals ..	2·43	2,916 0 0					
1,600 0 0	1·60	„ Advertising ..	1·75	2,100 0 0					
1,370 0 0	1·87	„ Rent, Rates and Taxes ..	1·55	1,860 0 0					
1,460 0 0	1·46	„ Bad Debts ..	1·04	1,248 0 0					
1,100 0 0	1·10	„ Discount ..	1·12	1,344 0 0					
2,150 0 0	2·15	„ Depreciation ..	1·96	2,852 0 0					
8,510 0 0	8·51	„ Net Profit ..	9·76	11,712 0 0					
£36,030 0 0	36·03		35·43	£42,516 0 0	£36,030 0 0	36·03		35·43	£42,516 0 0

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER XII.

THE DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM.

- § 1.—DEFINITION OF THE DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM.
- 2.—TREATMENT OF CAPITAL LOSSES.
- 3.—RENEWAL AND DEPRECIATION FUNDS.
- 4.—CONVERSION OF CAPITAL.
- 5.—THE STATUTORY FORMS OF RAILWAY COMPANIES' ACCOUNTS.
- 6.—THE STATUTORY FORMS OF GAS COMPANIES' ACCOUNTS.
- 7.—THE STATUTORY FORMS OF ELECTRIC LIGHT COMPANIES' ACCOUNTS.

CHAPTER XII.

THE DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM.

§ 1.—Definition of the Double Account System.

The Double Account System is a system of account used by Companies formed generally under special Act of Parliament to construct and work undertakings of a public nature, involving heavy permanent capital expenditure. The object of the system is to show what capital has been raised for the purpose of the undertaking, and what capital has been expended upon the undertaking, rather than to show the present value of the assets at any given date, which latter is the object of the Single Account System.

In order to do this clearly the Balance Sheet is in effect divided up into two parts, the first being called the Capital Account, and showing upon the credit side the capital receipts to date, and upon the debit side the expenditure to date, the balance or totals of each side being carried to the Balance Sheet proper, which contains in addition the floating assets and liabilities, revenue balances, reserves, &c.

Provision for depreciation is not made in the usual way, the principle being to charge up to revenue all repairs, renewals and replacements as and when they are made. In many cases, however, Depreciation and Renewal Funds are raised in order to avoid the necessity of charging the whole cost of heavy renewals to Revenue in any one period.

The phrase "Double Account" must not be confused with the phrase "Double Entry." Double entry is applied to the Double Account System in the same way as to the Single Account System, and Ledger Accounts are kept of each class of Capital expenditure and Capital receipts. The Capital Account itself is not a Ledger Account, but is prepared from the Capital balances standing in the books. For this

purpose it is convenient to utilise a separate Capital Ledger containing only those items which go to make up the Capital Account. Thus it will be seen that the outstanding features in the Double Account System only become apparent in the preparation of the final accounts, and do not affect the actual book-keeping.

It should also be noted that the Double Account System is not primarily concerned with the distinction between Capital and Revenue, but rather with the illustration of the manner in which the Capital Receipts raised for the purpose of the undertaking have been applied. Every system of accounts worthy of the name must necessarily distinguish between Capital and Revenue Expenditure.

§ 2.—Treatment of Capital Losses.

Under the strict theory of the Double Account System all Capital Expenditure is shown in the Capital Account, whether or not it continues to be represented by assets. Losses on Capital Account, therefore, occasioned by the abandonment of assets which can be no longer profitably utilised, or by the depreciation of assets which are not required to be renewed, are not provided for. In some cases this may be unsound from a financial point of view, and although no provision is made for such loss in the statutory forms of account, it is desirable that the same should be ultimately provided for out of revenue.

A good method of doing this is to charge the loss to the Reserve Account (if any), the amount being credited to the Asset Account.

The amount so written off will be shown as a deduction in the Capital Account against the item to which it relates.

§ 3.—Renewal and Depreciation Funds.

It has already been said that depreciation of assets requiring renewal is not provided for in the usual manner by debiting revenue and crediting the asset account, but that all repairs, renewals and replacements are charged to revenue as and when they arise. This rule, however, is subject to variation in practice.

It will be apparent that if no provision were made for large renewals and replacements until they actually occurred, the revenue of that period would be burdened with a charge out of all proportion thereto, which in many cases might have the effect of altogether preventing the payment of a dividend in respect of that period.

During the early years of an undertaking working under this system, it is clear that the renewals and replacements in respect of the principal assets, such as Rolling Stock, Plant, &c., will be comparatively light, and unless provision is made for future renewals, the profit to the credit of revenue account will appear to be considerably larger than is actually the case, and will admit of dividends being paid which the Company would not have been able to pay had proper provision for renewals been made. In actual cases where this policy has been pursued, dividends on the Ordinary stocks have been largely reduced, and in some cases altogether suspended, as soon as those heavy replacements became necessary, and had to be met out of current revenue.

It is unfortunate that there is no statutory provision making it compulsory to provide for future renewals; but at the same time, there is nothing to prevent companies working under the Double Account System from forming proper Renewal Funds during the early years of the undertaking for the future replacement of their assets, and this should certainly be done.

After a certain period, if the undertaking is sufficiently large, the renewals will average from year to year, and further additions to the Renewal Fund may cease to be necessary.

Provision is made in the case of Gas and Electric Light Companies for the formation of Depreciation Funds in respect of leasehold works, and in the case of Electric Light Companies in respect of buildings, plant and machinery also. These funds should be represented by specific investments, and they are created by debiting revenue each year and crediting the Fund Account. When renewals take place the same will be charged to the Depreciation Fund Account.

In many instances, replacements take place which involve an extension of the original asset, and the question then arises as to what

proportion of the replacement can be charged to capital as representing the value of the extension, and what proportion should be charged to revenue. The method recommended in such cases is as follows:—The present cost of replacing the asset as it stands should be estimated, and such amount should be charged to revenue, whether or not it is more than the original cost of the asset. The balance of the expenditure can be charged to Capital as representing the cost of extension. Any amount received in respect of the break-up value of the asset replaced should be credited to revenue against the cost of replacement.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Railway Station originally costing £60,000 is replaced by a new and enlarged Station costing £140,000, £6,000 being realised from the sale of old materials. The estimated cost of replacing the old Station as it stood was £75,000. How should the £140,000 be apportioned as between Capital and Revenue?

£75,000, the estimated cost of replacement of the Station as it stands, should be charged to Revenue, as against which can be set the £6,000 realised from the sale of old materials, leaving a net charge of £69,000. £65,000 will be debited to Capital as representing the cost of extension, making the total debit to Capital in respect of the Station £125,000.

Note to Illustration.

The above method is that adopted by the leading Railway Companies in this country, but it is contended by some authorities that it is only necessary to charge the original cost of the asset to Revenue, any expenditure on replacement in excess thereof being charged to Capital in addition to the cost of extension. It cannot be said that such a course is incorrect, although it has the effect of charging expenditure to Capital, which will not increase the earning capacity of the concern. The treatment of such cases in practice will largely depend on the financial position of the Company.

§ 4.—Conversion of Capital.

Many Companies have found it desirable to split their Ordinary stock into Preferred and Deferred Ordinary stock. This may be done in order to make the stock more marketable, and to enable the holders to be more certain of receiving a regular rate of dividend on, at any rate, a portion of their investment. As a result, the portion received in Preferred Converted stock represents the investment part of the holding, whereas the portion received in Deferred Converted stock represents the speculative part of the holding, and shareholders who do not desire to hold the latter can sell.

In the case of Railway Companies, this conversion is usually carried out under the general provisions of § 13 of the Regulation of Railways Act, 1868, subject to any variation in the Special Act of the Railway Company under which most conversions are effected.

The section referred to above is as follows :—

Any Company which in the year immediately preceding has paid a dividend on their Ordinary stock of not less than £3 per cent. per annum may, pursuant to the resolution of an extraordinary general meeting, divide their paid-up Ordinary stock into two classes, to be and to be called, the one Preferred Ordinary stock, and the other Deferred Ordinary stock, and issue the same subject and according to the following provisions, and with the following consequences (that is to say) :—

Preferred and Deferred Ordinary stock shall be issued only in substitution for equal amounts of paid-up Ordinary stock, and by way of division of portions of Ordinary stock into two equal parts.

There are further sub-sections, but the detail of these is usually varied by powers taken under the Special Act.

It will be seen that for every £100 of Ordinary stock an equal amount must be issued of Preferred and Deferred Converted stock, and, as a rule, £100 of each stock is issued for each original £100 of Ordinary stock. As a result, for each nominal amount of £100 there is now a nominal amount of £200, so that the conversion is equivalent to the issue of new stock at a discount of 50 per cent.

There are two methods of recording this conversion in the accounts. The first is to regard the Capital Account as a cash account simply, and not to disturb the amount standing to the credit of that account, but to show the nominal additions arising from the conversion in the statement of stock and share capital created, only the cash received in respect of the stock issued being carried to the Capital Account.

The second method is to show the nominal addition to capital on the credit side of the Capital Account as such, and to insert a corresponding item on the debit side as “cost of conversion.”

The former method, however, is preferable, as it enables the Capital Account to be kept on a purely cash basis, thus conforming to the original idea underlying it.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Railway Company converts £1,000,000 Ordinary stock issued at a discount of 10 per cent. into equal portions of Preferred Converted Ordinary stock and Deferred Converted Ordinary stock, issuing £100 of each class for each £100 of original stock.

Show how this transaction should appear in the printed accounts.

STATEMENT OF STOCK AND SHARE CAPITAL CREATED, SHOWING THE PROPORTION RECEIVED.

Description.	Amount Created.	Amount Received.	Nominal Additions.	Discount.
Preferred Converted Ordinary Stock	£1,000,000	} £900,000	£1,000,000	£100,000
Deferred Converted Ordinary Stock	£1,000,000			

The Total of the "Amount Received" Column, £900,000, will alone appear to the credit of the Receipts and Expenditure on Capital Account, the nominal additions and discount not appearing therein.

§ 5.—The Statutory Forms of Railway Companies' Accounts.

The form of Accounts for Railways was originally prescribed by the Regulation of Railways Act, 1868, but in place of these new forms have been provided by the Railway Companies (Accounts and Returns) Act, 1911. These forms are as follows:—

- Part 1. No. 1. (a) Nominal Capital authorized and created by the Company.
- „ „ 1. (b) Nominal Capital authorized and created by the Company jointly with some other Company.
- „ „ 1. (c) Nominal Capital authorized and created by some other Company on which the Company either jointly or separately guarantees fixed dividends.
- „ „ 2. Share Capital and Stock created as per Statement No. 1 (a) showing the proportion issued.
- „ „ 3. Capital raised by Loans and Debenture Stock.
- „ „ 4. Receipts and Expenditure on Capital Account.
- „ „ 4. (a) Subscriptions to other Companies.
- „ „ 5. Details of Capital Expenditure.
- „ „ 6. Estimate of further expenditure on Capital Account.
- „ „ 7. Capital powers and other assets available to meet further expenditure on Capital Account.
- „ „ 8. Revenue Receipts and Expenditure of the whole undertaking.

- Part 1. No. 9. Proposed appropriation of net income.
- „ „ 9. (a) Statement of Interim Dividends paid.
- „ „ 10. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of Railway working (supported by Abstracts A, B (1, 2, 3), C, D, E, F, G, H, J, giving details of the principal headings of Income and Expenditure.
- „ „ 11. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of Motor Omnibuses and other passenger vehicles not running on the railway.
- „ „ 12. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of Steamboats.
- „ „ 13. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of Canals.
- „ „ 14. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of Docks, Harbours and Wharves.
- „ „ 15. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of Hotels and all Refreshment Rooms and Cars where catering is carried on by the Company.
- „ „ 16. Receipts and Expenditure in respect of other separate businesses carried on by the Company.
- „ „ 17. Electric Power and Light Accounts.
- „ „ 18. General Balance Sheet.

Part 2 consists of Statistical Abstracts, and is followed by certificates of the responsible officers as to the upkeep of the whole of the Company's property.

The more important of these forms only are given.

No. 2.—SHARE CAPITAL AND STOCK CREATED, AS PER STATEMENT No. 1 (a),
SHOWING THE PROPORTION ISSUED.

Description.	Amount. created.	Amount issued.	Nominal additions to or deductions from Capital.	Amount on which Dividend is payable	Amount which does not rank for Dividend until a future date.	Calls in arrear.	Amount uncalled.	Amount unissued.
	£	£	£	£	£	£	£	£
[Each class of shares and stock to be stated in order of date of creation, with the preferential or fixed dividends, if any, to which it is entitled, and any other conditions attached to it.]								
Total								

NOTE.—A column to be provided where necessary between "Amount Created" and "Amount Issued" to show "Additional Stock Issued to provide Authorized Money."

Dr. No. 4.—RECEIPTS AND EXPENDITURE ON CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Cr.

To Expenditure.	Amount expended to—	Amount expended during Year, as per No. 5.	Total.	By Receipts.	Amount received to—	Amount received during Year.	Total.
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
Lines open for Traffic ..				Shares and Stocks (No. 2) ..			
Lines not open for Traffic :—							
New Lines				Loans (No. 3)			
Widening of existing Lines							
Lines leased				Debenture Stock (No. 3) ..			
Lines jointly owned							
Lines jointly leased							
Rolling Stock							
Manufacturing and repairing							
Works and Plant :—							
Land and Buildings							
Plant and Machinery							
Total Capital expended upon Railway ..							
Horses				Premiums on Shares and Stocks ..			
Road Vehicles employed in the collection and delivery of parcels, goods, and passengers :—				Premiums on Debenture Stock ..			
1. Goods and Parcels				Total Premiums ..			
Road Vehicles							
2. Passenger Road Vehicles				Discounts on Shares and Stocks ..			
Steamboats				Discounts on Debenture Stock ..			
Canals				Total Discounts ..			
Docks, Harbours, and Wharves							
Hotels				Balance of Premiums and Discounts			
Electric Power Stations, &c.							
Land, Property, &c., not forming part of the Railway or Stations :—							
(a) Used in connexion with Railway working							
(b) Not used in connexion with Railway working							
Other Industries (to be stated separately)							
Subscriptions to Other Companies (for details, see Table No. 4 (a))							
Special Items							
TOTAL EXPENDITURE..				TOTAL RECEIPTS ..			
To Balance				By Balance			
TOTAL				TOTAL			

No. 8.—REVENUE RECEIPTS & EXPENDITURE OF THE WHOLE UNDERTAKING.

See State- ment.		Gross Receipts.	Expendi- ture.	Net Receipts.	Year 19		
					Gross Receipts.	Expendi- ture.	Net Receipts.
		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£	£	£
10	Railway						
11	Omnibuses and other passenger vehicles not running on the railways ..						
12	Steamboats						
13	Canals						
14	Docks, harbours and wharves ..						
15	Hotels and refreshment rooms and cars, where catering is carried on by the Company						
16	Other separate businesses carried on by the Company (in detail)						
	Total	£					
Miscellaneous Receipts (Net) :—							
	Rents from houses and lands						
	Rents from hotels						
	Other rents, including lump-sum tolls ..						
	Interest and dividends from investments in other companies (in detail)						
	Transfer fees						
	General interest						
	Special items						
	Total Net Income ..£						

No. 9.—PROPOSED APPROPRIATION OF NET INCOME.

		£ s. d.	Year 19
Balance brought forward from last year's Account			£
Net Income (as per Statement No. 8)			
Appropriation from Reserve			
	Total	£	
Deduct—Interest, rentals and other fixed charges (to be stated by each Company in order of priority) :—		£ s. d.	
Interest on Superannuation and other Funds			
Rent charges (or feu duties) and Annuities			
Chief rents, wayleaves, &c., including lump-sum tolls			
Interest on Loans			
Interest on Debenture Stocks (details)			
Rent of and guaranteed interest on Leased and Worked Lines ..			
Interest on Lloyd's Bonds			
General interest			
Special items (if any)			
	Total	£	
Balance after Payment of Fixed Charges :—		£ s. d.	
Appropriation to Reserve and other special purposes :— (Details)			
	Total	£	
Dividends on Guaranteed and Preference Stocks :— (Details)			
	Total	£	
Balance available for Dividends on Ordinary Stock :— (Details)		£ s. d.	
	Total	£	

No. 9 (a).—STATEMENT OF INTERIM DIVIDENDS PAID.

		£ s. d.	£
Balance available for Dividends, Year 19			
Deduct—		£ s. d.	
Interim Dividends paid (particulars)			
Undivided Balance at 31st December, carried to Balance Sheet ..			

No. 10.—RECEIPTS AND EXPENDITURE IN RESPECT OF
RAILWAY WORKING.

Dr.

Cr.

To Expenditure.	Year		Percentage of Traffic Receipts.		By Gross Receipts.	Year		Percentage of Traffic Receipts.	
	19	..	..	..		19	..	..	..
<i>See Abstracts.</i>	£ s. d.	£	Per cent.	Per cent.	<i>See Abstracts.</i>	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£	Per cent.
A. Maintenance and renewal of Way and Works					Passenger Train Traffic :—				
B. Maintenance and renewal of Rolling Stock :—					Ordinary Passengers				
(1). Locomotives					First Class				
(2). Carriages					Second Class				
(3). Wagons					Third Class				
	£ s. d.				Season Tickets—				
					First Class				
C. Locomotive Running Expenses					Second Class				
D. Traffic Expenses					Third Class				
	£ s. d.				Workmen's Tickets				
E. General Charges					Total Receipts from Passengers				
Law Charges					Mails				
Parliamentary Expenses					Parcels up to 2 cwt., Parcels Post, and Excess Luggage				
Compensation (accidents and losses) :—					Other Merchandise by Passenger Trains				
Passengers					F. Less Expenses of Collection and Delivery				
Workmen					Total Passenger Train Receipts				
Damage and loss of Goods, Property, &c.					Goods Train Traffic :—				
	£ s. d.				Merchandise				
Rates					F. Less Expenses of Collection and Delivery				
Taxes					Live Stock				
Government Duty					Coal, Coke and Patent Fuel				
G. Running Powers (Balance, Debit or Credit)					Other Minerals				
Total Traffic Expenditure	£				Total Goods Train Receipts	£			
J. Joint Lines*					Total Traffic Receipts	£			
Miscellaneous					H. Mileage, Demurrage, and Wagon Hire				
Total Expenditure	£				J. Joint Lines*				
Net Receipts	£				Miscellaneous				
TOTAL	£				TOTAL	£			

NOTE.—Gross receipts to include the whole of the receipts from traffic carried over the company's lines, except where (a) the traffic is carried over the company's line by trains of other companies and no annual payment is made therefor, or where (b) the payment made is by way of a fixed rent. The proportion of traffic receipts accruing to other companies in respect of running powers exercised by them over the company's lines not to be treated as a deduction from the company's traffic receipts in this statement, but to be entered as a payment in the Running Powers Account (Abstract G). The proportion of the traffic receipts accruing to the company in respect of trains run by the company over the lines of other companies to be excluded from the traffic receipts in this statement, and entered as receipts in the Running Powers Account.

* Under this heading should be entered only the Expenditure or Receipts of jointly owned and jointly leased lines in respect of which the Accounts are prepared by or for the joint committee and are not already embodied in those of the parent companies (see Abstract J). In the case of other joint lines, the company's proportion of the Revenue and Expenditure to be spread over the various heads on the respective sides of this Account.

Dr.

No. 18.—GENERAL BALANCE SHEET.

Cr.

	Year 19		Year 19
£ s. d.	£	£ s. d.	£
To Capital Account, Balance at Credit thereof, as per Account No. 4 ..		By Capital Account, Balance at Debit thereof, as per Account No. 4 ..	
Amount due to Bankers		£ s. d.	
Temporary Loans and Calls paid in advance		Cash at Bankers and in Hand	
Lloyd's Bonds		Cash on Deposit, at Interest	
Unpaid Interest and Dividends ..		Investments in Consols and Government Securities ..	
Interest and Dividends payable or accruing and provided for ..		Investments in Stocks and Shares held by the Company, not charged as Capital Expenditure ..	
Amount due to Railway Companies and Committees ..		Investment of Superannuation and other Provident Funds ..	
Amount due to Railway Clearing Houses		Stock of Stores and Materials ..	
Savings Bank		Outstanding Traffic Accounts ..	
Superannuation and other Provident Funds		Amount due by Railway Companies and Committees ..	
Accounts Payable		Amount due by Railway Clearing Houses ..	
Liabilities accrued		Amount due by Postmaster-General ..	
Miscellaneous Accounts		Accounts Receivable	
Special Items (to be detailed) ..		Miscellaneous Accounts	
Fire Insurance Fund		Suspense Accounts (if any) to be enumerated ..	
Depreciation Funds—		Special Items (to be detailed) ..	
Railway			
Steamboats (including Insurance Fund)			
Other Businesses			
General Reserve Fund			
	£ s. d.		
Balance available for Dividends and Reserve, as per Account No. 9 ..			
Less Interim Dividends paid as per Statement No. 9 (a)			

ILLUSTRATION—

The following is the Trial Balance of the New Railway Company, after the completion of the Revenue Account for the year ended 31st December, 1913.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
3½ % Preference Stock				450,000	0	0
Ordinary Stock				750,000	0	0
4 % Debenture Stock				300,000	0	0
Lines open for Traffic	1,278,000	0	0			
Lines in course of construction ..	7,500	0	0			
Working Stock (Engines, Carriages, &c.) ..	195,000	0	0			
Contribution to Joint Lines	75,000	0	0			
Premiums on Ordinary Stocks				37,500	0	0
Purchase of Grand Canal	7,500	0	0			
Cash at Bank	7,500	0	0			
Stock of Stores and Materials	10,000	0	0			
Outstanding Traffic Accounts	20,000	0	0			
Due from other Companies	1,500	0	0			
Miscellaneous Accounts	6,000	0	0			
Debts due to other Companies				750	0	0
Accounts Payable				30,000	0	0
Fire Insurance Fund				2,250	0	0
Superannuation Fund				7,500	0	0
Balance to Credit of Net Revenue Account ..				30,000	0	0
	£1,608,000	0	0	£1,608,000	0	0

During the year there was an issue of £15,000 3½ per Cent. Preference Stock at par, which was fully subscribed and paid up; also of £30,000 Ordinary Stock fully subscribed and paid up at a premium of 5 per cent. The expenditure on Lines open to Traffic was £37,500, on Lines in course of Construction £1,500, and on Working Stock £7,500.

Make out Capital Account and Balance Sheet in proper form.

Cr.

RECEIPTS AND EXPENDITURE ON CAPITAL ACCOUNT.

Dr.

To Expenditure :—	Amount expended to 31st Dec., 1912.		Amount expended during year.		TOTAL.	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
On Lines open for Traffic	1,240,500	0 0	37,500	0 0	1,278,000	0 0
On Lines in course of construction ..	6,000	0 0	1,500	0 0	7,500	0 0
Working Stock ..	187,500	0 0	7,500	0 0	195,000	0 0
Subscriptions to other Railways ..	75,000	0 0			75,000	0 0
Purchase of Grand Canal	7,500	0 0			7,500	0 0
	£1,516,500	0 0	£46,500	0 0	£1,563,000	0 0

By Receipts :— Shares and Stock per Account No. 2 .. Debiture Stock per Account No. 3 .. Premiums on Stocks sold	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
	1,155,000	0 0	45,000	0 0	1,200,000	0 0
	300,000	0			300,000	0 0
	36,000	0 0	1,500	0 0	37,500	0 0
	£1,491,000	0 0	£46,500	0 0	£1,537,500	0 0

By Balance	£1,563,000	0 0
	£1,563,000	0 0

Cr.

I.—GENERAL BALANCE SHEET ON 31ST DECEMBER, 1913.

Dr.

To Net Revenue Account :—	£		s. d.		By Capital Account :—	£		s. d.	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.	£	s. d.
Balance at credit thereof ..	39,000	0 0			Balance at debit thereof ..			25,500	0 0
Debts due to other Companies ..			39,000	0 0	" Cash at Bank			7,500	0 0
Accounts payable			39,000	0 0	" Stock of Stores and Materials ..			10,000	0 0
Fire Insurance Fund			2,250	0 0	" Outstanding Traffic Accounts ..			20,000	0 0
Superannuation Fund			7,500	0 0	" Amounts due by other Companies ..			1,500	0 0
					" Miscellaneous Accounts			6,000	0 0
								£70,500	0 0

§ 6.—The Statutory Forms of Gas Companies' Accounts.

Under the Gas Works Clauses Act, 1871, certain forms of Account are prepared for the use of Gas Companies as follows :—

- (a) Statement of Share Capital.
- (b) Statement of Loan Capital.
- (c) Capital Account.
- (d) Revenue Account.
- (e) Profit and Loss Account (Net Revenue).
- (f) Reserved Fund Account.
- (g) Statement of Coals.
- (h) Statement of Residual Products.
- (i) General Balance Sheet.

The more important of these forms only are given.

Dr. C.—CAPITAL ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19 . Cr.

	Expenditure to 31st Dec., 19				Certified Receipts 31st Dec., 19			
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	
1. To Expenditure to 31st December, 19				1. By Ordinary Shares of £ each..				
<i>Since that date.</i>				2. " Do. of £ each..				
2. To Lands acquired, including law charges				3. " Preference Shares of £ each				
3. " New Buildings, Manufacturing Plant, Machines, Storage Works and other structures connected with manufacture				4. " Debenture Stock				
4. " New Mains and Service Pipes (not being in place of old ones), including laying same, paving and other works connected with distribution				5. " Mortgages and Bonds				
5. " New Meters (not in place of old ones), including fixing ..				6. " Amounts received in anticipation of calls				
6. " Cost of Promoting Special Act..								
7. " Special Items (if any)								
Total Expenditure								
To Balance of Capital Account ..								
	£			Total	£			

Dr. D.—REVENUE ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19 Cr.

To MANUFACTURE OF GAS :—			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	BY SALE OF GAS :—			£ s. d.	£ s. d.
1.	Coals, including dues, carriage, unloading, and all expenses of depositing same on works	.. .. .			1.	Common gas (cubic feet) at / per 1,000 cubic feet	.. .. .	
2.	Purifying materials, oil, water and sundries at works	.. .. .			2.	Cannel gas (cubic feet) at / per 1,000 cubic feet	.. .. .	
3.	Salaries of engineers, including chief engineer (if any), superintendents and officers at works	.. .. .			3.	Public lighting and under contracts	.. .. .	
4.	Wages and gratuities at works	.. .. .			4.	Rental of meters	.. .. .	
5.	Repairs and maintenance of works and plant (including renewal of retorts), machines, apparatus, tools, materials and labour	.. .. .			BY RESIDUAL PRODUCTS :—				
					5.	Coke, less labour and cartage	.. .. .	
					6.	Breeze ditto	.. .. .	
					7.	Tar ditto	.. .. .	
					8.	Ammoniacal liquor ditto	.. .. .	
	Less old materials sold	.. .. .						
To DISTRIBUTION OF GAS :—					9.	By Rents	.. .. .	
6.	Salaries of surveyor, chief inspector, inspectors, assistant inspectors and clerks in light office	.. .. .			10.	By Transfer fees	.. .. .	
7.	Repairs, maintenance and renewal of mains and of service pipes, including materials, laying and paving, and labour	.. .. .				By other items (if any)	.. .. .	
8.	Repairing, renewing and refixing meters..	.. .. .						
To PUBLIC LAMPS :—									
9.	Lighting and repairing	.. .. .						
To RENTS, RATES AND TAXES :—									
10.	Rents	.. .. .						
11.	Rates and Taxes	.. .. .						
To MANAGEMENT :—									
12.	Directors' allowances	.. .. .						
13.	Salaries of secretary, accountant and clerks, office-keepers and messengers	.. .. .						
14.	Collectors' commission or salaries..	.. .. .						
15.	Stationery and printing	.. .. .						
16.	General establishment charges and incidentals	.. .. .						
17.	Auditor	.. .. .						
To LAW AND PARLIAMENTARY CHARGES :—									
18.	Law	.. .. .						
19.	Parliamentary (oppositions)	.. .. .						
20.	To Depreciation Fund for works on leasehold lands (if any)	.. .. .						
21.	To Bad Debts	.. .. .						
	To other items (if any)	.. .. .						
	Total Expenditure	.. .. .	£			Total Receipts	.. .. .	£
Balance carried to Profit and Loss Account E.									

E.—PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT (NET REVENUE)

Dr. FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19 Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
1. To Amount carried to Reserved Fund Account F (if any) from Profits of 19				1. By Balance of net profit brought from last Account (31st Dec., 19			
2. „ Interest on temporary Loans and Moneys received in anticipation of Calls				2. „ Amount drawn from Reserved Fund (if any)			
3. „ Do. on Mortgages and Bonds accrued to 31st Dec., 19				Less Dividend paid for the half-year ended 31st Dec., 19			
4. „ Do. on Debenture Stock to do.				3. „ Balance brought from Revenue Account D, being profit for year to Dec., 19			
5. „ Half-year's Dividend on 1st Preferential to 30th June, 19				4. „ Interest on Moneys deposited			
6. „ Do. 2nd Preferential to do.							
7. „ Do. on Ordinary Shares at per cent.							
„ Balance of net Profit to be carried to next Account subject to half-year's Dividends to 31st Dec., 19							
	£				£		

F.—RESERVED FUND ACCOUNT

Dr.	FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19 .	Cr.	
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	
1. To Amount (if any) carried to Profit and Loss Account E to make up deficiencies of Dividends to 31st Dec., 19		1. By Balance brought from last Account	
2. „ Amount paid for extraordinary claim or demand (if any)		2. „ Balance brought from Profit and Loss Account E	
3. „ Amount of balance to be carried to next Account		3. „ Interest on amount invested	
	£		£

Like Accounts must be given for Depreciation Fund for works on Leaseholds (if any).

I.—GENERAL BALANCE SHEET

Dr.	ON 31ST DECEMBER, 19 .	Cr.	
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	
1. To CAPITAL ACCOUNT :— Balance at Credit thereof (Account C) ..		1. By Cash at bankers	
2. " PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT :— Balance at credit thereof (Account E) ..		2. " " on deposit or at interest	
3. " RESERVED FUND :— Balance at credit thereof (Account F) ..		3. " Coals for stock on hand, 31st Dec., 19	
4. " DEPRECIATION FUND (for works on leasehold lands) :— Balance at credit thereof (Account) ..		4. " Coke and Breeze, 31st Dec., 19	
5. " Unpaid dividends		5. " Tar and other products, 31st Dec., 19	
6. " Interest accrued and unpaid on mortgages, bonds and debenture stock, and other loans, to 31st Dec., 19		6. " Sundry Stores, 31st Dec., 19	
7. " Sundry Tradesmen and others, for amount due for coals, stores, &c., to 31st Dec., 19 ..		7. " Gas Meter Rental: balance of this Account due to the Company on 31st Dec., 19 , less deposits and prepayments	
8. " WAGES AND CONTINGENCIES :— Amount due to 31st Dec., 19		8. " Coke and other residuals, 31st Dec., 19	
Other items (if any)		9. " Sundry Accounts, 31st Dec., 19	
	£	Special items (if any), including investments..	£

§ 7.—The Statutory Forms of Electric Lighting Companies' Accounts.

Under the Electric Lighting Act, 1882, certain forms of account are prescribed by the Board of Trade for Electric Lighting Companies working under an Order or License as follows :—

- (1) Statement of Share Capital.
- (2) Statement of Loan Capital.
- (3) Capital Account.

- (4) Revenue Account.
- (5) Net Revenue Account.
- (6) Reserve Fund Account.
- (7) Depreciation Fund Account.
- (8) General Balance Sheet.
- (9) Statement of Electricity Generated, Sold, &c.

The more important of these forms only are given.

[No. III.]

CAPITAL ACCOUNT

Dr. FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31ST DECEMBER, 19 . Cr.

	Expenditure up to 31 Dec., 19	Expended during the Year.	Total Expenditure to 31 Dec., 19		Receipts up to 31 Dec., 19	Received during Year.	Total Receipts to 31 Dec., 19
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
To Expenditure to 31st December, 19				By Ordinary Shares of £	.. ..	
<i>Expenditure since that date.</i>				" do. do. of £	.. ..	
1. To Lands, including law charges incidental to acquisition				" Preference do. of £	.. ..	
2. " Buildings				" Debenture Stock .. ..	.. ..	
3. " Machinery				" Mortgages and Bonds .. ..	.. ..	
4. " Accumulators at Generating and Distributing Stations				" Amounts received in anticipation of Calls .. ..	.. ..	
5. " Mains, including cost of laying the mains				" Sale of Patents or Patent Rights, &c. .. ..	.. ..	
6. " Transformers, Motors, &c.				" Other Receipts (to be specified) .. ..	.. ..	
7. " Meters, and Fees for certifying under the Act							
8. " Electrical Instruments, &c.							
9. " General Stores (cable, mains, lamps)							
10. " Purchase of Patents or Patent Rights							
11. " Cost of Licence, Provisional Order, &c.							
12. " Special Items							
Total Expenditure							
To Balance of Capital Account					
			£				£

Provision for Depreciation of Works is made by a debit of £ to Revenue Account transferred to Depreciation Fund Account
No. VII.

Dr. [No. IV.] REVENUE ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31st DECEMBER, 19 . Cr.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
<i>A.—To Generation of Electricity.</i>													
1. To Coals or other fuel, including dues, carriage, unloading, storing, and all expenses of placing the same on the works							1. By Sale of current per meter at per B. T. U.						
2. „ Oil, waste, water and engine-room stores							2. „ Sale under Contracts						
3. „ Proportion of Salaries of Engineers, Superintendents, and Officers, as certified by the Managing Director, Chairman or Engineer							3. „ Public lighting						
4. „ Wages and Gratuities at Generating Stations							4. „ Rental of meters and other apparatus on consumers' premises						
5. „ Repairs and Maintenance as follows:—							5. „ Sale and repairs of lamps, arc or incandescent						
1. Buildings						£ s. d.	„ Sale and repairs of other apparatus						
2. Engines, boilers							6. „ Royalties, licences, &c.						
3. Dynamos, exciters, transformers, motors, &c.							7. „ Rents receivable						
4. Other machinery, instruments and tools							8. „ Transfer fees						
5. Accumulators and accessories							9. „ Other items (to be specified)						
Less received for old materials													
6. To special items													
<i>B.—Distribution of Electricity.</i>													
1. To Proportion of Salaries of Superintendents and Officers, as certified by Managing Director, Chairman or Engineer													
2. „ Wages and Gratuities to Linesmen, Fitters, Labourers													
3. „ Repairs, Maintenance and Renewals of Mains of all classes, including Materials and laying the same													
Less Amounts refunded													
4. „ Repairs, Maintenance and Renewals of Transformers, Meters, Switches, Fuses and other apparatus on Consumers' Premises													
5. „ Repairs, Maintenance and Renewals of Apparatus at Distributing Stations													
<i>C.—To Public Lamps.</i>													
1. To Attending and Repairs													
2. „ Renewals of Lamps													
<i>D.—To Royalties, &c.</i>													
To Royalties, &c., payable for use of patents or patent processes													
<i>E.—To Rents, Rates and Taxes.</i>													
1. To Rents Payable													
2. „ Rates and Taxes													
<i>F.—To Management Expenses.</i>													
1. To Directors' remuneration													
2. „ Salaries of Managing Engineers, Secretary, Accountants, Clerks, Messengers, as certified by Managing Director, Chairman or Engineer													
3. „ Salaries or Commissions of Collectors													
4. „ Stationery and printing													
5. „ General establishment charges													
6. „ Auditors of Company													
7. „ Auditor appointed under the provisions of the Order													
Carried forward							Carried forward						

Dr. [No. IV.—continued.] REVENUE ACCOUNT—continued.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Brought over							Brought over						
<i>G.—To Law and Parliamentary Charges.</i>													
To Law Expenses													
<i>H.—To Depreciation.</i>													
1. To Depreciation in respect of Leasehold Works													
2. „ Depreciation in respect of Buildings													
3. „ Do. Plant, Machinery, &c.													
<i>I.—To Special Charges.</i>													
1. To Insurance, Superannuation, &c.													
2. „ Expenses for Certification of Meters													
Total Expenditure													
Balance carried to Net Revenue													
	£							£					

Dr. [No. V.]

NET REVENUE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
1. To Interest on Debentures accrued due to date				1. By Balance from last Account									
2. „ Interest on Mortgages and Bonds accrued due to date				Less Dividends paid									
3. „ Interest on Temporary Loans accrued due to date				Less Amount carried to Reserve Fund									
4. „ Dividend on Preference Stocks				2. „ Balance brought from Revenue Account No. IV.									
5. „ Balance applicable to dividend on Ordinary Stock or Shares				3. „ Interest on Money at Deposit									
	£							£					

Dr. [No. VI.]

RESERVE FUND ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
1. To Amount paid out for				1. By Balance brought from last Account			
2. „ Amount of Balance to next Account				2. „ Amount brought from Net Revenue Account			
				3. „ Interest on Amount Invested			
				(Description of Investments to be specified)			
	£						

Dr. [No. VII.]

DEPRECIATION FUND ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
1. To Balance				1. By Balance from last Account			
				2. „ Interest on Investments			
				3. „ Amount brought from Revenue Account (see No. IV. H.)			
				(Description of Investments to be specified)			
	£						

Dr. [No. VIII.]

GENERAL BALANCE SHEET.

Cr.

	£ s. d.		£ s. d.
1. To Capital Account: Amount received as per Account No. III.		1. By Capital Account: Amount expended for Works as per Account No. III.	
2. „ Sundry Tradesmen and others, due on construction of Plant and Machinery, Fuel, Stores, &c., to 31st December, 19		2. „ Stores on hand at 31st December, 19 —	
3. „ Sundry Creditors on open Accounts		Coal	
4. „ Net Revenue Account: Balance at credit thereof		Oils, waste, &c.	
5. „ Reserve Fund Account: Balance at credit thereof		General	
6. „ Depreciation Fund Account: Balance at credit thereof		3. „ Sundry Debtors for amounts paid on account of contract in course of completion	
		4. „ Preliminary Expenses	
		5. „ Sundry Debtors for Current supplied to 31st December, 19	
		6. „ Other Debtors	
		7. „ Cash at Bankers:—	
		Messrs.	
		Messrs.	
		Messrs. (amount on deposit)	
		8. „ Cash in hand	
	£		£

Chairman.

March, 19

Manager and Secretary.

ILLUSTRATION—

Prepare a Revenue Account, Capital Account, and Balance Sheet from the following Trial Balance.

DYNAMO ELECTRIC LIGHTING COMPANY, LIMITED.

TRIAL BALANCE, 30TH JUNE, 1914.

1913. June 30.			Capital, Nominal, 10,000 Shares, £10 each.								
£	s.	d.				£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
20,000	0	0	Subscribed, 5,000 Shares, £10 each, £5 paid	25,000	0	0
15,000	0	0	Debentures, 6 % interest	15,000	0	0
1,000	0	0	Depreciation Fund	1,000	0	0
			Investments on Depreciation Fund Account	..	..	..	..	1,000	0	0
9,300	0	0	Freehold Land	..	..	..	..	9,300	0	0
4,000	0	0	Buildings	..	..	..	..	5,000	0	0
6,000	0	0	Machinery at Station	..	..	..	..	10,000	0	0
5,000	0	0	Mains	..	..	..	..	8,000	0	0
1,000	0	0	Transformers, Motors, &c.	..	..	..	..	2,000	0	0
500	0	0	Meters	..	..	..	..	1,500	0	0
300	0	0	Electrical Instruments	..	..	..	..	400	0	0
1,600	0	0	General Stores (Cables, Mains, Lamps) in stock	..	..	..	..	2,350	0	0
250	0	0	Office Furniture	..	..	..	..	250	0	0
			Coal and Fuel	..	..	..	..	1,900	0	0
			Oil, Waste and Engine Room Stores	..	..	..	..	750	0	0
			Coal, Oil and Waste, &c., in stock	..	..	..	..	100	0	0
			Wages at Station	..	..	..	..	3,030	0	0
			Repairs and Replacements	..	..	..	..	500	0	0
			Rates and Taxes	..	..	..	..	300	0	0
			Salaries of Secretary, Manager, &c.	..	..	..	..	1,500	0	0
			Directors' Fees	..	..	..	..	1,000	0	0
			Stationery, Printing and Advertising	..	..	..	..	600	0	0
			Incidental Expenses	..	..	..	..	100	0	0
			Law Charges	..	..	..	..	200	0	0
			Sales by Meter		8,750	0	0
			Sales by Contract		5,000	0	0
			Meter Rents		300	0	0
			Sundry Creditors		700	0	0
			Sundry Debtors	..	..	..	..	3,000	0	0
			Cash in hand and at Bank	..	..	..	..	3,300	0	0
			Net Revenue Account		300	0	0
						£56,050	0	0	£56,050	0	0

Depreciation to be provided for on Buildings $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., Machinery $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., Mains 5 per cent., Transformers, &c., 10 per cent., Meters and Electrical Instruments 15 per cent. (on the opening balances).

Dr.

CAPITAL ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDING 30TH JUNE, 1914.

Cr.

	Expenditure up to 30th June, 1913.		Expended during the year.		Total Expenditure to 30th June, 1914.			Receipts up to 30th June, 1913.		Receipts during year.		Total Receipts to 30th June, 1914.	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
To Freehold Land ..	9,300	0 0			9,300	0 0	By Ordinary Shares	20,000	0 0	5,000	0 0	25,000	0 0
„ Buildings ..	4,000	0 0	1,000	0 0	5,000	0 0	„ Debentures ..	15,000	0 0			15,000	0 0
„ Machinery ..	6,000	0 0	4,000	0 0	10,000	0 0							
„ Mains ..	5,000	0 0	3,000	0 0	8,000	0 0							
„ Transformers, Motors, &c.	1,000	0 0	1,000	0 0	2,000	0 0							
„ Meters ..	500	0 0	1,000	0 0	1,500	0 0							
„ Electrical Instruments, &c. ..	300	0 0	100	0 0	400	0 0							
„ General Stores, (Cables Mains, Lamps) ..	1,600	0 0	750	0 0	2,350	0 0							
„ Office Furniture ..	250	0 0			250	0 0							
Total Expenditure ..	£27,950	0 0	£10,850	0 0	£38,800	0 0	Total Receipts	£35,000	0 0	£5,000	0 0	£40,000	0 0
„ Balance of Capital Account ..					1,200	0 0							
					£40,000	0 0						£40,000	0 0

Dr.

REVENUE ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDING 30TH JUNE, 1914.

Cr.

	£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£	s. d.	£	s. d.
To Generation of Electricity—					By Sale of Current per Meter	8,750	0 0		
Coal and other Fuel ..	1,900	0 0			„ Ditto under Contracts	5,000	0 0		
Oil, Waste and Engine								13,750	0 0
Room Stores ..	750	0 0			„ Rental of Meters ..			300	0 0
Wages at Station ..	3,000	0 0							
Repairs and Replace-									
ments ..	500	0 0							
„ Rates and Taxes ..			6,150	0 0					
„ Management Expenses—			300	0 0					
Directors' Remuneration	1,000	0 0							
Salaries of Secretary,									
Manager, &c. ..	1,500	0 0							
Stationery, Printing and									
Advertising ..	600	0 0							
Incidental Expenses ..	100	0 0							
„ Law Expenses ..			3,200	0 0					
„ Depreciation—			200	0 0					
Buildings ..	100	0 0							
Machinery ..	450	0 0							
Mains ..	250	0 0							
Transformers, &c. ..	100	0 0							
Meters ..	75	0 0							
Electrical Instruments..	45	0 0							
			1,020	0 0					
„ Balance carried to Net Revenue Account ..			3,180	0 0					
			£14,050	0 0				£14,050	0 0

Dr.

NET REVENUE ACCOUNT.

Cr.

	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
To Interest on Debentures accrued to date ..	900	0 0	By Balance from last Account ..	300	0 0
„ Balance applicable to Dividend ..	2,580	0 0	„ Balance from Revenue Account ..	3,180	0 0
	£3,480	0 0		£3,480	0 0

Dr.

GENERAL BALANCE SHEET, 30TH JUNE, 1914.

Cr.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
To Capital Account—				By Capital Account—			
Amount received as per Account ..	40,000	0	0	Amount expended as per Account	38,800	0	0
„ Sundry Creditors.. .. .	700	0	0	„ Stores on hand—			
„ Debenture-holders for Interest.. ..	900	0	0	Coal, Oil, Waste, &c.	100	0	0
„ Net Revenue Account—				„ Sundry Debtors for Current supplied	3,000	0	0
Balance at credit thereof	2,580	0	0	„ Investments on Depreciation Fund			
„ Depreciation Fund Account—				Account	1,000	0	0
Balance at credit thereof	2,020	0	0	„ Cash at Bankers and on hand ..	3,300	0	0
	<u>£46,200</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>		<u>£46,200</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER XIII.

BANKRUPTCY, LIQUIDATION, AND RECEIVERSHIP
ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—THE PREPARATION OF A STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS IN BANKRUPTCY.

- (a) Unsecured Creditors.
- (b) Creditors fully secured.
- (c) Creditors partly secured.
- (d) Liabilities on Bills Discounted other than Debtor's own Acceptances for value.
- (e) Creditors for Rent, &c., recoverable by distress, and Preferential Creditors.
- (f) Valuation of Assets.
- (g) Book Debts.
- (h) The Deficiency Account.
- (i) Bankruptcy of Firms.

2.—THE ACCOUNTS OF A TRUSTEE IN BANKRUPTCY.

3.—DEEDS OF ARRANGEMENT.

4.—THE PREPARATION OF A STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS OF A COMPANY IN COMPULSORY
LIQUIDATION.

5.—THE ACCOUNTS OF A LIQUIDATOR IN COMPULSORY LIQUIDATION.

6.—THE ACCOUNTS OF A LIQUIDATOR IN VOLUNTARY LIQUIDATION.

7.—RETURNS TO SHAREHOLDERS.

8.—THE ACCOUNTS OF A RECEIVER.

CHAPTER XIII.

BANKRUPTCY, LIQUIDATION AND RECEIVERSHIP
ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy.

Within three days of the Receiving Order, if made on the debtor's own petition, or within seven days if made on a creditor's petition, the debtor must lodge with the Official Receiver his Statement of Affairs. This must be compiled in the official form, and be accompanied by the following schedules of particulars :—

- A. Unsecured creditors.
- B. Creditors fully secured.
- C. Creditors partly secured.
- D. Liabilities of Debtor on bills discounted other than his own acceptances for value.
- E. Contingent or other liabilities.
- F. Creditors for rent, &c., recoverable by distress.
- G. Preferential creditors for rates, taxes and wages.
- H. Property.
- I. Debts due to the Estate.
- J. Bills of Exchange, Promissory Notes, &c., available as assets.
- K. Deficiency Account.

In the illustration that follows, a *pro formâ* example of the front sheet of a Statement of Affairs and the Deficiency Account is given.

The method of preparing this Statement of Affairs falls very much on the lines of the preparation of a Statement of Affairs for the purpose of placing a system of books on a double entry basis. Where, however, the books have been kept on a double entry system, although the preparation of the statement will be greatly facilitated thereby, at the same time many points will require to be dealt with which would not arise in the preparation of a Balance Sheet in the ordinary manner. The principal of these are as follows :—

(a) Unsecured Creditors.

A schedule of these Creditors must be prepared in the prescribed form, containing particulars of name, address and occupation, the amount of the debt, the date when contracted, and the consideration given. All creditors who do not come under the other schedules must be included here, particularly the Bills Payable on which the Debtor is liable as acceptor for value, the necessary particulars of each bill being inserted; Bank overdraft unsecured; balance of Creditors for wages, &c., which exceed the limit allowed as a preferential payment.

(b) Creditors fully secured.

The schedule of these Creditors, in addition to containing the information necessary in respect of unsecured Creditors, must also contain particulars of the security, the date when same was given, the estimated value of the security, and the estimated surplus. On the liability side of the Statement of Affairs these Creditors will be shown in short, together with the security, and the surplus will be carried to the asset side.

(c) Creditors partly secured.

Similar particulars must be afforded in the schedule of these, and the balance unsecured shown. In the Statement of Affairs these Creditors are shown in short on the liability side, the security being deducted, and the balance unsecured, ranking against the estate, extended.

(d) **Liabilities on Bills discounted other than Debtor's own acceptances for value.**

The schedule of these must contain particulars of the acceptor's name, address and occupation, whether the Debtor is liable as drawer or endorser, the date when the bill falls due, the amount of the bill (accommodation bills being separated from other bills), the name, address and occupation of the holder (if known), and the amount expected to rank against the estate for dividend.

Bills Receivable discounted by the Debtor with his Bank or other parties will be included here, since the Debtor will be liable as drawer or endorser. If, however, it is expected that the acceptors will meet these bills in due course, nothing will be extended to rank against the estate for dividend.

The case of Accommodation Bills is more complicated, especially where there have been cross-transactions in these between the Debtor and another party. Briefly speaking, it may be said that the whole of these Accommodation Bills must be inserted, whether the Debtor is liable as drawer, acceptor or endorser. Each Accommodation Bill must be examined, to ascertain the precise nature of the liability attaching to it as regards the estate. If the estate is primarily liable on the bill, the amount must be extended to rank in full for dividend. If the Debtor is only liable as drawer or endorser, it will depend on the financial position of those primarily liable on the bill, as to how much (if any) of the amount should be extended to rank for dividend. If the party primarily liable dishonours the bill and becomes bankrupt, the holder will have a right of proof to the full extent of the bill against the estates of both parties, though he will not be entitled to receive dividends exceeding the total face value of the bill, together with interest and expenses.

As previously remarked, liabilities on Bills Payable accepted by the Debtor for value will be included in the list of Unsecured Creditors, and not in this schedule. In the Statement of Affairs the gross amount of liabilities on Bills Discounted other than the Debtor's own acceptances for value is shown in short, and only the amount expected to rank for dividend extended.

(e) Creditors for Rent, &c., recoverable by distress, and Preferential Creditors.

The schedules of these items must contain full particulars, and disclose the difference between the gross amounts of the claims and the amounts recoverable by distress, or payable in full under the Preferential Payments in Bankruptcy Acts. The amounts not so recoverable or payable in full will be carried to the list of Unsecured Creditors. In the Statement of Affairs the amount recoverable or payable in full will be shown in short on the liability side, and deducted from the gross assets on the asset side.

(f) Valuation of Assets.

All assets should be brought into the Statement of Affairs at a fair realisable value. Cash in hand must be ascertained, and that at the bank (if any). Stock must be valued with particular reference to the conditions under which a forced realisation might have to be made. Similar considerations apply to the valuation of other assets, such as freehold and leasehold properties, machinery and plant, fixtures, furniture, &c.

A full description of every kind of property must be made in the specified form, together with the statement of the amount it is expected to produce.

(g) Book Debts.

A schedule of debts due to the estate must be prepared, showing the name, address and occupation of the debtor, the amount of the debt, distinguishing between good, doubtful and bad ; the date of contraction, the amount each debt is estimated to produce, and particulars of any securities given for debts. In the Statement of Affairs the amount of the good debts is extended into the outer column ; the doubtful and bad debts are shown in short at their gross figure, and the amount they are estimated to produce extended.

(h) **The Deficiency Account.**

The excess of liabilities expected to rank against the estate over the net assets available to meet those liabilities is termed the "deficiency," or in the event of the assets exceeding the liabilities the "surplus." A Deficiency Account is prepared in order to disclose how the deficiency or surplus has arisen.

On reference to the form of this account shown in the subsequent example, it will be seen that the account starts with what is in effect either the Capital of the Debtor at a given date, or the Deficiency at that date; the date in question being either one year prior to the date of the Receiving Order, or such other date as the Official Receiver may fix.

On the debit side of the Deficiency Account will be found the various items which go to make up the total amount to be accounted for. These are as follows :—

- (1) Capital at commencement of period under review (if any).
- (2) Profits from business during period under review (if any), without charging Interest on Capital or Partners' Salaries.
- (3) Any other income.
- (4) Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs (if any).

The total of these will be accounted for on the credit side of the Deficiency Account as follows :—

- (1) Excess of Liabilities over Assets at commencement of period under review (if any).
- (2) Net loss (if any) from carrying on business during the period.
- (3) Bad Debts.
- (4) Drawings.
- (5) Other losses and expenses.
- (6) Surplus (if any).

The item "Other Losses and Expenses" will include the difference between the book value of the assets appearing in the Statement of Affairs and the amount they are estimated to produce; also the loss incurred in respect of all liabilities ranking against the Estate for dividend for which no consideration has been received, such as estimated loss on Bills discounted or Accommodation Bills. These various losses should be shown in detail.

(i) Bankruptcy of Firms.

Where a firm goes bankrupt, the Trustee of the Joint Estate becomes also the Trustee of the Separate Estate of each partner. Distinct accounts must be kept of the Joint and Separate Estates, the separate Creditors being first paid out of the assets of the Separate Estates. In the event of there being any surplus on any of the Separate Estates, this will be carried to the Joint Estate, but the joint Creditors cannot receive more than the full amount of their debts, together with 4 per cent. per annum interest from the date of the Receiving Order. Any surplus on the Joint Estate will be carried to the Separate Estates of the partners, according to their rights as between themselves.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. filed his petition on 31st December, 1913, and his Statement of Affairs was composed of the following figures:—

	£	s.	d.
Creditors unsecured	75,000	0	0
" partly secured by lien on Shares	40,000	0	0
" fully secured by lien on Stock	100	0	0
Liability on Bills Receivable (estimated to rank £3,500)	7,000	0	0
Mortgage on Mill	10,000	0	0
Creditors payable in full	3,000	0	0
Book Debts, good	20,000	0	0
" doubtful and bad (estimated to produce £2,000)	10,000	0	0
Consignments, good	5,000	0	0
Stock (estimated to realise £40,000)	60,000	0	0
Shares (cost and estimated to realise)	16,000	0	0
Cash at Bankers	200	0	0
Bills of Exchange	1,300	0	0
Mill of the value of	11,000	0	0
Machinery (estimated to realise £12,000)	15,000	0	0
Fixtures (estimated to realise £1,500)	3,000	0	0
Cottages (estimated to realise £3,000)	3,500	0	0

On 1st January, 1908, he had a Capital of £50,000. Profits were made in the six years of £20,500, after allowing interest on Capital £10,000, and withdrawals amounted to £63,600.

Prepare the Statement of Affairs and Deficiency Account.

No. 46.
In the
IN BANKRUPTCY.
RE A

Court of

19

No.

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS

At 31st December, 1913, date of Receiving Order.

Gross Liabilities.	Liabilities (as stated and estimated by Debtor).	Expected to Rank.	Assets (as stated and estimated by Debtor).	Estimated to produce.
£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	Property as per List (H.), viz. :—	£ s. d.
75,000 0 0	Unsecured Creditors as per List (A.)	75,000 0 0	(a) Cash at Bankers	200 0 0
10,100 0 0	Creditors fully secured, as per List (B.)	10,100 0 0	(b) Cash deposited with Solicitor for Costs of Petition	39,900 0 0
	Estimated value of securities	11,100 0 0	(c) Stock-in-trade (cost £60,000)	12,000 0 0
	Surplus	1,000 0 0	(d) Machinery	1,300 0 0
	Less amount thereof carried to Sheet (C.)		(e) Trade fixtures, fittings, utensils, &c.	
	Balance thereof to contra		(f) Farming stock	
			(g) Growing crops and tenant right	
			(h) Furniture	
			(i) Life policies	
			(j) Other property, viz. :—	
			Cottages	3,000 0 0
			Consignments	5,000 0 0
40,000 0 0	Creditors partly secured, as per List (C.)	40,000 0 0		
	Less estimated value of securities	16,000 0 0		
	Liabilities on Bills discounted other than Debtor's own acceptances for value, as per List (D.), viz. :—			
	On Accommodation Bills as Drawer, Acceptor, or Indorser			
	On other Bills as Drawer or Indorser	7,000 0 0		
		£7,000 0 0		
	Of which it is expected will rank against the estate for dividend			
3,500 0 0	Contingent or other Liabilities as per List (E.)	3,500 0 0		
	Of which it is expected will rank against the estate for dividend			
	Creditors for rent, &c., recoverable by distress, as per List (F.)			
	Creditors for rates, taxes, wages, &c., payable in full, as per List (G.)	3,000 0 0		
	Sheriff's charges payable under s. 11 of the Bankruptcy Act of 1890, estimated at			
	Deducted contra	£3,000 0 0		
£131,600 0 0		£102,500 0 0		
			Total as per List (H.)	£1,600 0 0
			Book Debts as per List (I.), viz. :—	
			Good	20,000 0 0
			Doubtful	
			Bad	£10,000 0 0
			Estimated to produce	£10,000 0 0
			Bills of Exchange or other similar securities on hand, as per List (J.)	£1,300 0 0
			Estimated to produce	1,300 0 0
			Surplus from securities in the hands of Creditors fully secured (per contra)	1,000 0 0
			Deduct Creditors for distrainable rent, and preferential rates, taxes, wages, Sheriff's charges, &c. (per contra)	85,900 0 0
			Deficiency explained in Statement (K.)	3,000 0 0
				82,900 0 0
				19,600 0 0
				£102,500 0 0

No. 46.

Statement of Affairs.

List K.

K.

DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT.

£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Excess of assets over liabilities on the (1) 1st day of January, 1908 (if any) ..			50,000 0 0			Excess of liabilities over assets on the (1) day of 19 (if any) ..		
Net Profit (if any) arising from carrying on business from the (1) 1st day of January, 1908, to date of Receiving Order, after deducting usual trade expenses. . .			30,500 0 0			Net loss (if any) arising from carrying on business from the (1) 19 to date of Receiving Order, after deducting from profits the usual trade expenses		
Income or profit from other sources (if any) since the (1) 19 ..			19,600 0 0			Bad debts (if any) as per Schedule "I," (2) Expenses incurred since the (1) 1st day of January, 1908, other than usual trade expenses, viz., household expenses of self and (3) ..		
Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs ..						(4) Other losses and expenses (if any) ..		
						On Stock-in-Trade ..		
						Machinery ..		
						Furniture ..		
						Cottages ..		
						Bills Receivable Discounted ..		
						Surplus as per Statement of Affairs (if any) ..		
Total amount to be accounted for ..			£100,100 0 0			Total amount accounted for ..		
						..		
						.. (5)		
						£100,100 0 0		

Signature

Dated

19

NOTES.—(1) This date should be 12 months before date of Receiving Order, or such other time as Official Receiver may have fixed.
 (2) This Schedule must show when debts were contracted.
 (3) Add "wife and children" (if any), stating number of latter.

(4) Here add particulars of other losses or expenses (if any), including depreciation in the value of stock and effects or other property as estimated for realisation, and liabilities (if any) for which no consideration received.
 (5) These figures should agree.

§ 2.—The Accounts of a Trustee in Bankruptcy.

Detailed accounts must be kept by the Trustee of all his receipts and payments in a Cash Book. This book must be in the prescribed form, and contain columns for every class of receipt and payment. The following is the form provided :—

[illegible]

At the expiration of six months from the date of the Receiving Order, and every succeeding six months until his release, the Trustee must send to the Board of Trade a duplicate copy of the Cash Book for such period, together with the necessary vouchers and copies of the certificates of Audit by the Committee of Inspection. One copy of the Cash Book so required will be in the form shown above, the other copy is simply a summarised form without the detail columns.

If the Trustee carries on the business of the Debtor he must keep a Trading Account, recording simply the cash receipts and payments. This account must be kept in the prescribed form, and only the total of the receipts and payments need be inserted in the General Cash Book.

At the date of declaring the first and each subsequent dividend and at the date of application by the Trustee for release, he must prepare a summarised statement of receipts and payments in the prescribed form, showing the position of the estate at the date in question. This statement must be sent to each Creditor who has proved, and to the Debtor.

§ 3.—Deeds of Arrangement.

Where an estate is not going into Bankruptcy, but a Trustee is appointed under a private Deed of Arrangement, it is usual for a Statement of Affairs to be presented to the Creditors, drawn up more or less on the lines of a Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy, but disclosing considerably less detail. A list of Creditors is also usually furnished.

The Trustee under a Deed of Arrangement is not compelled to keep a columnar cash book similar to that required to be kept by a Trustee in Bankruptcy; but he must within 30 days from the 1st January in each year or other prescribed time transmit to the Board of Trade an account of his receipts and payments as Trustee, sufficient indication being given of each receipt and payment to explain its nature.

Where trading is carried on, a separate Trading Account must be kept, and the totals entered in the Cash Account.

By § 32 (2) of the Bankruptcy and Deeds of Arrangement Act, 1913, it is provided that every Trustee under a Deed of Arrangement must send every six months from the registration of the Deed to each Creditor who has assented to the Deed, a Statement in the prescribed form of the Trustee's Accounts and of the proceedings under the Deed to the date of the Statement. This is in addition to the Statement of Accounts sent annually to the Board of Trade within 30 days from the 1st January in each year, or (as provided by the Second Schedule to the Bankruptcy and Deeds of Arrangement Act, 1913), at such times as may be prescribed.

ILLUSTRATION—

The following are the forms which have been prescribed in connection with the Accounts of Trustees under Deeds of Arrangement.

TRUSTEE'S TRADING ACCOUNT.

<i>Dr.</i> RECEIPTS.				PAYMENTS. <i>Cr.</i>			
Date.				Date.			

LIST OF DIVIDENDS OR COMPOSITION.

Surname.	Christian Name.	Amount of Claim.	Amount of Dividend (or Composition).			
			Paid.		Unpaid.	

TRUSTEE'S ACCOUNT OF RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS.

RECEIPTS.				PAYMENTS.			
Date.	Of whom received.	Nature of Receipts.	Amount.	Date.	To whom paid.	Nature of Payments.	Amount.

§ 4.—The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs of a Company in Compulsory Liquidation.

Within 14 days from the date of the Winding-up Order a Statement of Affairs in the prescribed form must be submitted by the Directors or Secretary, or one of the chief officers of the Company.

The form of this statement is similar to that of the Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy, but the principal point of difference is that it is divided up into two sections, the first showing the position as regards Creditors, and the second as regards Contributories. The statement must be accompanied by the following schedules :—

- A. Unsecured Creditors.
- B. Creditors fully secured (not including Debenture-holders).
- C. Creditors partly secured.
- D. Liabilities of Company on bills discounted other than their own acceptances for value.
- E. Other Liabilities.
- F. Preferential Creditors for rates, taxes, salaries and wages.
- G. List of Debenture-holders.
- H. Property.
- I. Debts due to the Company.
- J. Bills of Exchange, Promissory Notes, &c., on hand available as assets.
- K. Unpaid calls.
- L. List of Founders' shares.
- M. List of Ordinary shares.
- N. List of Preference shares.
- O. (1) Deficiency account where winding-up order made within three years of formation of the Company.

(2) Deficiency account where winding-up order made more than three years after formation of the Company.

P. In substitution of such of the lists from A. to O. as will have to be returned blank.

The prescribed form of this Statement of Affairs and Deficiency Account is given in the following Illustration. In addition to the points already dealt with under the Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy, the following should be noted:—

The Debenture-holders are not treated as secured Creditors, but are shown in short on the liability side, and deducted from the gross assets after the Preferential Creditors.

Unpaid calls are treated as an asset at the amount which it is expected they will realise, but the nominal amount of unpaid capital liable to be called up is not shown as an asset, but merely as a note at the foot of the Statement of Affairs. The deficiency on the first portion of the statement as regards Creditors is carried to the second portion relating to Contributories. To it is added the amount of capital paid up, and the two together will give the total deficiency required to be accounted for.

ILLUSTRATION—

From the following particulars prepare Statement of Affairs of the General Trading Company, Limited, as at 31st December, 1913, the date of the Winding-Up Order:—

	£	s.	d.
Land and Premises valued at	11,210	0	0
Secured Creditors holding First Mortgage on Land and Premises	8,090	0	0
Partly Secured Creditors holding Second Mortgage on Land and Premises	4,510	0	0
Unsecured Creditors	10,160	0	0
100 6 % Mortgage Debentures of £100 each, interest payable 30th June and 31st December, paid to 30th June, 1913			
Liabilities on Bills discounted	1,400	0	0
Of which it is expected will rank	420	0	0
Managing Director's Salary, owing for five months	200	0	0
Weekly Wages unpaid	100	0	0
Liability under Workmen's Compensation Act, 1906	40	0	0
Debtors—Good	9,265	0	0
„ Doubtful, estimated to produce 6s. 8d. in the £	2,940	0	0
„ Bad	1,750	0	0
Bills Receivable—Good	320	0	0
Bank Overdraft	26	0	0
Cash in Hand	3	0	0
Stock (cost £15,000) valued at	11,000	0	0
Issued Capital—			
100 Founders' Shares of £1 each, 10s. called up			
15,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, issued as fully paid			
5,000 Preference Shares of £1 each, fully called up, on which there are Calls in arrear of £150, estimated to produce £100.			

No. C. 26. **In the** Court of
IN THE MATTER OF THE COMPANIES (CONSOLIDATION) ACT, 1908, AND
IN THE MATTER OF *THE GENERAL TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED.
STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS on the 31st December, 1913, the date of the Winding-up Order.
(I.) AS REGARDS CREDITORS.

* Insert full Name of Company.

Gross Liabilities.	Liabilities.		Expected to rank.	Assets.		Estimated to Produce.
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.	
	10,386	0 0		(a) Property as per list "H," viz. :—		
			10,386	(i) Cash at Bankers .. .. .	.. .. .	3 0 0
	8,090	0 0		(ii) Cash in hand .. .. .	.. .. .	11,000
				(iii) Stock-in-trade .. .. .	.. .. .	0 0
				(iv) Estimated cost, £15,000)		
				(v) Machinery .. .. .	.. .. .
				(vi) Trade fixtures, fittings, utensils, &c. ..	.. .. .
				(vii) Investments in shares, &c. ..	.. .. .
				(viii) Loans on Mortgage .. .. .	.. .. .
				(ix) Other property, viz. :—		
				(a) Book debts (debtors), as per list "I,"		
				viz. :—		
				(i) Good .. .. .	.. .. .	9,265
				(ii) Doubtful .. .. .	.. .. .	0 0
				(iii) Bad .. .. .	.. .. .	0 0
				Estimated to produce	£4,690	0 0
	4,510	0 0		(c) Bills of Exchange or other similar securities on hand, as per list "J,"	320	0 0
			1,390	Estimated to produce		320
				(d) Surplus from securities in the hands of creditors fully secured (per contra) (b) .. .. .	.. .. .	0 0
	420	0 0		(e) Unpaid calls (debtors) as per list "K,"—		
			420	(i) Estimated to produce	150	0 0
				Estimated total assets .. .. .	.. .. .	100
				Deduct preferential creditors as per contra (f) .. .. .	.. .. .	21,668
	140	0 0		Estimated amount available to meet claims of debenture-holders .. .. .	.. .. .	0 0
				Deduct loans on debenture bonds secured on the assets of the Company as per contra (g) ..	.. .. .	140
	10,200	0 0		Estimated amount available to meet unsecured creditors, subject to cost of liquidation .. ..	.. .. .	21,528
			12,196	Estimated deficiency of assets to meet liabilities of the Company, subject to cost of liquidation ..	.. .. .	0 0
						968
	£33,846	0 0				0 0
						£12,196

The nominal amount of unpaid capital liable to be called up is £50, which is (available to meet above deficiency) or [charged to debenture-holders], or as the case may be.

Dr.	(II.) AS REGARDS CONTRIBUTORIES.						Cr.			
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	
Capital issued and allotted, viz. :—							Estimated Surplus as above (if any)			
100 Founders' Shares of £1 per							subject to cost of Liquidation..			
Share (Shareholders).										
(a) issued as fully paid.										
Amount called up at 10s. per										
Share, as per List " L " ..	50	0	0							
15,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 per										
Share (Shareholders).	15,000	0	0							
(a) Issued as fully paid.										
Amount called up at £ ..										
Share, as per List " M " ..										
5,000 Preference Shares of £1 per										
Share (Shareholders).										
(a) Issued as fully paid.										
Amount called up at £1 per										
Share, as per List " N " ..	5,000	0	0							
b)										
Amount (if any) paid in advance										
of calls										
	£20,050	0	0							
Less unpaid calls estimated to be										
irrecoverable	50	0	0							
				20,000	0	0	Total deficiency as explained in			
Add deficiency to meet liabilities as above ..				968	0	0	Statement " O "	20,968	0	0
				£20,968	0	0		£20,968	0	0

(a) Where capital is issued as partly paid up, the form should be altered accordingly.

(b) Add particulars of any other capital.

No. C. 32.

Statement of Affairs.

List "O" (1).

LIST "O" (1), DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT.

(1) Deficiency Account where Winding-up Order made WITHIN THREE YEARS OF formation of Company.

I. Gross profit (if any) arising from carrying on business from date of formation of Company to date of Winding-up Order ..	£	s.	d.	I. Expenses of carrying on business from date of formation of Company to date of Winding-up Order, viz. :—	£	s.	d.
II. Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs ..				Salaries and Wages			
				Rent, Rates and Taxes			
				Miscellaneous Trade Expenses			
				Depreciation written off in Company's Books			
				Interest on Loans			
				II. Bad Debts (if any) as per List "I" (1) ..			
				III. Directors' Fees from date of formation of Company to date of Winding-up Order			
				IV. Dividends paid (if any) from date of formation of Company to date of Winding-up Order			
				V. Losses on investments realized from date of formation of Company to date of Winding-up Order (exclusive of depreciation written off as above), viz. (4) ..			
				VI. Depreciation of Property not written off in Company's Books, viz. (4) ..			
				VII. Other Losses and Expenses (if any) (2) from date of formation of Company to date of Winding-up Order, viz. (4) ..			
NOTE.—Where the Winding-up Order is made more than three years after the formation of the Company the form "O" (2) must be used.							
Total amount to be accounted for .. (3) £				Total amount accounted for (3) £			

NOTES.—(1) This list must show when debts were contracted.

(2) Here add particulars of other losses or expenses (if any) and liabilities (if any) for which no consideration received.

(3) These figures should agree.

(4) Where particulars are numerous they should be inserted in a separate Schedule.

Signature.....

Dated.....19....

At the expiration of six months from the date of the Winding-up Order, and every succeeding six months until his release, the Liquidator must send to the Board of Trade a duplicate copy of the Cash Book for such period, together with the necessary vouchers, and copies of the Certificate of Audit of the Committee of Inspection. One copy of the Cash Book so required will be in the form shown above, the other copy being simply a summarised form without detailed columns.

If the Liquidator carries on business for the Company he must keep a Trading Account, recording simply the Cash Receipts and payments. This Account must be kept in the prescribed form, and the weekly totals of receipts and payments on Trading Account must be incorporated in the Cash Book.

The Liquidator must transmit to the Board of Trade with his accounts a Summary thereof in the prescribed form, copies of which are sent out to Creditors and Contributories.

At the date of application by the Liquidator for release, he must prepare a summarised Statement of Receipts and Payments in the prescribed form, showing the position of the Company at that date.

Under § 224 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, if the winding-up has not been completed within one year, the Liquidator must make the returns to the Registrar required by the section in the prescribed form.

§ 6.—The Accounts of a Liquidator in Voluntary Liquidation.

In a Voluntary Liquidation the preparation of a Statement of Affairs and Deficiency Account is not compulsory, and the Liquidator is only required to keep an account of his receipts and payments.

If the Liquidation continues for more than one year, the Liquidator must summon a General Meeting of the Company at the end of the first year, and of each succeeding year from the commencement of the Winding-up, or as soon thereafter as may be convenient, and shall lay before the Meeting an Account of his receipts and payments.

When the Liquidation is finally completed a General Meeting must be summoned by the Liquidator, and an Account laid before it showing the way in which the property of the Company has been disposed of.

Returns to the Registrar under § 224 of the Companies (Consolidation) Act, 1908, must be made by the Liquidator if the Winding-up is not completed within one year.

ILLUSTRATION—

The X. Company, Limited, went into Voluntary Liquidation on the 31st December, 1913, with Unsecured Creditors £3,375, Preferential Creditors £442, and 6 per Cent. Debentures £4,000, secured by a floating charge on the undertaking, the interest on which was paid to 30th June, 1913.

The assets realised £7,255, being £4,200 from sale of Stock, £3,030 from Book Debts, and £25 cash in hand at the commencement of Liquidation. The Debentures were paid off on 30th June, 1914, and a first and final dividend distributed to Creditors. Cost of Liquidation amounted to £60 7s. 0d.

Prepare the Liquidator's Final Account for presentation to the Shareholders, his remuneration being at the rate of 3 per cent. on the amount realised, and 2 per cent. on the amount distributed to Unsecured Creditors.

THE X. COMPANY, LIMITED (IN LIQUIDATION).

Dr.	LIQUIDATOR'S STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT.						Cr.		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Realisation of Assets:—									
Cash	25	0	0						
Stock	4,200	0	0						
Book Debts	3,030	0	0						
				7,255	0	0			

Note to Illustration.

The final portion of the Liquidator's Remuneration will be arrived at as follows :—

The Cash balance to be divided between the Liquidator and the Unsecured Creditors amounts to £2,295. As the Liquidator is to receive 2 per cent. of the amount distributed, and the amount to be distributed to the Creditors will be $\frac{2295}{102} \times 100 = £2,250$, the calculation for his remuneration will be $\frac{2295}{102} \times 2 = £45$.

§ 7.—Return to Shareholders.

In the event of some shares being fully paid up and others only partly paid up, it will become necessary for the Liquidator to adjust the rights of the Contributories between themselves, and this may involve the making of a call on those Shareholders whose shares are only partly paid up. It is essential that the amounts finally contributed by Shareholders in any one class should be equal as between themselves.

In the event of a surplus remaining after all costs and liabilities have been discharged, such surplus must be distributed between the Shareholders according to their rights under the Memorandum and Articles of Association.

Shares which have preference as to repayment of Capital should first be paid off, and if there remains a further surplus after the other Shareholders have received the nominal amount of their shares, the origin of such surplus must be carefully ascertained.

Subject to the Articles, it may be said that a Capital surplus will be distributed among all the Shareholders *pari passu* according to the nominal amount of their shares, irrespective of the class to which they belong ; whereas a Revenue surplus is distributable in the same manner as profits.

ILLUSTRATION—

The Capital of The Motor Company, Limited (in Voluntary Liquidation), consists of :—

2,000 Preference Shares of £5 each, fully paid up.

8,000 Ordinary Shares of £5 each, fully paid up.

6,000 Ordinary Shares of £5 each, £4 per share paid up.

2,000 Deferred Shares of £5 each, £4 per share paid up.

Under the Articles of Association, the Preference Shares have priority as to repayment of Capital over the Ordinary Shares, and the Ordinary Shares priority over the Deferred Shares.

The Costs of Liquidation, including the Liquidator's Remuneration, amounted to £700, and the Creditors to £8,900.

The assets realised £18,700. The Call made by the Liquidator on the Deferred Shareholders for the adjustment of the rights of Shareholders *inter se* was fully paid. A Call of 15s. per share was made on the partly paid Ordinary Shareholders, which was duly paid, with the exception of that on 200 Shares, which was irrecoverable.

Prepare the Liquidator's Final Statement of Account.

THE MOTOR COMPANY, LIMITED (IN LIQUIDATION).

Dr.		LIQUIDATOR'S FINAL STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
To Realisation of Assets ..	£ s. d.	18,700 0 0	By Costs of Liquidation ..	£ s. d.	700 0 0		
„ Proceeds of Call of £1 per Share on 2,000 Deferred Shares of £5 each ..		2,000 0 0	„ Creditors paid in full ..		8,900 0 0		
„ Call of 15s. per Share on 6,000 Ordinary Shares of £5 each ..	4,500 0 0		„ Return to Shareholders—				
Less Call unpaid on 200 Shares ..	150 0 0	4,350 0 0	£5 per Share on 2,000 Preference Shares of £5 each, being return in full ..	10,000 0 0			
			10s. per share on 8,000 Ordinary Shares of £5 each, leaving £4 10s. per Share paid..	4,000 0 0			
			5s. per Share on 5,800 Ordinary Shares of £5 each, leaving £4 10s. per Share paid..	1,450 0 0	15,450 0 0		
		£25,050 0 0			£25,050 0 0		

Notes to Illustration.

The 200 Shares in respect of which the Call is irrecoverable will be forfeited, and consequently they will not participate in the final distribution.

The Call from the holders of the partly paid Ordinary Shares makes the partly paid shares £4 15s. 0d. paid, and the proceeds must be first applied in payment of 5s. per share to holders of fully paid Ordinary Shares, which makes all the Ordinary Shares £4 15s. 0d. paid. The balance of Cash remaining £3,450 is then divided up amongst all the Ordinary Shares entitled to participate and provides a further 5s. per share for each of the 13,800 shares. The fully paid Shares thus get 10s. per Share, and the partly paid shares 5s. per share.

§ 8.—The Accounts of a Receiver.

The Accounts of a Receiver take the form of a record of his receipts and payments, supported by vouchers, and made out in the prescribed manner. The accounts must be verified by affidavit, and will be passed periodically as directed by the Order appointing the Receiver. Separate accounts must be kept of Real Estate and Personal Estate, the forms of which are as follows :—

ILLUSTRATION—

FORM OF RECEIVER'S ACCOUNTS.
REAL ESTATE RECEIPTS.

No. of Item.	Date when received.	Tenant's Name.	Description of Premises.	Annual Rent.	Arrears due at	Amount due at	Amount received.	Arrears remaining due.	Observations.

PAYMENTS AND ALLOWANCES ON ACCOUNT OF REAL ESTATE.

No. of Item.	Date of Payment or Allowance.	Names of Persons to whom paid or allowed.	For what purpose paid or allowed.	Amount.

PERSONAL ESTATE.

Receipts on Account of Personal Estate.

Payments and Allowances on Account of Personal Estate.

No. of Item.	Date when received.	Names of Persons from whom received.	On what account received.	Amount received.	No. of Item.	Date when paid or allowed.	Names of Persons to whom paid or allowed.	For what purpose paid or allowed.	Amount paid or allowed.
				£ s. d.					£ s. d.

SUMMARY.

Amount of balance due from receiver on account of real estate on last account	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
Amount of receipts on the above account of real estate	£ s. d.	
Balance of last account paid into Court		
Amount of payments and allowances on the above account of real estate		
Amount of receiver's costs of passing this account as to real estate		
Balance due from the receiver on account of real estate	£	
Amount of balance due from receiver on last account of personal estate	£ s. d.	
Amount of receipts on the above account of personal estate	£ s. d.	
Balance of last account paid into Court		
Amount of payments and allowances on the above account of personal estate		
Amount of receiver's costs of passing this account as to personal estate		
Balance due from the receiver on account of personal estate	£	

[Rules of the Supreme Court, Appendix L, form 14.]

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER XIV.

MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—HIRE-PURCHASE AGREEMENTS, AND AGREEMENTS TO PAY BY INSTALMENTS.

- (a) Hire-Purchase Agreements.
- (b) Agreements to pay by Instalments.

2.—MINE RENTS AND ROYALTIES.

- (a) Where the Minimum Rent exceeds the Royalty Rent.
- (b) Where the Royalty Rent exceeds the Minimum Rent.

3.—FIRE CLAIMS FOR STOCK.

4.—CLAIMS FOR COMPENSATION.

5.—TREATMENT OF LIFE POLICY TAKEN OVER IN SATISFACTION OF DEBT DUE.

6.—TREATMENT OF LOOSE PLANT AND TOOLS ON RE-VALUATION.

7.—VOYAGE ACCOUNTS.

8.—MARINE INSURANCE ACCOUNTS.

9.—LEDGER ACCOUNTS FOR INVESTMENTS.

10.—TABULAR LEDGERS.

- (a) Purchase Day Book and Ledger combined.
- (b) Rental Ledger.
- (c) Electric Light, Gas, or Water Rental Ledger.
- (d) Hotel Visitors' Ledger.
- (e) Plant Ledger.

11.—LOOSE-LEAF AND CARD LEDGERS.

12.—STOCK EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS.

13.—OUTSTANDING COSTS IN THE BUSINESS OF A PROFESSIONAL MAN.

14.—ASSURANCE COMPANIES' ACCOUNTS.

15.—ACCOUNTS OF CHARITABLE INSTITUTIONS.

- (a) Specified Forms of Accounts.
- (b) Columnar Cash Book.
- (c) Subscription Register.
- (d) Purchase Journal.

16.—TREATMENT OF SHARE PROFITS.

CHAPTER XIV.

MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS.

§ 1.—Hire-Purchase Agreements, and Agreements to pay by Instalments.

There is a distinct difference between Hire-Purchase Agreements and Agreements to pay by Instalments. In the former case the legal property in the goods does not pass until the final instalment has been paid, and if default in the payment of any instalment is made, the person supplying the goods can only demand the return of such goods. In the latter case, however, the legal property in the goods passes immediately on delivery thereof, and in the event of default in payment of any of the instalments an action can be brought by the vendor for the payment of same.

(a) Hire-Purchase Agreements.

The entries in the books will be as follows:—

- (1) *Buyer's Books*.—It is usual to make no entry in respect of the hire-purchase until the first payment becomes due, when a journal entry should be passed through the books crediting the Vendor with the full amount of the payment, and debiting an Interest or Hire Account with the proportion thereof, which, on the assumption that the agreement will be eventually completed, represents the cost of hiring the goods during the period covered by the payment. The difference between the total of each payment and the amount thereof debited to Interest Account will represent the proportion of the asset actually purchased in respect of that payment, presuming, as in the case of interest, that the agreement will be ultimately fulfilled.

The apportionment of each instalment as between interest and capital will be calculated as follows :—

The buyer should ascertain what it would cost to purchase the article for cash ; this figure will represent the present cash value, and will form the basis for the calculation of interest. He will also ascertain the rate of interest which is being charged by the seller in respect of the hire. As regards the first instalment, interest at the ascertained rate will be calculated on the ascertained present value of the article for the period of the rest. The figure thus arrived at will represent the revenue charge, and the balance of the instalment will be treated as capital. In the case of the second instalment, interest at the fixed rate will be calculated on the cash value of the article, less the proportion of the first instalment which was treated as capital. All further instalments will be treated in the same method. After the last instalment has been paid, the balance on the Asset Account will be found to equal the original cash value, if depreciation has not been provided for ; but as this figure will be in excess of the true value of the asset at that date, provision for depreciation should have been made during the term of the agreement, the calculation being based on the cash value, and not on the amounts paid.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Colliery Company hires Wagons on the Hire-Purchase system over a term of two years, starting on 1st January, 1912. The instalments of £400 each are payable half-yearly. The present cash value of the Wagons is £1,487, and the Wagon Company charge interest at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum, working on half-yearly rests.

Make the necessary Journal entries to record these transactions in the books of the Colliery Company, distinguishing between Capital and Revenue.

1912.		£ s. d.		£ s. d.	
June 30	Sundries :—	<i>Dr.</i>			
	To Wagon Co.			400	0 0
	Wagon Account			355	7 10
	Wagon Hire Account (6 % for 6 months on £1,487)..			44	12 2
1912.		£ s. d.		£ s. d.	
Dec. 31	Sundries :—	<i>Dr.</i>			
	To Wagon Co.			400	0 0
	Wagon Account			366	1 1
	Wagon Hire Account (6 % for 6 months on £1,131 12s. 2d.)..			33	18 11.

1913. June 30		Dr.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
	Sundries:—			
	To Wagon Co. . . . .	.. .. .		400 0 0
	Wagon Account .. .. .	.. .. .	377 0 8	
	Wagon Hire Account (6 % for 6 months on £765 11s. 1d.).. .. .	.. .. .	22 19 4	

1913. Dec. 31		Dr.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
	Sundries:—			
	To Wagon Co. . . . .	.. .. .		400 0 0
	Wagon Account .. .. .	.. .. .	388 10 5	
	Wagon Hire Account (6 % for 6 months on £388 10s. 5d.).. .. .	.. .. .	11 9 7	

- (2) *Seller's Books*.—The seller should keep a special Sales Day Book for all sales under Hire-Purchase Agreements, and he should enter therein full particulars of the terms. The amount extended in this book should be the present cash value, which should be debited to the buyer and credited to Sales Account. As each instalment falls due, an entry should be passed through a special Interest Journal, debiting the particular customer concerned with the interest upon the balance of the account. The total of this special Journal will be posted periodically to the credit of Interest Account. It will be seen that by this method the seller takes credit through the Sales Account for profit equal to that which he would have made had he sold the articles in question for cash, and as regards the interest he takes credit for a proportionate amount as each instalment becomes due.

As there is no legal conveyance of the goods to the buyer under the agreement, the seller may be forced to receive back the goods in lieu of the balance of the account at any time, and consequently it is necessary for him to make a reserve against possible loss in this direction.

ILLUSTRATION—

P. White enters into a Hire-Purchase Agreement with Messrs. A., B. and Co., extending over a period of two years.

P. White agrees to pay half-yearly instalments of £20 each. The present cash value of the goods is £74 7s. 0d., and the interest charged is at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum.

Show P. White's Account in the books of Messrs. A., B. and Co.

P. WHITE.

Dr.				Agreement No. 72 (four half-yearly payments of £20).				Or.							
1912.				1912.				1912.							
Jan. 1	To Sales Account..	..	..	£	s.	d.	June 30	By Cash	..	..	..	£	s.	d.
June 30	„ Interest	..	..	74	7	0	June 30	„ Balance	..	..	..	20	0	0
				2	4	7						56	11	7	
				<u>£76 11 7</u>								<u>£76 11 7</u>			
July 1				£				Dec. 31				£			
Dec. 31	To Balance	..	..	56	11	7	Dec. 31	By Cash	..	..	..	20	0	0
	„ Interest	..	..	1	13	10		„ Balance	..	..	..	38	5	5
				<u>£58 5 5</u>								<u>£58 5 5</u>			
1913.				£				1913.				£			
Jan. 1	To Balance	..	..	38	5	5	June 30	By Cash	..	..	..	20	0	0
June 30	„ Interest	..	..	1	2	11		„ Balance	..	..	..	19	8	4
				<u>£39 8 4</u>								<u>£39 8 4</u>			
July 1				£				Dec. 31				£			
Dec. 31	To Balance	..	..	19	8	4	Dec. 31	By Cash	..	..	..	20	0	0
	„ Interest	..	..	11	8									
				<u>£20 0 0</u>								<u>£20 0 0</u>			

(b) Agreements to pay by Instalments.

As the legal property in the goods passes by mere delivery, the seller becomes the creditor of the buyer.

- (1) *Buyer's Books*.—As soon as the agreement to purchase goods on the instalment principle has been entered into, the buyer should pass an entry through his journal, crediting the Vendor with the total of all the instalments which will have to be paid, debiting the Asset Account with the present cash value thereof, and an Interest Suspense Account with the difference between the present value of the asset and the total amount of the instalments.

As each instalment becomes due, an amount should be written off the Interest Suspense Account representing the proportion of interest on the instalment, and debited to Profit and Loss. When the instalment is paid, Cash will be credited, and the Vendor's Account debited.

Depreciation should be taken into account year by year, so that when the last instalment has been paid the balance of the Asset Account will stand in the books at the actual value as at that date.

ILLUSTRATION—

X. purchases on the 1st January, 1912, some goods, arranging to pay for the same over a period of two years by half-yearly instalments of £120. The Company supplying the goods charge interest at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum, and the present cash value of the goods is £446 2s. 0d.

Show Interest Suspense Account in the books of X.

Dr.				INTEREST SUSPENSE ACCOUNT.				Cr.			
1912. Jan. 1	To Sundries	£ s. d. 33 18 0		1912. June 30	By P. & L. Account—6% on £446 2 0		£ s. d. 13 7 8 20 10 4				
		£33 18 0			„ Balance		£33 18 0				
July 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 20 10 4		Dec. 31	By P. & L. Account—6% on £339 9 8		£ s. d. 10 3 8 10 6 8				
		£20 10 4			„ Balance		£20 10 4				
1913. Jan. 1	To Balance .. .	£ s. d. 10 6 8		1913. June 30	By P. & L. Account—6% on £229 13 4		£ s. d. 6 17 10 3 8 10				
		£10 6 8			„ Balance		£10 6 8				
July 1	To Balance	£ s. d. 3 8 10		Dec. 31	By P. & L. Account—6% on £116 11 2		£ s. d. 3 8 10				
		£3 8 10					£3 8 10				

		£ s. d.
The Total amount of the Instalments comes to	480	0 0
From which must be deducted the present cash value of the goods	446	2 0
Leaving the total charge for Interest	£33	18 0

- (2) *Seller's Books.*—As soon as the agreement has been entered into, the seller will make a journal entry in his books, debiting the buyer with the full amount of all the instalments which will have to be paid, and crediting Sales Account with the present cash value, and Interest Suspense Account with the total amount of interest chargeable, being the difference between the total amount payable by the buyer and the present cash value. As each instalment becomes due, a proportionate amount of the

interest will be written off to the credit of Profit and Loss Account, and as the various instalments are paid, Cash will be debited and the Buyer's Account credited.

By this method the seller will take credit through the Sales Account for profit equal to that which he would have made had he sold the article in question for cash, and as regards the interest he takes credit for a proportionate amount as each instalment becomes due. The balance of the Buyer's Account at any time will show the balance still payable under the agreement.

It will be necessary to make ample reserves in lieu of possible bad debts on these transactions, and unless the seller is in possession of sufficient working capital it may be inadvisable to take credit for the whole profit on the sale in the Profit and Loss Account of the year in which the sale was effected. Any proportion of the profit thus carried forward should be credited to a Special Suspense Account.

§ 2.—Mine Rents and Royalties.

The rent of a mine is rarely fixed in amount, but is generally in the nature of a Royalty based on the output. In such cases there is usually a clause in the lease fixing a Minimum or Dead Rent, which must be paid whatever the output may be. This Minimum Rent merges into a Royalty Rent, so that the actual rent paid is either the Minimum or Royalty Rent, whichever is the greater. Another clause frequently found in mine leases is that dealing with Short Workings, which provides that where the Royalty Rent based on the output is less than the Minimum Rent, such difference may be recouped subsequently when the Royalty Rent exceeds the Minimum Rent. A fixed limit of time is given within which to recoup these Short Workings, or, as they are sometimes called, Redeemable Dead Rents. It should be remembered that the Landlord will not in any period receive in cash an amount less than the Minimum Rent for that period.

The entries in the Mine Books will be as follows :—

(a) Where the Minimum Rent for any particular period exceeds the Royalty Rent.

- (1) Debit Minimum Rent Account and credit the Landlord's Account.
- (2) Ascertain what the Royalty Rent amounts to, and debit the Royalties Account and credit Minimum Rent Account with the same. The Royalties Account will be written off to Profit and Loss.
- (3) The balance of the Minimum Rent Account will represent the amount by which the Dead Rent exceeds the Royalty Rent, and will be transferred to Short Workings Account, and recouped subsequently where possible.

(b) Where the Royalty Rent exceeds the Minimum Rent.

In this case the Minimum Rent Account can be dispensed with altogether, and the entries will be as follows :—

- (1) Debit the Royalties Account and credit Landlord's Account.
- (2) Credit Royalties Account and debit Profit and Loss Account.
- (3) The Landlord's Account will be closed by the payment of cash, and the adjustment of short Workings, recoverable (if any).

Where it is impossible to recoup Short Workings within the specified period, the balance of this account can no longer be treated as an asset on the Balance Sheet, but must be written off to Profit and Loss Account. In practice the balance of the Short Workings Account, although treated as an asset in the Balance Sheet, is generally reserved for to the full amount. The terms Tentail or Acreage Rents are sometimes used in place of the term Royalty Rent.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Colliery Company are lessees of a mine at a Dead Rent of £2,000 per annum, merging into a Royalty of eightpence per ton. Dead Rent paid in excess of actual Royalties is recoverable thereout during the next five years succeeding the year in respect of which such excess was paid. The first year in respect of which the Dead Rent was payable expired on 31st December, 1907. The excess paid in respect of the first year was £2,000; of the second

year £1,450; and of the third year £350. In the fourth year the actual Royalties amounted to £2,750; in the fifth year to £3,250; in the sixth year to £3,600; and in the seventh year (in consequence of a strike) to £1,850 only. Show Ledger Accounts recording these transactions in the books of the Colliery, carrying forward each year as an asset the excess of Dead Rents paid recoverable in subsequent years.

Dr.				DEAD RENT ACCOUNT.				Cr.				
1907. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1907. Dec. 31	By Short Workings	..	£	s.	d.
				2,000	0	0				2,000	0	0
1908. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1908. Dec. 31	By Royalties	..	£	s.	d.
				2,000	0	0		„ Short Workings	..	550	0	0
										1,450	0	0
				£2,000	0	0				£2,000	0	0
1909. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1909. Dec. 31	By Royalties	..	£	s.	d.
				2,000	0	0		„ Short Workings	..	1,650	0	0
										350	0	0
				£2,000	0	0				£2,000	0	0
1913. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1913. Dec. 31	By Royalties	..	£	s.	d.
				2,000	0	0		„ Short Workings	..	1,850	0	0
										150	0	0
				£2,000	0	0				£2,000	0	0

<i>Dr.</i>				ROYALTIES ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>					
1908. Dec. 31	To Dead Rent	..	..	£	s.	d.	1908. Dec. 31	By P. & L.	..	..	£	s.	d.
				550	0	0					550	0	0
1909. Dec. 31	To Dead Rent	..	..	£	s.	d.	1909. Dec. 31	By P. & L.	..	..	£	s.	d.
				1,650	0	0					1,650	0	0
1910. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1910. Dec. 31	By P. & L.	..	..	£	s.	d.
				2,750	0	0					2,750	0	0
1911. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1911. Dec. 31	By P. & L.	..	..	£	s.	d.
				3,250	0	0					3,250	0	0
1912. Dec. 31	To Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.	1912. Dec. 31	By P. & L.	..	..	£	s.	d.
				3,600	0	0					3,600	0	0
1913. Dec. 31	To Dead Rent	..	..	£	s.	d.	1913. Dec. 31	By P. & L.	..	..	£	s.	d.
				1,850	0	0					1,850	0	0

Dr.		SHORT WORKINGS ACCOUNT.										Cr.	
1907. Dec. 31	To Dead Rent	..	..	£	s.	d.	1907. Dec. 31	By Landlord	..	..	£	s.	d.
1908. Dec. 31	..	..	..	2,000	0	0	1908. Dec. 31	..	..	..	750	0	0
1909. Dec. 31	..	..	..	1,450	0	0	1909. Dec. 31	..	..	..	1,250	0	0
1913. Dec. 31	..	..	..	350	0	0	1913. Dec. 31	..	..	..	1,600	0	0
	..	..	..	150	0	0		..	..	..	350	0	0
				<u>£3,950 0 0</u>							<u>£3,950 0 0</u>		
1914. Jan. 1	To Balance	..	..	£	s.	d.							
				350 0 0									

<i>Dr.</i>			LANDLORD'S ACCOUNT.		<i>Cr.</i>		
1907. Dec. 31	To Cash	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0	1907. Dec. 31	By Dead Rent Account ..	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0		
1908. Dec. 31	To Cash	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0	1908. Dec. 31	By Dead Rent Account ..	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0		
1909. Dec. 31	To Cash	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0	1909. Dec. 31	By Dead Rent Account ..	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0		
1910. Dec. 31	To Cash „ Short Workings ..	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0 750 0 0 £2,750 0 0	1910. Dec. 31	By Royalties Account ..	£ s. d. 2,750 0 0		
1911. Dec. 31	To Cash „ Short Workings ..	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0 1,250 0 0 £3,250 0 0	1911. Dec. 31	By Royalties Account ..	£ s. d. 3,250 0 0		
1912. Dec. 31	To Cash „ Short Workings ..	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0 1,600 0 0 £3,600 0 0	1912. Dec. 31	By Royalties Account ..	£ s. d. 3,600 0 0		
1913. Dec. 31	To Cash	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0	1913. Dec. 31	By Dead Rent	£ s. d. 2,000 0 0		

§ 3.—Fire Claims for Stock.

Where a portion of the stock of a trader is destroyed by fire and the exact value thereof is unknown, the usual method of ascertaining the amount of the claim is to prepare an estimated Trading Account for the period since the last accounts were drawn out. The average rate of gross profit on turnover for past years will be ascertained, and the percentage so arrived at calculated on the sales for the particular period under review will be considered to represent the estimated gross profit for the period. The balance of the account will then show the estimated stock which was damaged and destroyed.

Any partially destroyed stock will be valued, and the amount deducted from the amount of the estimated stock. The resulting figure will represent the claim to be made against the Insurance Company.

ILLUSTRATION—

John Smith carries on business as a Timber Merchant. On 31st March, 1914, a fire occurred at his yard, and the greater portion of his stock was destroyed, the value of the portion saved being £600. His books, however, were saved, and from these it appeared that on 1st January, 1914, his stock amounted to £3,000. The purchases to 31st March were £5,000, whilst the sales were £7,200. From an examination of his accounts for the previous three years it appears that the gross profit on the sales was 25 per cent. He is insured against fire.

Prepare a Statement showing what amount he should claim from the Insurance Company.

JOHN SMITH.

Dr. Estimated Trading Account for three months ending 31st March, 1914.				Cr.			
To Stock at 1st January, 1914	£	s.	d.	By Sales.. .. .	£	s.	d.
" Purchases	3,000	0	0	" Estimated Stock	7,200	0	0
" Estimated Gross Profit, being 25 %	5,000	0	0		2,600	0	0
on £7,200	1,800	0	0				
	£9,800	0	0		£9,800	0	0

The above Account shows the Stock to be of the Estimated Value of £2,600 at the date of the fire. The value of the stock saved being agreed at £600, claim will be made against the Insurance Company for £2,000.

§ 4.—Claims for Compensation.

Professional Accountants are constantly being required to prepare Accounts substantiating claims for compensation, either for personal injuries sustained, or for damages in respect of destruction or disturbance of business.

In the case of a claim for damages in respect of personal injuries sustained, the chief points to be considered are :—

- (1) The plaintiff's actual income from his business.
- (2) The extent of the injuries sustained. If these are such as to totally disable the plaintiff from attending to his business, he will be entitled to a much larger sum by way of damages than if the disablement were only partial.
- (3) Whether the plaintiff can easily realise the full amount of the capital in his business, or whether a loss will be made.

The claim is often made by way of an Annuity.

Where the claim for compensation is on account of destruction or disturbance of business, the chief points to take into account are :—

- (1) The Loss on Trading which it is anticipated will be sustained.
- (2) If it is a question of compulsory sale of a Lease, the period and terms of the Lease.
- (3) The probable loss on Fixtures and Fittings.
- (4) The loss in respect of compulsory sale of stock (if any).
- (5) Loss of Beneficial Interest through compulsory removal.

In order to arrive at the probable loss, proper accounts will have to be prepared for the last three or four years, and the claim will be based

on between three and four years' purchase of the average profits so arrived at. Very often an additional amount is allowed to the claimant to compensate him for the compulsory sale of the premises.

ILLUSTRATION—

A. B., an Ironmonger, carried on business upwards of 15 years in premises situate in High Street, well fitted up and well stocked, held under a lease, of which nine years are unexpired, and at an annual rent of £250. The property being required for street improvements, A. B., having received due notice from the proper Authority, claims compensation for disturbance. If A. B.'s Solicitor were to instruct you to prepare a Statement of Claim, what Accounts would you prepare ?

State the grounds upon which the claims would be based, and, by means of assumed figures, make out a Statement showing the items of which it would be composed.

Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts would be prepared for three or five years, according to the circumstances of the case. The Compensation claimed would be based in respect of the following losses :—

- (1) Loss of Beneficial Interest through compulsory removal, which may or may not amount to the entire Goodwill, according to the circumstances of the case.
- (2) The present value of the lease, plus 10 per cent. for compulsory removal.
- (3) Loss on fixtures according to the facts of the case.
- (4) Loss in respect of compulsory sale of stock (if any).

The Statement of Claim might take the following form :—

STATEMENT OF CLAIM

FOR COMPENSATION IN RESPECT OF COMPULSORY REMOVAL.

	£	s.	d.
To Loss in respect of Beneficial Interest, 3 years' average net profits as per accounts enclosed ..	6,000	0	0
„ Present value of Lease, plus 10 % for compulsory removal	500	0	0
„ Loss on Fixtures	750	0	0
„ Loss in respect of compulsory sale of stock	1,000	0	0
Total Claim ..	£8,250	0	0

§ 5.—Treatment of Life Policy taken over in satisfaction of debt due.

The method of treating a Life Insurance Policy taken over in full satisfaction of a debt due will depend to a large extent on the nature of the Policy and the surrender value thereof. It may be prudent to realise the Policy and write off the difference between the amount thus obtained and the amount of the loan to Profit and Loss Account as a bad debt, or it may be advisable to keep the Policy alive by continuing to pay the annual premiums as and when they become due. In this latter case the best method is to reserve out of the profits an amount equal to the difference between the surrender value of the Policy and the

amount of the debt due, having transferred the balance of the Debtor's Account to a Policy Account.

Each year as the Premiums are paid the Policy Account will be debited therewith, and at the same time an adjusting entry will be made so as to leave the difference between the Policy Account and the Reserve Account at the actual surrender value of the Policy.

ILLUSTRATION—

F. Smith owes £1,000 to John Black for goods supplied, but as he is unable to pay the debt he agrees to assign his Life Insurance Policy to J. Black as at 1st January, 1909. The Policy is for £1,800 without profits, payable at the age of 55 or death, and carries an annual premium of £90.

Smith's present age is 47, and the Surrender value of the Policy is £607. John Black elects to keep the Policy alive by paying the annual premiums as and when they become due, and in consequence pays the first premium of £90 on the 31st December, 1909, and subsequent premiums on the same date each year.

The Surrender value of the Policy as at 31st December, 1909, was £658; at the 31st December, 1910, £720; the 31st December, 1911, £800; the 31st December, 1912, £898.

F. Smith dies on the 4th January, 1913, and the Policy money is duly paid by the Insurance Company.

Show the Accounts recording these transactions in the books of John Black.

JOHN BLACK'S LEDGER.

<i>Dr.</i>				F. SMITH'S ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>			
1909. Jan. 1	To Balance due	£	s. d.	1909. Jan. 1	By Policy Account ..	£	s. d.	1909. Jan. 1	To Balance due	£	s. d.
		1,000	0 0			1,000	0 0			1,000	0 0
		£1,000	0 0			£1,000	0 0			£1,000	0 0
<i>Dr.</i>				POLICY ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>			
1909. Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	1909. Dec. 31	By Balance	£	s. d.	1909. Dec. 31	To Balance	£	s. d.
Dec. 31	„ Cash	1,000	0 0			1,090	0 0		„ Cash	1,090	0 0
		90	0 0			£1,090	0 0			£1,090	0 0
		£1,090	0 0			£1,090	0 0			£1,090	0 0
1910. Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	1910. Dec. 31	By Balance	£	s. d.	1910. Dec. 31	To Balance	£	s. d.
Dec. 31	„ Cash	1,090	0 0			1,180	0 0		„ Cash	1,180	0 0
		90	0 0			£1,180	0 0			£1,180	0 0
		£1,180	0 0			£1,180	0 0			£1,180	0 0
1911. Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	1911. Dec. 31	By Balance	£	s. d.	1911. Dec. 31	To Balance	£	s. d.
Dec. 31	„ Cash	1,180	0 0			1,270	0 0		„ Cash	1,270	0 0
		90	0 0			£1,270	0 0			£1,270	0 0
		£1,270	0 0			£1,270	0 0			£1,270	0 0
1912. Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	1912. Dec. 31	By Balance	£	s. d.	1912. Dec. 31	To Balance	£	s. d.
Dec. 31	„ Cash	1,270	0 0			1,360	0 0		„ Cash	1,360	0 0
		90	0 0			£1,360	0 0			£1,360	0 0
		£1,360	0 0			£1,360	0 0			£1,360	0 0
1913. Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s. d.	1913. Jan. 4	By Cash	£	s. d.	1913. Jan. 4	To Balance	£	s. d.
Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account ..	1,360	0 0			1,800	0 0		„ P. & L. Account ..	1,800	0 0
		440	0 0			£1,800	0 0			£1,800	0 0
		£1,800	0 0			£1,800	0 0			£1,800	0 0

Dr.			RESERVE ON POLICY ACCOUNT.			Cr.		
1909. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ 432 0 0	1909. Jan. 1	By P. & L. Account	£ 393 0 0			
			Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account	39 0 0			
		£432 0 0			£432 0 0			
1910. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ 460 0 0	1910. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ 432 0 0			
			Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account	28 0 0			
		£460 0 0			£460 0 0			
1911. Dec. 31	To Balance	£ 470 0 0	1911. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ 460 0 0			
			Dec. 31	„ P. & L. Account	10 0 0			
		£470 0 0			£470 0 0			
1912. Dec. 31	To P. & L. Account	£ 8 0 0	1912. Dec. 31	By Balance	£ 470 0 0			
	„ Balance	462 0 0			£470 0 0			
		£470 0 0			£470 0 0			
1913. Dec. 31	To P. & L. Account	£ 462 0 0	1913. Jan. 1	By Balance	£ 462 0 0			
		£462 0 0			£462 0 0			

Note to Illustration.

It will be seen that each year an amount is debited or credited, as the case may be, to the Reserve Account, so as to leave the difference between the balance of the Policy Account and this Reserve Account at the Surrender value of the Policy.

During the year 1912 the Surrender value of the Policy increased by a greater amount than the annual premium, and in consequence an amount was written off the Reserve Account to the credit of Profit and Loss.

There are several other methods of treating Life Policies taken over in satisfaction of debts due, but the above is that recommended.

§ 6.—Treatment of Loose Plant and Tools on Re-valuation.

In an Engineering business, or concerns of a similar nature, it is customary to re-value the loose plant and tools, &c., each year, and in this way to provide for depreciation in respect thereof.

It often happens, however, that the value of this loose plant is greater at the end of the year than it is at the commencement. This is not due to appreciation in any way, but to the fact that the stock is greater at the end than at the beginning.

Such increase will arise where loose plant, &c., has been made in the works during the period, and the expenditure occasioned thereby has been

included in the total figure of materials and wages. Thus the Asset Account has not been increased as it would have been had the expenditure been directly allocated.

The best method of treating these items at the commencement and end of the period is to pass the same through the Trading Account in the same way as ordinary Stock-in-Trade, as this account has been charged with the cost by way of material and wages.

Similar treatment may apply to such items as models, patterns, &c.

ILLUSTRATION--

From the following Trial Balance of the Northern Foundry and Engineering Company, Limited, at 30th June, 1914, make up Trading Account, Profit and Loss Account, and Balance Sheet. The nominal Capital of the Company is £50,000, divided into £30,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, and 20,000 Six per Cent. Cumulative Preference Shares of £1 each.

TRIAL BALANCE 30TH JUNE, 1914.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
25,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, 16s. paid				20,000	0	0
15,000 6 % Cumulative Preference Shares of £1 each, fully paid ..				15,000	0	0
4 % First Mortgage Debentures				20,000	0	0
Freehold Land and Buildings	18,000	0	0			
Fixed Plant and Machinery	12,000	0	0			
Loose Plant and Tools, Models and Patterns, 30th June, 1913 ..	8,000	0	0			
Stock-in-Trade, 30th June, 1913	21,000	0	0			
Sales				63,400	0	0
Purchases	31,500	0	0			
Wages	17,500	0	0			
Carriage and Cartage	2,500	0	0			
Returns and Allowances	1,500	0	0			
Discounts	600	0	0			
Salaries and Travelling Expenses	3,900	0	0			
Rates, Gas, Electric Light and Water	1,400	0	0			
Printing, Stationery and Advertising	550	0	0			
Directors' Remuneration	1,500	0	0			
Trade Expenses	1,560	0	0			
Bad Debts	650	0	0			
Bank Interest and Charges	550	0	0			
Interest on Debentures to 31st December, 1913	400	0	0			
Half-year's Dividend on Preference Shares to 31st December, 1913	450	0	0			
Sundry Debtors and Creditors	10,450	0	0	6,000	0	0
Bills Receivable	2,550	0	0			
Profit and Loss Account—Balance from 1913				800	0	0
County Bank—Overdraft				11,600	0	0
Cash in hand	240	0	0			
	£136,800	0	0	£136,800	0	0

At 30th June, 1914, the Stock was valued at £28,000, and the Loose Plant and Tools, Models, and Patterns at £9,400.

Provide £450 for Bad Debts, and 1 per cent. on the Debtors for Discounts.

Write off Depreciation on Land and Buildings 1 per cent., and on Fixed Plant and Machinery 7½ per cent.

Dr. TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT, Cr.
YEAR ENDING 30TH JUNE, 1914.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
To Stock	21,000	0	0				By Sales	63,400	0	0			
„ Loose Plant and Tools, Models and Patterns ..	8,000	0	0				Less Returns and Allowances ..	1,500	0	0			
				29,000	0	0					61,900	0	0
„ Purchases				31,500	0	0	„ Loose Plant and Tools, Models and Patterns ..	9,400	0	0			
„ Wages				17,500	0	0	„ Stock	28,000	0	0			
„ Gross Profit carried down				21,300	0	0					37,400	0	0
				<u>£99,300</u>	0	0					<u>£99,300</u>	0	0
To Salaries and Travelling Expenses				3,900	0	0	By Gross Profit from Trading ..				21,300	0	0
„ Carriage and Cartage ..				2,500	0	0							
„ Rates, Gas, Electric Light and Water				1,400	0	0							
„ Printing, Stationery and Advertising				550	0	0							
„ Trade Expenses				1,560	0	0							
„ Directors' Remuneration ..				1,500	0	0							
„ Bank Interest and Charges				550	0	0							
„ Bad Debts				1,100	0	0							
„ Discount				700	0	0							
„ Interest on Debentures ..				800	0	0							
„ Depreciation:— Land and Buildings at 1%	180	0	0										
Fixed Plant and Ma- chinery 7½%	900	0	0										
				1,080	0	0							
„ Balance, being net Profit for the year carried to Balance Sheet				5,660	0	0							
				<u>£21,300</u>	0	0					<u>£21,300</u>	0	0

NOTE.—The Reserve for Discount of 1 % is calculated on the amount of the Debtors after allowing for the £450 Bad Debts.

THE NORTHERN FOUNDRY AND ENGINEERING COMPANY, LIMITED.

BALANCE SHEET 30TH JUNE, 1914.

LIABILITIES.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	ASSETS.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Nominal Capital £50,000:— Ordinary Shares, 30,000 of £1 each	30,000	0	0				Freehold Land and Buildings Less Depreciation ..	18,000	0	0			
6% Cumulative Preference Shares, 20,000 of £1 each	20,000	0	0					180	0	0	17,820	0	0
				<u>£50,000</u>	0	0	Fixed Plant and Machinery Less Depreciation ..	12,000	0	0			
Issued Capital— 25,000 Ordinary Shares £1 each, 16s. paid up ..	20,000	0	0					900	0	0	11,100	0	0
15,000 Preference Shares £1 each, fully paid	15,000	0	0				Loose Plant and Tools, Models and Patterns ..				9,400	0	0
				35,000	0	0	Stock				23,000	0	0
4% First Mortgage Deben- tures	20,000	0	0				Sundry Debtors— On Open Accounts ..	10,450	0	0			
Interest accrued thereon ..	400	0	0				Less Bad Debts ..						
				20,400	0	0	Reserve .. £450	0	0				
Bank Overdraft				11,600	0	0	Discount .. 100	0	0				
Sundry Creditors				6,000	0	0		550	0	0			
Profit and Loss Account— Balance at 1st July, 1913	800	0	0				Bills Receivable	9,900	0	0			
Add Profit for year ..	5,660	0	0					2,550	0	0	12,450	0	0
				6,460	0	0	Cash in hand				240	0	0
Less Preference Divi- dend paid	450	0	0										
				6,010	0	0							
				<u>£79,010</u>	0	0					<u>£79,010</u>	0	0

§ 7.—Voyage Accounts.

The Owner or Charterer of a ship, in addition to finding the profit or loss from carrying on his business for a period, should be in a position to ascertain the exact result of each voyage made. In order to do this it is usual to open a separate account for each voyage, the account referring to each voyage being numbered consecutively.

The Voyage Account should be charged up with all expenses actually incurred in respect of the particular voyage, and with a proper proportion of all other charges which are attributable to the voyages generally, such as Premiums on Time Policies, Manager's Remuneration, &c., and should, in the same way, be credited with the Freight and other income earned. The final balance of the account will represent the profit or loss on the voyage. Any balance brought forward from the previous voyage should be entered in an Appropriation Account, and not credited to the Voyage Account itself.

The Voyage Account will be in the form of an ordinary Profit and Loss Account.

ILLUSTRATION—

The "Glenisla" Steam Ship Company, Limited, own one "tramp steamer," the S.S. "Glenisla," 2,211 tons gross register, which was chartered on February 27th, 1914, as follows :—

Cardiff to Genoa with Coal at 8s. 9d. per ton.

NOTE.—The charter stipulates for an address commission to the charterers of 2 per cent. on the freight, payable on signing Bill of Lading, together with a brokerage of 5 per cent. to the charterers' agents, of which one-third is repayable to the vessel.

Agua Amarga (Spain) to Barrow with Ore at 8s. 3d. per ton.

NOTE.—Address commission of $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. on freight payable to charterers, and a brokerage of one-third of 5 per cent. payable to charterers' agents on signing charter.

The vessel was insured at Lloyd's on April 29th, 1913, the inclusive premium for one year being £1,952 10s. 8d., and the managing owners' remuneration was fixed by the Articles of Association at 2s. 6d. per gross register ton per annum.

§ 8.—Marine Insurance Accounts.

Marine Insurance Accounts are of an extremely technical nature, and the reader who wishes to go into the matter fully is recommended to consult the Authors' book on "*Underwriters' Accounts*" (2nd Edition, Gee & Co.).

It may be noted, however, that there are three parties to be considered in dealing with these accounts :—

- (1) The Merchant.
- (2) The Marine Insurance Broker.
- (3) The Underwriter.

When a Merchant wishes to insure a ship or cargo he communicates with the Broker, who, in his turn, consults the Underwriters as to the rate at which they will take the risk, and thus the premium is mutually agreed upon.

This Premium is subject to a brokerage of 5 per cent., which represents the remuneration of the Insurance Broker, and also a discount of 10 per cent., which is calculated on the net figure after deducting the 5 per cent. brokerage. This Discount was originally a strictly Cash Discount, and was only allowed by the Underwriter in consideration of prompt payment. Now, however, although in theory it still remains a Cash Discount, in practice it has become the custom to allow it, no matter when the account is settled.

The Discount belongs to the Merchant, and when an account is rendered to him by the Broker this is taken into consideration. The amount which the Merchant will pay to the Broker will be the gross Premium less the 10 per cent. Discount, which, however, is not calculated on the gross Premium, but on the Premium less the 5 per cent. Brokerage as mentioned previously.

When a claim is made under a Policy it is the business of the Insurance Broker to collect the amount of the loss on behalf of his client, the Merchant, from the various Underwriters *pro rata*, receiving for his labour in so doing a Commission of 1 per cent. on the total amount of the claim. Thus the Broker will collect the full amount of the loss from

the Underwriters, and hand the same over to the Merchant, less 1 per cent. Collecting Commission.

ILLUSTRATION—

The Abyssinian Steam Ship Company insure their fleet of Steamers at Lloyd's for £180,000 for the year 1914. The terms are $6\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., less Brokerage 5 per cent., Discount 10 per cent.

During the year the S.S. "Arethusa" was damaged and the Claim thereon amounted to £650. Later on in the year the S.S. "Tom Bowling," valued at £6,400, became a total wreck. The Brokers collected these claims and paid the same to the Company, deducting the usual 1 per cent. Collecting Commission.

Show the Journal Entries to record these transactions in the books of the Abyssinian Steam Ship Company, and also show the Brokers' Account.

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Insurance Account			Dr.	10,588	10	0			
To Brokers							10,588	10	0
£180,000 @ $6\frac{1}{2}$ %				11,700	0	0			
	£11,700	0	0						
Less 5 %				585	0	0			
Less 10 % on	£11,115	0	0						
				=	1,111	10	0		
							£10,588	10	0
<hr/>									
Sundries:—			Dr.						
To Repairs Account							650	0	0
Brokers				643	10	0			
Commission Account				6	10	0			
Being damage per S.S. "Arethusa" and collecting commission 1 %									
<hr/>									
Sundries:—			Dr.						
To S.S. "Tom Bowling"—Cost Account							6,400	0	0
Brokers				6,336	0	0			
Commission				64		0			
Being Total Loss S.S. "Tom Bowling" and collecting commission 1 %									

LEDGER.

Dr.		Cr.
	BROKERS' ACCOUNT.	
To Cash	£ 10,588 10 0	By Insurance Premium
" Cl.: "Arethusa"	643 10 0	" Cash
" T. L. "Tom Bowling"	6,336 0 0	" "
	£17,568 0 0	

Note to Illustration.

It should be observed that "Lloyd's" is a Corporation of which both Underwriters and Insurance Brokers are Members, in precisely the same way as Stock Brokers and Jobbers are Members of the Stock Exchange. "Lloyd's" itself does not transact Insurance business with the outside public, and consequently the transactions will take place with specific Members.

The Merchants will pay the premiums to the Insurance Broker on or before the 8th of the month following the date of the Debit Note. Consequently, in the above Illustration, the premiums will be settled by cash in the first instance, and the claims will also be settled by cash separately, as no doubt they will arise at different dates.

§ 9.—Ledger Accounts for Investments.

Where investments are numerous the interest and dividends arising therefrom should be passed through the investment accounts in the ledger, so that it can be seen at a glance whether or not all the income which should have been received on each investment has been received. The best way of carrying this into effect is to have the ledger accounts for the investments ruled with two columns on either side, one for Income and another for Capital. In the case of stocks and shares it is convenient to have a third column for the Nominal Value, so that when the balance on the Investment Account is brought down, the nominal value of the balance may also be shown. The dates when the dividend or interest falls due should be noted at the head of the account.

As the income is received, Cash will be debited and the Income column of the Investment Account credited, and, at the end of the period, the total income received from each investment will be transferred to an Income from Investments Account. In cases where the dividend at the end of the period, although accrued due, has not actually been received in cash, a debit balance should be brought forward in the income column of the Investment Account. This practice, however, should not be applied to Trust Accounts.

ILLUSTRATION—

An Investment Company held during the whole of the year 1913, among other investments, £1,000 4 per cent. Debentures costing £987 in the Phoenix Iron Company, the interest being payable on the 30th June and 31st December in each year, less Income Tax at 1s.

Show in the books of the Investment Company the Ledger Account relative to the Phoenix Iron Company investment, drafted in such a way as to enable the auditor to satisfy himself at a glance that all the interest has been collected.

THE PHOENIX IRON COMPANY FOUR PER CENT. DEBENTURE ACCOUNT.

Dr. INTEREST PAYABLE 30TH JUNE AND 31ST DECEMBER. *Cr.*

Date.	Particulars.	Fo.	Nominal Value.	Income.	Capital.	Date.	Particulars.	Fo.	Nominal Value.	Income.	Capital.
1913. Jan. 1	To Balance		£ 1,000	£	£ 987	1913. June 30	By Cash ..		£	£ 19	
Dec. 31	„ Interest on Investments Account ..			38		Dec. 31	„ Balance..		1,000	19	987
			£1,000	£38	£987				£1,000	£38	£987
1914. Jan. 1	To Balance		£1,000		£987						

It is not usual to adjust the Investment Accounts to market value at the date of each Balance Sheet, the balance being brought down at cost. In the case of Companies holding a large number of Investments, the practice is for a Schedule to be prepared, showing the book value and the market value at the date of the Balance Sheet, a general reserve being made for depreciation if the latter is less in amount than the former. If the market value exceeds the book value, no credit should be taken, as this is not a realised profit. In cases where heavy depreciation has taken place for which no provision has been made, a note of the market value of the investments should be shown on the Balance Sheet.

The profit or loss resulting on the sale of Investments should be adjusted when the sale takes place. Where only a portion of the Investment is sold, the balance of the Investment remaining should be brought down at the price at which it stood in the books, and the difference on the account will then represent profit or loss on the portion of the Investment sold, which should be adjusted accordingly.

Where Investments are sold cum. div. (which implies that the next dividend goes to the purchaser), some portion of the amount received will represent the accrued dividend on the stock sold to the date of sale, and strictly speaking the amount received should be apportioned accordingly, the amount representing accrued income to date being credited to the Income column and the balance to the capital column of the Investment Account.

In the same manner when Stocks are purchased cum. div. the portion of the purchase price representing the accrued dividend should be debited to the Income column of the Investment Account, the balance being debited to the Capital column. As the stock is purchased cum. div., the whole dividend will be received and credited to the Income column, as against which there will be a set-off on the debit of the amount accrued to the date of purchase.

ILLUSTRATION—

A Trust Company purchases £10,000 India 3 per Cent. on 19th February, 1913, at 88. On August 5th, 1913, £2,000 Stock is sold at 89 cum. div. for cash, and on September 5th, 1913, £2,000 Stock is sold at 88½ ex div. for cash. On December 31st, 1913, the date of the Balance Sheet, the market price is 87½.

Show the Ledger Account of the Investment for the year 1913, ignoring brokerage and stamps, and making apportionments in months.

INDIA THREE PER CENT.

Dr. DIVIDENDS PAYABLE 5TH JANUARY, APRIL, JULY AND OCTOBER.

Cr.

Date.		Nominal Value.	Income.	Capital.	Date.		Nominal Value.	Income.	Capital.
		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
1913.					1913.				
Feb. 19	To Cash—Purchase @ 88 c.d. ..	10,000 0 0	35 12 6	8,764 7 6	April 5	By Cash—dividend		71 5 0	
Dec. 31	„ Profit on Sale of Investments Account ..			44 5 0	July 5	„ Sale @ 89 c.d.	2,000 0 0	4 15 0	1,775 5 0
	„ Income on Investments Account ..		163 17 6		Sept. 5	„ @ 88½ exd.	2,000 0 0		1,770 0 0
					Oct. 5	„ Div. on £8,000		52 5 0	4 15 0
					Dec. 31	By Balance @ cost	6,000 0 0		5,258 12 6
		£10,000 0 0	£199 10 0	£8,808 12 6			£10,000 0 0	£199 10 0	£8,808 12 6
1914.									
Jan. 1	To Balance @ cost	£6,000 0 0		£5,258 12 6					

Note to Illustration.

The above treatment of adjusting the accrued dividend when posting the Capital items can only be utilised when the rate of dividend or interest is fixed ; otherwise the adjustment will be made when the dividend is received.

As the stock sold on August 5th is sold cum. div., the whole dividend will go to the purchaser. One month's dividend, however, will be included in the price, and should be deducted from the proceeds and entered in the Income column, the balance being entered in the Capital column.

The stock sold on September 5th being sold ex dividend, the dividend will in due course be received by the Company. When received, however, one month's dividend on the stock sold should be credited to Capital and not to Income, since the stock has only been in hand two months out of the three covered by the dividend.

The balance of stock remaining in hand will be brought down at the net cost as shown by the Capital column, and not at the cum. div. price at which it was purchased, or at Market value.

§ 10.—Tabular Ledgers:

In certain businesses considerable labour can be saved by utilising tabular Ledgers, particularly where the transactions concerned are numerous and do not vary in their nature.

The following are some of the more usual forms of Tabular Ledgers :—

(a) Purchase Day Book and Ledger combined.

It is occasionally possible where accounts are regularly settled on a fixed monthly pay-day to dispense with the Purchase Ledger altogether by having a specially ruled form of Purchase Day Book. These books

are used with very satisfactory results by several of the large Municipalities. As the invoices are received, they are filed away in alphabetical order as relating to each creditor. At the end of each month the special Purchase Day Book will be written up from the invoices in alphabetical order. Under the name of each creditor will be inserted particulars of all the invoices relating to his account in order of date, the amounts being entered in the detail column and extended in total into the total column. Any returns or allowances should be deducted from the invoices to which they relate, and the amounts of the invoice entered in the Day Book net. When the cash is paid, the amount thereof, together with the discount (if any), will be posted in one figure from the credit of cash to the cash and discount column in the Purchase Day Book opposite to the item to which it relates. Each item in the total column will be extended into the proper subsidiary column to which it refers, and the totals of these columns will be posted monthly to the respective nominal accounts.

The following is a convenient ruling for the book, with a few specimen entries :—

ILLUSTRATION—

PURCHASE DAY BOOK AND LEDGER.

Date.	Invoice No.	Creditor.	Detail.	Total Credit.	Date Paid.	C.B. Folio.	Cash and Discount.	Materials.	Packages.	Freight.	Repairs and Renewals.	Trade Expenses.
			£ s. d.	£ s. d.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
1911.					1914.							
Feb. 3	1	Aldgate & Co.										
" 7	2	Goods... ..	13 0 0									
" 21	3	"	12 0 0									
		"	5 0 0									
				30 0 0	Mar. 4	31	30 0 0	30 0 0				
" 5	4	Braid & Pierce										
" 17	5	Goods... ..	16 0 0									
		"	8 0 0									
				24 0 0	Mar. 1	31	24 0 0		24 0 0			

(b) **Rental Ledger.**

Where a considerable number of properties are held a Rental Ledger should be utilised, which may be ruled for the purpose of recording half-yearly, quarterly or weekly rentals. An illustration is given of a Quarterly Rental Ledger.

In order to enable this book to take its place in the double entry, the totals of the Rent and Allowances columns should be posted to the credit and debit of the Impersonal Accounts respectively. The total of the Arrears carried forward column at any date will represent the outstanding debtors for rent.

ILLUSTRATION—

RENTAL LEDGER.

[illegible]

(c) Electric Light, Gas or Water Rental Ledger.

The charges made by Electric Light, Gas and Water Companies are generally payable quarterly or half-yearly, and a tabular system of Consumers' Ledgers can be arranged so as to show, with a minimum of labour, the total amount due to the Company at any given date, and the amounts due by each consumer.

The following is a form of Water Rental Ledger, and similar forms can be utilised in the case of Gas or Electric Light, varied to suit the circumstances.

ILLUSTRATION—

WATER RENTAL LEDGER,
HALF-YEAR ENDING 30TH SEPTEMBER, 1913.

No. of Assessment.	Situation of Property	Description of Property.	Rateable Value.	Arrears brought forward.	Half- year's Charges.	Total Amount Due.	Date Received.	Receipt No.	Cash Received.	Empty Houses.	Other- wise Irrecover- able.	Arrears carried forward.	Total.

Note to Illustration.

In order to ascertain the Total Amount due in respect of Water charges, it will be necessary to total each page separately, such Totals being carried to a Summary Ledger. The Summary Ledger will then show the Arrears brought forward, the Half-year's charges, and the Total Amount to be collected.

The Total Amount due to the Company at any given date can be ascertained by means of a Total Account kept for each Ledger, which will be debited with the Total Amount due as shown by the Summary in the Summary Ledger, and credited with the Total Cash Paid, also with the Amounts written off for Empties and Irrecoverables. The Totals for the latter items will be obtained from the Collectors' Returns to Head Office.

The Balance due by each individual will be found on reference to his Account in the above Ledger.

Payments on account will be entered in the Cash Received Column, and where two or more payments occur in the course of any particular quarter or half-year, the second payment should be entered directly under the first in the Cash Received Column.

(d) Hotel Visitors' Ledger.

The Personal Accounts for Visitors at an Hotel can be most conveniently recorded by means of a Tabular Visitors' Ledger, which will contain similar particulars to those furnished on the Accounts rendered to visitors.

The following is a form of this Ledger :—

VISITORS' LEDGER.

Friday, 18th March, 1914.

DEBITS.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	DEBITS.	Total.
	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.	Name.		
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		
Brought for.	1 12 7										Brought for.	
Apartments ..	12 0										Apartments ..	
Board											Board, &c. ...	
Coals... ..											Coals... ..	
Breakfasts ...	7 0										Breakfasts ...	
Luncheons, &c.		4 0									Luncheons ...	
Dinners	10 0	5 0									Dinners	
Tea, Coffee,											Tea, Coffee,	
Milk	1 0	6									Milk	
Wine... ..	5 0										Wine... ..	
Spirits		1 6									Spirits	
Beer											Beer	
Minerals											Minerals	
Cigars and											Cigars and	
Cigarettes											Cigarettes	
Laundry											Laundry	
Paid out											Paid out	
&c.											&c.	
Total £	3 7 7	11 0									Total £	
<hr/>												
CREDITS.											CREDITS.	
Cash	3 7 7										Cash	
Allowances											Allowances	
Personal a/cs...											Personal a/cs...	
Bal. car. for.		11 0									Bal. car. for.	
Total £	3 7 7	11 0									Total £	

Note to Illustration.

A separate page or pages are opened for each day's transactions, and a column provided therein for each visitor, numbered with the number of his room. The amount brought forward at the commencement of the page in each column represents the balance due at the commencement of the day from the visitor concerned. When an account is settled, as in column (1) of the Illustration, the cash received is entered as a credit, and there will be no balance to be carried forward to the next day's page.

Where circumstances render it desirable, the amount due at any date from a visitor can be transferred to a Ledger Account in the Personal Ledger, and in this way taken out of the Visitors' Ledger.

The daily totals in respect of each heading, both debits and credits, will be entered in the total column on the right-hand side, and transferred to a Summary Ledger, from which can be obtained the monthly, quarterly, or half-yearly totals, as the case may be. These will be utilised for the purpose of the Impersonal Accounts.

(e) Plant Ledger.

It is sometimes advantageous to utilise a Plant Ledger for the purpose of keeping a separate account for each machine, showing the cost or value thereof, amounts spent each year on alterations and additions, on renewals and repairs, and also the amounts written off for depreciation.

The following ruling will be found convenient :—

PLANT LEDGER.**GAS ENGINE NO. 3.**

Bought 1st March, 1912, for
£840, for driving in Shed B.

Date.	Particulars.	Folio.	Cost of Valuation.	Alterations and Additions.		Repairs and Renewals.		Total.	Date.	Particulars.	Folio.	Repairs and Renewals.	Depre- ciation.	Total.
				Wages.	Materials.	Wages.	Materials.							
1913.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	1913.			£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£
July 1	To Balance as per valuation		600 0 0					600 0 0	Dec. 31	By Deprecia- tion 10 % on £600 for six months ..			30 0 0	30 0 0
Sept. 30	To alterations as per analyses			5 10 0	2 0 0			7 10 0		By Repairs A/c		4 0 0		4 0 0
Oct. 31	To Jones & Co. Repairs to cy- linders						4 0 0	4 0 0		By Balance ..		4 0 0	30 0 0	34 0 0
			600 0 0	5 10 0	2 0 0		4 0 0	611 10 0						577 10 0
														611 10 0
1914.			£ s. d.					£ s. d.						
Jan. 1	To Balance ..		577 10 0					577 10 0						

§ 11.—Loose-leaf and Card Ledgers.

Within recent years the introduction of Loose-leaf or Card Systems of Ledgers has become increasingly familiar, and in certain cases there can be no doubt that the advantages to be derived from the use of such systems are considerable.

A Loose-leaf Ledger is one, the leaves of which are not bound together in the ordinary way, but inserted in a locking apparatus in such a manner that they can be withdrawn, or new leaves inserted, by a very simple operation.

A Card Ledger involves the utilisation of separate cards for each Ledger Account, which are filed away in alphabetical order in Cabinets. As the Cards have to be withdrawn from the Cabinet for the purpose of writing upon them, it is not possible to take the same precautions against

substitution as in the case of Loose-leaf Ledgers, where the key locking the Ledger can be kept under the control of some responsible official, and the Card System should therefore not be utilised unless strict supervision is enforced.

The Card System is very much utilised for statistical purposes, such as the keeping of Stock Accounts, Cost Accounts, and for the analysis of Sales over various zones or divisions. It has been very usefully employed in the case of a Stockbroker's business, for the purpose of analysing the Purchases and Sales made on behalf of each client, so that a partner desiring to ascertain the transactions that any particular client has been concerned in, has only to call for the Card in question, when the full record of the transactions can be seen at a glance.

The following are other advantages to be derived by utilising these systems :—

- (1) The Ledgers are continuous, inasmuch as additional pages or Cards can be inserted as required, and it is therefore unnecessary to open new ledgers altogether at any one time.
- (2) Closed and dead accounts can be withdrawn from the Ledger, and filed separately. This avoids the necessity of having to keep such a large number of accounts in the Current Ledgers.
- (3) For the purposes of taking out balances or of checking postings, the sheets or cards can, if necessary, be divided up over a large number of clerks.

The disadvantages of these Systems are as follows :—

- (1) As additional leaves are inserted as required, the ledgers cannot be folioed in the ordinary manner, though this can be done to a partial extent under the heading of each letter. In any case, the Accounts must be arranged in alphabetical order, and the usual posting folios cannot appear in the books of Prime Entry.
- (2) The possibility of Sheets or Cards being accidentally lost or destroyed.

- (3) There is a danger of a fraudulent substitution of one Sheet or Card for another, in order to conceal defalcations ; or Sheets or Cards might be destroyed on purpose for a similar reason.
- (4) It is possible that Loose-leaf or Card Ledgers might not be admitted as sufficient evidence in a Court of Law, owing to the possibility of substitution ; but this need not be regarded as a serious disadvantage, since in any case there is usually some additional evidence for the entry, apart from the record in the Ledger.

As regards (2) and (3), these disadvantages may be overcome to a large extent by the introduction of proper rules and regulations, which are described in Chapter 15, § 5 (*d*), under the heading of "Internal Check."

§ 12.—Stock Exchange Transactions.

A full description of all the financial books necessary for recording the transactions of a Stockbroker's business and of the machinery employed for settlements between Members of the Stock Exchange, is not possible within the limits of this work. The books of Prime Entry are generally of elaborate design, aiming at a proper record of transactions so far as they affect persons, and at the collection of impersonal details into totals, for posting to the Nominal Accounts concerned.

The broker dealing in stocks or shares on behalf of a client either buys from, or sells to, a Jobber. In obtaining a price from the Jobber he does not intimate whether he desires to buy or sell, and the quotation given consists generally of two prices differing slightly in amount. For instance, Victoria $3\frac{1}{2}$ per Cent. might be quoted 95-95 $\frac{1}{2}$. This intimates that the Jobber is willing to buy at the lower price, or sell at the higher price.

When the transaction has been carried through, the Broker sends a Contract Note to the client. In the case of a Purchase, this is called a Bought Note, and shows the amount due from the client for the Stock

bought, plus the commission at the agreed rate, and the cost of the Contract Stamp. In the case of a Sale, it is called a Sold Note, and shows the amount due to the client for the Stock sold, less commission at the agreed rate, and the cost of the Contract Stamp.

The Commission or Brokerage is according to the official Scale, and takes the form of a percentage on the Stock or of the money, or a fixed sum per share, or in certain cases a discretionary charge.

The Client's Account is debited or credited with the various amounts due from or to him in respect of these transactions, and the balance of the account should be paid simultaneously with the delivery of the Stock upon the following Settling Day. If the Client does not wish to take up the Stock or Shares bought for him at the first Settling Day, the bargains can be carried over to the next Settling Day by arrangement with the Broker.

The stocks concerned will be carried forward to the New Account at the making-up price of the current Settlement as fixed by the Stock Exchange Committee, and only the balance of the Old Account is then due to or from the Client in cash.

The New Account, in addition to being debited with the Stock or Shares carried over, is charged with the agreed Contango, this being the consideration in the nature of Interest due to the Broker for the accommodation.

ILLUSTRATION—

S. Fuller enters into the following transactions with his Stockbrokers, H. Simpson & Co., of the London Stock Exchange:—

On the 16th July he buys £10,000 Consols at 73.

On the 20th July he buys £12,000 Midland Deferred at 68.

On the 23rd July he buys £9,000 Great Eastern Ordinary at $68\frac{1}{4}$.

On the 24th July he sells £10,000 Consols at $73\frac{1}{2}$.

On the Consols Messrs. Simpson & Co. charge a commission of one-eighth per cent. on the nominal value of the stock, and on the Railway Stocks one-quarter per cent. on the stock. At the close of the Account S. Fuller carries forward the Midland and Great Eastern stocks at 69 and $68\frac{1}{2}$ respectively, contango being charged at 5 per cent. per annum on the amount due, and the following account being a 15-day account.

Show S. Fuller's Account in Messrs. H. Simpson & Co.'s Books, ignoring Contract Stamps.

Dr.		S. FULLER.		Cr.			
		£	s. d.	£	s. d.		
July 16	To £10,000 Consols @ 73 ..	7,390	0 0	July 24	By £10,000 Consols @ 73½ ..	7,350	0 0
	Commission	12	10 0		„ Stocks carried forward :—		
					£12,000 Midland Deferred		
„ 20	„ £12,000 Midland Deferred				@ 69	8,280	0 0
	@ 68	8,160	0 0		£9,000 Great Eastern		
	Commission	30	0 0		Ordinary @ 68½ ..	6,165	0 0
„ 23	„ £9,000 Great Eastern Ordinary						
	@ 68½	6,142	10 0				
	Commission	22	10 0				
	„ Cash						

Note to Illustration.

In practice the Commission and Stamp are included with the Stock, the Client's Ledger Account only showing the total of the transaction. The contango is treated in a similar manner.

In the event of speculative transactions by a Company, such as a Finance Company, being open on the Stock Exchange at the date of the Company's Balance Sheet, the question arises as to how the liability attaching thereto should be stated.

Where Stocks have been purchased, but not paid for, being carried over to a subsequent account, it is clear that there is a liability on the part of the Company to take up this Stock, but on the other hand, they may sell it before the Settling Day, and the liability will then resolve itself into a settlement of differences, and if the transaction has resulted in a profit no liability will accrue at all. In the same manner, when Stocks have been sold which the Company does not possess, and the transaction has been carried forward, there is a liability on the part of the Company to purchase the Stock for delivery, and such purchase may have to be made at a higher rate than the price at which the stock was sold.

Until these transactions are closed, therefore, it is impossible to ascertain precisely the amount of liability attaching to them. Where the transaction has been closed before the preparation of the accounts, but after the date of the Balance Sheet, any loss which has accrued may

be provided for, and the liability can be precisely stated. Where, however, the transactions are not closed, a note should be made on the face of the Balance Sheet, to the effect that there is a contingent liability in respect of transactions open on the Stock Exchange; and where loss is expected, of which it is possible to make some estimate, a reserve should be made accordingly.

It may be noted that the operation of purchasing Stock and not taking up same, but carrying it forward in the hope of selling at a higher price, is termed to "bull" the Stock. The contrary operation of selling Stock and not delivering the same, but carrying it forward in the hope of being able to purchase at a lower price, is termed to "bear" the Stock.

§ 13.—Outstanding Costs in the Business of a Professional Man.

At the end of each financial period there will be a certain amount of uncompleted work in hand for which accounts have not been sent out to the Clients.

Before arriving at the Profit or Loss for the period under review, the value of this outstanding work should be taken into account, as the period in which the work has been done should get the benefit of the proportionate part of the fee. It is unwise to debit the Clients' Accounts until bills have been actually rendered, as this may very easily lead to confusion and difficulties.

The best method is to pass an entry through the Journal, debiting Work in Progress, and crediting Fees and Charges Account. In the narrative of this Journal entry, full details of how the amount has been arrived at, together with the names of the various clients concerned, should be given. In estimating the value of outstanding work, full allowance should be made for contingencies and possible reductions in account, and only a very conservative valuation taken into consideration.

It is not usual in practice to open a special account for Work in Progress, but to bring down a debit balance on the Fees and Charges Account. This will be brought into the Balance Sheet as an asset, under the heading of "Uncompleted Work."

ILLUSTRATION—

F. Adams started in practice as a Professional Accountant on the 1st July, 1913. He decides to prepare Accounts half-yearly, on the 30th June and 31st December in each year.

The net fees for the half-years ending 31st December, 1913, and 30th June, 1914, amounted to £487 and £621 respectively, and the uncompleted work was estimated at 31st December, 1913, to be worth £126, and at 30th June, 1914, £233.

Show the Fees and Charges Account for the two periods, bringing down as a debit balance on the account the amount of uncompleted work at the end of each period. Also show the Journal entry necessary to record the uncompleted work at 31st December, 1913.

The following is a list of clients for whom work was done during the six months ending 31st December, 1913, but to whom no accounts had been rendered ; together with the estimated value of such work :—

	£	s.	d.
P. Robinson	42	0	0
F. Smith	63	0	0
W. Fuller	5	5	0
H. Sadler	15	15	0
	<u>£126</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

<i>Dr.</i>		FEES AND CHARGES ACCOUNT.				<i>Cr.</i>			
1913. Dec. 31	To P. & L. Account ..	£	s.	d.	1913. Dec. 31	By Sundries	£	s.	d.
		613	0	0	"	" Balance for Uncompleted work	487	0	0
							126	0	0
		£613	0	0			£613	0	0
1914. Jan. 1	To Balance	£	s.	d.	1914. June 30	By Sundries	£	s.	d.
June 30	" P. & L. Account ..	126	0	0	"	" Balance for Uncompleted work	621	0	0
		728	0	0			233	0	0
		£854	0	0			£854	0	0
July 1	To Balance	£233	0	0					

JOURNAL.

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Uncompleted Work Account.. .. .	126	0	0	<i>Dr.</i>			
To Fees and Charges Account					126	0	0
Being estimated value of Uncompleted work at 31st December 1913, as follows :—							
	£	s.	d.				
P. Robinson	42	0	0				
F. Smith.. .. .	63	0	0				
W. Fuller	5	5	0				
H. Sadler	15	15	0				
	<u>£126</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>				

§ 14.—Assurance Companies' Accounts.

The Assurance Companies' Act, 1909, which came into force 1st July, 1910, repealed the Life Assurance Companies' Act, 1870, under which special forms of Account were rendered compulsory for Life Assurance Companies.

These forms were also repealed, and new forms were prescribed which appear as Schedules to the Assurance Companies' Act, 1909, and relate to Companies carrying on the following classes of business:—

- (a) Life Assurance.
- (b) Fire Insurance.
- (c) Accident Insurance.
- (d) Employers' Liability Insurance.
- (e) Bond Investment Business.

The usual Accounts take the form of a Revenue Account, Profit and Loss Account (except where the Company carries on an Assurance business of one kind only, and no other business) and Balance Sheet. The Revenue Account shows on the debit side the amount of funds at the commencement of the year, Premiums, &c.; and on the credit side, Claims, &c., and Expenses of Management.

The balance of this Account represents the amount of the funds at the end of the year, and shows as such in the Balance Sheet. It should be particularly noted that both in the Revenue Account and in the Profit and Loss Account the Income appears on the debit side, and the Expenditure upon the credit side.

The following are the forms of Account prescribed:—

SECOND SCHEDULE.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT OF THE

FOR THE YEAR ENDING

19

	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Balance of last year's Account	£	s.	d.	Dividends and Bonuses to Shareholders ..			
Interest and Dividends not carried to ..				Expenses not charged to other Accounts ..			
other Accounts				Loss realised (accounts to be specified) ..			
Less Income Tax thereon				Other payments (accounts to be specified) ..			
				Balance as per Third Schedule			
Profit realised (accounts to be specified)							
Other Receipts (accounts to be specified)							
	£				£		

THIRD SCHEDULE.

BALANCE SHEET OF THE

ON THE

19

LIABILITIES.	£	s.	d.	ASSETS.	£	s.	d.
Shareholders' Capital paid up (if any) .. £				Mortgages on Property within the United Kingdom			
Life Assurance Funds* :—				Do. do. out of the United Kingdom			
Ordinary Branch				Loans on Parochial and other Public Rates ..			
Industrial do.				Do. Life Interests			
Annuity Fund*				Do. Reversions			
Fire Insurance Fund				Do. Stocks and Shares			
Accident Insurance Fund				Do. Company's Policies within their Surrender			
Employers' Liability Insurance Fund				values			
Bond Investment and Endowment Certificate				Do. Personal Security			
Fund				Investments :—			
Marine Insurance Fund				Deposit with the High Court (Securities to be			
Sinking Fund and Capital Redemption Fund				specified)			
Profit and Loss Account				British Government Securities			
Other Funds (if any) to be specified				Municipal and County Securities, United			
	£			Kingdom			
				Indian and Colonial Government Securities ..			
Claims admitted or intimated but not paid† ..				Do. Provincial Securities			
Life Assurance				Do. Municipal do.			
Fire Insurance				Foreign Government Securities			
Bond Investment				Do. Provincial Securities			
				Do. Municipal do.			
Annuities due and unpaid†				Railway and other Debentures and Debenture			
Other sums owing by the Company† (to be stated				Stocks—Home and Foreign			
separately under each class of business).. ..				Railway and other Preference and Guaranteed			
				Stocks			
				Do. Ordinary Stocks			
				Rent Charges			
				Freehold Ground Rents			
				Leasehold do.			
				House Property			
				Life Interests			
				Reversions			
				Agents' Balances			
				Outstanding Premiums†			
				Do. Interest, Dividends, and Rents† ..			
				Interest accrued but not payable†			
				Bills Receivable			
				Cash :			
				On Deposit			
				In Hand and on Current Account			
				Other Assets (to be specified)			
	£				£		

* Life Companies having separate annuity fund to show amount thereof separately.

† These items are or have been included in the corresponding items in the First Schedule.

NOTE 1.—When part of the assets of the Company are specifically deposited, under local laws, in various places out of the United Kingdom, as security to holders of Policies there issued, each such place and the amount compulsorily lodged therein must be specified in respect of each class of business, except that, in the case of fire, accident, or Employers' Liability Insurance business, it shall be sufficient to state the fact that a part of the assets has been so deposited.

NOTE 2.—A Balance Sheet in the above Form must be rendered in respect of each separate Fund for which separate Investments are made.

NOTE 3.—The Balance Sheet must state how the values of the Stock Exchange securities are arrived at, and a Certificate must be appended, signed by the same persons as sign the Balance Sheet, to the effect that in their belief the assets set forth in the Balance Sheet are in the aggregate fully of the value stated therein, less any Investment Reserve Fund taken into account. In the case of a Company transacting Life Assurance business or Bond Investment business, this Certificate is to be given on the occasions only when a statement respecting valuation under the Fourth Schedule is made.

NOTE 4.—In the case of a Company required to keep separate funds under section 3 of this Act, a Certificate must be appended, signed by the same person as signed the Balance Sheet, and by the Auditor, to the effect that no part of any such fund has been applied, directly or indirectly, for any purpose other than the class of business to which it is applicable.

Every Assurance Company must, once in every five years, or at such shorter intervals as may be prescribed by its regulations, cause an investigation to be made into its financial position, including a valuation of its Liabilities by an Actuary. In the case of Life Companies it is necessary to make an Actuarial Valuation of the net Liabilities outstanding before arriving at the profits, and it is therefore only possible to ascertain these exactly when the Valuation Balance Sheet above referred to is prepared. The excess of the Life and Annuity Funds over the net liability on Life Assurance and Annuity transactions is then regarded as profit. Such profit is usually divided in certain proportions between the Policyholders and the Shareholders, the proportion going to the former being termed a bonus.

In the case of Mutual Companies, the whole of the profit goes to the Policyholders.

This method of ascertaining a profit is similar to the principle of ascertaining profit under Single Entry. It must not be supposed, however, that the Accounts of these companies are kept by Single Entry, and the term in this connection is really a misnomer. The profit having been arrived at in the above manner by actuarial calculation, is dealt with on the principle of Double Entry, by debiting Life Assurance Account and crediting Profit and Loss Account.

Double Entry is not only applicable to Life Insurance Companies' Accounts, but is the only system under which they can be properly recorded.

The following is the form of Valuation Balance Sheet prescribed :—

(Form referred to under Heading No. 7 in Fourth Schedule (A).)

Dr.	VALUATION BALANCE SHEET OF	AS AT	19	Cr.
	£			£
To net Liability under Life Assurance and Annuity transactions (as per Summary Statement provided in Fourth Schedule (A))		By Life Assurance and Annuity Funds (as per Balance Sheet under Schedule 3)		
To Surplus (if any)		By Deficiency (if any)		
	£			£

Dr.		REVENUE ACCOUNT.				Cr.	
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
Amount of Life Assurance Fund at the beginning of the year ..	1,730,292	11	5	Claims under Policies paid and outstanding (after deduction of sums Re-insured) :—			
Premiums (less paid for Re-insurances)	132,302	8	8	By Death	77,897	8	1
Consideration for Annuities granted Interest, Dividends and Rents received	2,014	1	9	By Maturity	28,914	15	4
Fines and Fees received	64,709	4	0				
	79	11	11	Surrenders			106,812 3 5
				Annuities			8,692 8 3
				Bonuses Paid			12,670 15 1
				Commission			85,841 2 11
				Expenses of Management :—			4,004 10 0
				Medical Fees	800	0	0
				Directors' Remuneration ..	2,381	12	6
				Auditors' Fees	152	10	0
				Actuary's Fee (consulting) ..	35	0	0
				Salaries and Income Tax ..	8,155	6	6
				Printing, Rent, &c.	4,998	17	8
							16,523 6 8
				Amount of Life Assurance Fund at the end of the year, as per Third Schedule			1,694,853 11 5
	£1,929,397	17	9				£1,929,397 17 9

§ 15.—Accounts of Charitable Institutions.

The accounts of Charitable Institutions present no outstanding features of any difficulty, and it is proposed here to deal merely with various forms and books of account which necessitate special rulings.

(a) Specified Forms of Accounts.

In connection with Hospital Accounts, those institutions receiving grants from the King Edward's Hospital Fund for London, the Metropolitan Hospital Sunday Fund, and the Hospital Saturday Fund, are required to prepare accounts in a specified form.

The Income and Expenditure Account is so arranged that the various sources of income and expenditure, both ordinary and extraordinary, may be clearly seen and readily compared with those of previous periods. The Income is shown on the debit side, and the Expenditure on the credit side, reversing the usual practice.

The official forms of both Income and Expenditure Account and Balance Sheet are copyright, and are reproduced here by permission.

INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDING THE 31st DECEMBER, 19

Dr.

Revised Form, February, 1909.

Cr.

INCOME.		£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
A. ORDINARY:—						
I. ANNUAL SUBSCRIPTIONS (see page)...						
II. DONATIONS (see page) ..						
Boxes (see page) ..						
III. KING EDWARD'S HOSPITAL FUND FOR LONDON						
IV. HOSPITAL SUNDAY FUND ..						
V. HOSPITAL SATURDAY FUND ..						
VI. CONGREGATIONAL COLLECTIONS (apart from Hospital Sunday Fund) ..						
VII. WORKMEN'S COLLECTIONS (apart from Hospital Saturday Fund)...						
VIII. ENTERTAINMENTS (the gross proceeds of Festivals, Bazaars, Dinners, or other Entertainments for general purposes to be separately shown here)						
IX. INVESTED PROPERTY—						
Dividends ..						
Rents ..						
Income Tax Returned ..						
Interest on Deposit or Current Account ..						
X. NURSING INSTITUTION—						
Private Nurses ..						
Nurses' and Probationers' Fees ..						
XI. PATIENTS' PAYMENTS—						
In-Patients ..						
Out-Patients ..						
XII. OTHER RECEIPTS—						
TOTAL ORDINARY INCOME ..						
EXPENDITURE.						
A. MAINTENANCE:—						
I. PROVISIONS—						
1. Meat ..						
2. Fish, Poultry, &c. ..						
3. Butter, Bacon, &c. ..						
4. Eggs ..						
5. Milk ..						
6. Bread, Flour, &c. ..						
7. Grocery ..						
8. Vegetables and Fruit ..						
9. Malt Liquors ..						
10. Aerated Water and Ice ..						
II. SURGERY AND DISPENSARY—						
1. Drugs, Chemicals, Disinfectants, &c. ..						
2. Dressings, Bandages, &c. ..						
3. Instruments and Appliances ..						
4. Wines and Spirits ..						
5. Sundries.. ..						
III. DOMESTIC—						
1. Renewal and repair of Furniture ..						
2. " " Bedding and Linen ..						
3. " " Hardware, Crockery, Brushes, &c. ..						
4. Washing done off Hospital premises (average weekly number of articles)* ..						
5. Cleaning and Chandlery ..						
6. Water ..						
7. Fuel and Lighting—						
(a) Coal ..						
(b) Gas ..						
(c) Electric Current ..						
(d) Oil, Wood, &c. ..						
8. Uniforms (Nurses', Porters', &c.) ..						
9. Sundries ..						
IV. ESTABLISHMENT—						
1. Insurance ..						
2. Renewals and Repairs ..						
3. Annual Cleaning ..						
4. Garden ..						
V. SALARIES, WAGES, &c.—						
1. Medical ..						
2. Dispensing ..						
3. Nursing ..						
4. Other Officers ..						
5. Mechanics, &c. ..						
6. Porters ..						
7. Domestic Servants ..						
8. Scrubbers ..						
9. Pensions.. ..						

* In cases where the whole or any part of the washing is done on Hospital premises insert "See Return on p. " or "See also Return on p. " as the case may be.

ILLUSTRATION—

BALANCE SHEET, 31st DECEMBER, 19 .

REVISED FORM, FEBRUARY, 1909.

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
1. TO SUNDRY CREDITORS :— (To include all Tradesmen's unpaid accounts and accrued liabilities.)							1. BY CASH AT BANK AND IN HAND :— (a) Generally on account of the Hospital (b) On account of Special Funds— (Separating uninvested or unexpended Capital from unexpended Income Balances.)						
2. „ LOANS TO HOSPITAL :— (To be detailed.)							2. „ SUNDRY DEBTORS :—						
3. „ CAPITAL ACCOUNTS :— (A) For Special Purposes— (a) Hospital Endowments : (b) Other Special Purposes : (B) For Buildings and Equipment— (c) For General Purposes—							3. „ INVESTMENTS ON CAPITAL ACCOUNTS :— (As detailed on pages) (A) For Special Purposes— (a) Hospital Endowments .. (b) Other Special Purposes .. (B) For Buildings and Equipment .. (c) For General Purposes ..						
4. „ UNEXPENDED INCOME BALANCES OF SPECIAL FUNDS :— (To be detailed.)							4. „ INVESTMENTS IN RESPECT OF UNEXPENDED INCOME :—						
5. „ *INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT :— Balance at Jan. 1, 19 Add Excess for year to Dec. 31, 19							5. „ LAND, BUILDINGS AND EQUIPMENT OF THE HOSPITAL :— (State separately where practicable : Expenditure from 19 to Dec. 31, 19 Expenditure during the year ending Dec. 31, 19						
	£							£					

* NOTE.—This Account will be stated on the other side should it show a deficit.

MEMORANDUM.

If amounts have, by due authority, been lent to the Hospital out of any of its other funds to General Purposes Fund, the loan should appear as a liability on the left-hand side of the Balance Sheet, and as an Investment of the Fund on the right-hand side.

The Investments of the Funds should be set out on the Balance Sheet in detail, or, if numerous, should appear in a Schedule, to which reference should be made in the Balance Sheet.

If the Hospital has landed property or estates, their cost, and the Funds with which they were acquired, should be stated in the Balance Sheet ; but in many cases this is impossible, either because the estates themselves have been given without valuation to the Hospital, or because the necessary information is not now available, and the same difficulty may occur in the case of the Site, Buildings or appliances of the Hospital itself ; in which cases the following note, or a modification thereof, will be necessary :—

The following property is not included in the Balance Sheet—(a) The Site, Buildings, Furniture, and Appliances of the Hospital, or (b) Landed Property and Estates, particulars of which are set out in Schedule page .

In the case of landed property or estates an Account should, however, be published, showing the year's Income received from the Property, and the Expenses of Management and Collection, &c., leaving a balance to be carried to the Income and Expenditure Account, or to a Special Fund, as the case may be.

This form is reprinted by permission from p. 19 of the uniform system of Hospital Accounts as revised and adopted by King Edward's Hospital Fund for London, the Metropolitan Hospital Sunday Fund, and the Hospital Saturday Fund (second edition, February, 1909), published by George Barber, 23, Fumival Street, Holborn, London, E.C. Full explanations will be found in the above-mentioned publication.

(b) **Columnar Cash Book.**

It is very convenient for Charitable Institutions to have Cash Books ruled in such a way that the subscriptions and donations, &c., can be posted in total instead of in detail, thus saving considerable labour in book-keeping.

The following is a convenient ruling, and is equally suitable for a Hospital as well as for other Charitable Institutions.

It may be necessary, however, in the case of Hospitals, to have an additional column on the debit side for "Patients' Payments."

The columnar system can be extended to the credit side of the Cash Book where desirable.

ILLUSTRATION—

[illegible]

(c) **Subscription Register.**

As the Revenue of most Charitable Institutions is dependent upon voluntary contributions, consisting of annual subscriptions and donations, it is very essential to keep a Register showing at a glance the names and addresses of the annual subscribers, with the amounts promised. The particulars contained in this Register render comparison with the annual subscriptions comparatively easy, and to a certain extent acts as a check upon their collection. Moreover, the published list of subscriptions can be very easily prepared therefrom.

The following is a convenient ruling :—

ILLUSTRATION—

SUBSCRIPTION REGISTER.

Name.	Address.	1912		1913		1914		1915		1916	
		Date rec'd.	Amount.	Date rec'd.	Amount.	Date rec'd.	Amount.	Date rec'd.	Amount.	Date rec'd.	Amount.

(d) Purchase Journal.

In nearly all Hospitals a specially ruled Purchase Journal is essential, to enable the Governors or Trustees to know each month the totals of the goods purchased, and the analyses of the same. The classification of purchases should be such as to comply with the King Edward's Hospital Fund requirements.

The following is a convenient ruling, which can be modified according to circumstances :—

ILLUSTRATION—

PURCHASE JOURNAL.

Date.	Name.	Particulars.	No. of In- voice.	Folio.	Total.			Provisions.			Surgery and Dispensary.			Domestic.			Establish- ment.			Miscella- neous.			Repairs and Building Improve- ments.		
					£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.

16.—Treatment of Share Profits.

In the case of Finance Companies which are concerned with the promotion and flotation of other Companies, a considerable portion of the consideration for sale usually takes the form of Shares in the New Company fully paid up. In many cases the Shares so obtained are not quoted on the Stock Exchange, or if so quoted the price is an artificial one, and has no relation to their actual value. The best method of entering these transactions in the books of the Finance Company is to bring these Shares in at cost, such cost being the difference between the expenditure on the promotion and the portion of the consideration for sale received in cash. If the Shares are not worth this cost value, reserve should be made accordingly.

The principle of bringing these Shares into the Company's books at a valuation made by the Directors, or at their par value, is much to be deprecated, even though corresponding reserves may be made against such values, since this has the effect of making the position appear to be much stronger than is actually the case. Moreover, such reserves, if shown on the liability side of the Balance Sheet, may be manipulated improperly in future years.

When any of the Shares are sold, the profit or loss on realisation should be adjusted. In these transactions only realised profits should be distributed in cash dividends, due regard being had to the adequacy of the reserves against loss on realisation of the shares remaining unsold.

An alternative method to bringing these shares in at cost is to include them at their par value, and show the Profit and Loss Account in two columns relating to Cash and Shares respectively; the balance on the Cash column showing the Cash Profit or Loss during the period, and the balance on the Share column showing the Share Profit. In cases where it is proposed to distribute the dividend in scrip, this method is certainly the most convenient.

In any event the principle on which these Shares have been dealt with should be clearly disclosed by the Accounts.

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTER XV.

INTERNAL CHECKS.

§ 1.—THE NECESSITY OF A SOUND SYSTEM OF INTERNAL CHECK.

2.—DEFINITION OF INTERNAL CHECK.

3.—CLASSIFICATION OF INTERNAL CHECKS.

- (a) Physical Checks.
- (b) Mechanical Checks.
- (c) Theoretical or Intellectual Checks.

4.—CASH.

- (a) General Cash Receipts.
- (b) Travellers' Remittances.
- (c) General Cash Payments.
- (d) Authority for Payment, trade or otherwise.
- (e) Wages.
 - (1) Time-Workers.
 - (2) Piece-Workers.
 - (3) Time-Workers' Wages Sheets.
 - (4) Piece-Workers' Wages Sheets.
 - (5) Payment of Wages.
- (f) Petty Cash.

5.—THE LEDGERS.

- (a) General Index to Ledgers.
- (b) Distinguishing Labels.
- (c) The Sub-division of Ledgers.
- (d) Loose-leaf Ledgers.
- (e) Sectional Balancing.
- (f) Statements.
- (g) Press Cuttings Index.
- (h) Bad Debts.

6.—PURCHASES.

7.—PURCHASE RETURNS.

8.—SALES.

9.—SALES RETURNS.

10.—PACKAGES AND EMPTIES.

- (a) Packages charged up.
- (b) Packages not charged up.

11.—COST ACCOUNTS.

12.—STOCK.

- (a) Valuation.
 - (1) Raw Materials.
 - (2) Goods in Course of Manufacture.
 - (3) Finished Goods.
- (b) Method of Stock-taking.

CHAPTER XV.

INTERNAL CHECKS.

§ 1.—The Necessity of a Sound System of Internal Check.

It is of the utmost importance that every business should have in operation a sound system of Internal Check.

There are two reasons for this :—

- (1) From the point of view of the business.

It is imperative that the duty of each clerk should be clearly defined, and his work properly supervised ; so that the business in question may cope with its current transactions promptly and exactly, expand its connection without disorganisation, and trade under the advantage of method and system such as will guarantee clockwork regularity.

Without system and order, success in business is well-nigh impossible, and any professional Accountant whose experience extends to liquidation and bankruptcy work will bear witness to the truth of this statement.

- (2) From an Auditor's point of view.

The practical value of an audit very often depends largely upon the merits of the system in operation, because there are many instances where a deficiency of organisation or method cannot be made good, even by the most skilful investigation of accounts.

§ 2.—Definition of Internal Check.

The phrase " Internal Check " indicates some system of organisation aiming to secure as far as possible :—

- (1) Accuracy of all records contained in all the books, including those outside the double entry.
- (2) Correctness of book-keeping.
- (3) Speedy detection of fraud, and thus the prevention of fraud.

If the work is soundly organised upon scientific and economical principles, the attainment of these objects can only be defeated by collusion between the members of the staff.

§ 3.—Classification of Internal Checks.

Internal checks may be classified into three distinct groups, under the headings of “Physical,” “Mechanical,” and “Theoretical or Intellectual” checks, and a complete system may consist of all or any of them.

(a) Physical Checks.

These are brought about by the actual operation of one material thing upon another, in which operation at least two persons are concerned.

Examples :—

- (1) Two keys held by different persons, without both of which keys a safe or deed box cannot be opened.
- (2) A Time-recording Clock.
- (3) A Cash Register.

In the case of a time-recording clock or cash register, a responsible person alone should have control of the records contained therein, to which the persons operating the machine should have no access.

(b) Mechanical Checks.

These are brought about by machinery of infallible or certain action, operated by one person.

Examples :—

- (1) A Calculating Machine.
- (2) An Elliott Fisher Typewriter.

In the operation of either of the above only one person is concerned, but, as explained subsequently, these checks may satisfactorily form part of the general system of internal check.

(c) Theoretical or Intellectual Checks.

These are brought about by one or more persons performing or abstaining from performing certain portions of the work, in accordance with a defined plan.

Examples :—

- (1) Two clerks calling over the postings of a Ledger in which they have made no entries.
- (2) A Cashier abstaining from making entries in any of the Ledgers.

Theoretical checks are the most important of the three classes from the point of view of the science of accounting.

The general system of internal check should extend to cover every transaction which the business enters into, whether this involves Cash, Securities, Bills, Stock, Purchases, Sales, Returns, Wages, or any other class of dealing. The system should be complete in itself, automatic in its working, and in no way dependent upon the audit.

To many persons it may appear that the system here advocated would involve expenditure wholly out of proportion to the benefits obtained, and prove in its operation extravagant to the particular business, but this is not the case.

It is, of course, essential in these days of growing competition to keep the working expenses at as low a level as is consistent with efficiency, but it is quite possible for a business, without in any way increasing its staff, to so arrange the work of each employee that an efficient system *ipso facto* comes into operation. Further, it should be noted that the most up-to-date firms always pay particular attention to the perfection of their internal organisation, and these are the very firms that work on the most economical lines. Good management pays for itself over and over again, by preventing waste, overstaffing of the business, and fraud; to say nothing of clerical errors and dishonesty on the part of the employees, both as to their work and as to monetary matters. As regards the latter, the knowledge of certain detection in a very short space of time is in itself a great moral check, which has a very salutary influence over the whole staff.

The subject has been dealt with in the following pages as affecting a manufacturing business, since this affords the widest application of the principles involved.

§ 4.—Cash.

Dealing firstly with the cash and the cashier's duties, the system of internal check controlling the same should be most complete, and the following is a suggestion which has satisfactorily stood the test of practical application.

The chief duties of a cashier should be as follows :—

- (1) To take charge of all cash receipts, and see that they are paid into the bank daily.
- (2) To make all payments, with the exception of petty cash disbursements.
- (3) To pay the wages.
- (4) To write up the Cash Book, and reconcile the same with the Bank Pass Book at least monthly.
- (5) To make no entries whatsoever in any Ledger, or in any of the books of prime entry (particularly the wages book).

(a) General Cash Receipts.

- (1) Each morning the letters should be opened by the Secretary of the Company, or some other responsible official, who should immediately stamp all cheques, postal orders, and other remittances with an indiarubber stamp, giving the name of the bank with which the firm deals, the name of the account, and the words "Not negotiable," so as to render the remittance valueless to anyone save the firm itself.
- (2) The responsible official should then call these remittances to a clerk, who should enter the same in a diary, and after they have been checked the diary should be initialled by both parties.

- (3) The remittances should then be handed to the cashier.
- (4) A clerk who has had nothing to do with entering the remittances into the diary should take that book, and make out counterfoil receipts where necessary. (This is not usually done, however, in the case of travellers' remittances.) The same clerk should also make out the counterfoil of the Paying-in Book.
- (5) Each day the cashier should take the cheques, postal orders, &c., received during that day, and type particulars thereof by means of a calculating machine on the other half of the Paying-in Book, getting the total automatically, which should, of course, agree with the total arrived at by the clerk who entered up the counterfoil portion of the book. In this way a mechanical check is successfully introduced into the general system of internal check.
- (6) A clerk having taken no part in the previous operation should then take the remittances to the bank.

From the above it will be seen that, subject to any adjustments (such as, for instance, with regard to post-dated cheques), the daily cash receipts are made up and agreed three times, viz. :—

- (1) With the total of the Diary.
- (2) With the total of the Paying-in Book as made out by the clerk.
- (3) With the total of the Paying-in Book as made out by the cashier with the calculating machine.

(b) Travellers' Remittances.

As a general rule, the customers of the firm should be requested to forward remittances direct to the Head Office of the business, and the system of sending round travellers to collect debts should be resorted to only in special cases or under special circumstances. It generally happens, however, that there are reasons why the debts of certain customers should be collected by travellers, and consequently special precautions have to be taken to see that all cash collected in this way is properly accounted for.

The following are a few of the more important points to be noted in order to bring these travellers' remittances under the general scheme of internal check :—

- (1) A guarantee policy of insurance should be taken out for each traveller.
- (2) The authority of each traveller for collecting debts should be strictly limited to cases where arrangements have been made that he should do so, and to cases where he receives special instructions from the Head Office. The limit of credit given to these customers should be definitely fixed and enforced.
- (3) Each traveller should be allotted two counterfoil receipt books for alternate weeks, and when remitting the same to the Head Office at the end of each week, he should enclose a statement showing particulars of the cash collected during that week. The cash should be remitted daily by the traveller, together with a short statement showing from whom it was collected.

The travellers should not be allowed to deduct their expenses from the amounts collected, but should send in periodically a statement to the Head Office, showing full particulars of these disbursements. The Head Office, after checking such statements, should forward to the particular traveller a special cheque therefor.

As an additional safeguard, some firms treat the receipts given by the traveller as interim receipts, and arrange for a formal receipt to be sent subsequently from the Head Office. This is, however, duplicating the work, and, although an excellent check, is not often adopted in practice.

- (4) The cash when received by the Head Office will pass through the Diary in the ordinary course, and will be paid into the bank as described in the paragraph dealing with general cash receipts.
- (5) The Head Office should carefully watch all the accounts where the remittances pass through the hands of travellers; and if any of such accounts are not promptly settled in accordance

with the terms of credit, application should at once be made direct from the Head Office.

- (6) A clerk other than the cashier should check the weekly statements of the various travellers with the counterfoil Receipt Books, also with the Ledger Accounts, seeing that the amounts are correct, and actually represent payment for goods delivered. It will be necessary to check these statements also with the Cash Book, in cases where the cash has not yet been posted to the Ledger. The clerk doing this work should initial each statement when it has been completely checked.

(c) **General Cash Payments.**

✓ As a general rule, all cheques should be crossed “& Co., A/c Payee only—Not Negotiable,” in order to render them valueless to all except the firm to whom the payment is made.

Receipts should be required for all payments, except wages, but including salaries of clerks, and directors' fees if the business is a limited Company.

The Cheque Book should be kept under lock and key, and the cashier who draws the cheques should under no circumstances be given the procuration of the firm for the purpose of signing cheques.

The following are points to be noted in dealing with the cash payments :—

- (1) All payments should be made by cheque, and there should be a fixed day set apart fortnightly or monthly for the payment of accounts.
- (2) As soon as the cashier receives the various statements for payment, he should go to the invoice file (where the invoices entered in the Day Book should be placed in alphabetical order), and take out those invoices referring to the particular statement under consideration. He should most carefully note that proper

references and initials are shown upon these invoices, and should check the same with the statement, deducting therefrom the proper discounts allowed. The invoices should then be fastened to the statement.

- (3) The cashier should refer to the account in the particular Bought Ledger concerned, to see that the amount agrees, subject to cash discount, with the statement. He should also see whether there is any contra account in any of the Sold Ledgers, and, if so, he should deduct the amount due to the firm from the amount shown on the statement to be due by the firm.
- (4) The statement is then in order, and the cheque can be drawn. The director or partner signing the cheque has thus all the information before him to enable him to ascertain exactly the goods in respect of which the cheque is payable.
- (5) The receipts should be dealt with by a separate clerk, and not by the cashier; and they should be filed away in the order of the Cash Book, with the statement and invoices attached, marked with a number corresponding to that shown against the entry of payment in the Cash Book.
- (6) It is useful to show against each payment in the Cash Book the number of the cheque in red ink, so that the same can be traced with facility if necessary.

It will be seen from the above that this method of dealing with invoices is excellent from the point of view of the business itself, although from an Auditor's point of view it is not possible to vouch the Purchase Day Book with the same readiness as if the invoices were filed in consecutive order. However, it should not be difficult to thoroughly test, and, if necessary, to entirely check these invoices with the prime entries, because the Day Book references should be clearly marked upon the invoices.

As regards vouching the cash receipts, the system will be found extremely satisfactory to the Auditor.

(d) **Authority for Payments, Trade and otherwise.**

Only certain responsible officials should be permitted to sanction the payment of trade accounts ; and, in every case where such sanction is given, the initial of the responsible official passing the account for payment should be appended to the account, in addition to that of the cashier and other persons who may have assisted in the checking of the account.

Where exceptional payments are concerned—such as Gifts, Charitable Donations, Commissions and the like—the authority for passing the same should be reserved by the principals of the business, or only delegated under very exceptional circumstances. In the case of a Limited Company, a Minute of the Board is very desirable to sanction large payments of this nature.

(e) **Wages.**

A very large percentage of the defalcations which are brought to light in the case of manufacturing concerns have their origin in the payment of wages. Consequently it is of great importance to have a thoroughly sound system of Internal Check in operation, and in order to prevent collusion, as many clerks as may be found convenient should be engaged in the preparation, checking and re-checking of the Wages Sheets. Too much emphasis cannot be placed on this, as time after time clerks who have enjoyed the fullest confidence of their employers, and who have been unwisely entrusted with almost the entire responsibility of paying the wages, have proved themselves unworthy of their fiduciary position.

There are two points in connection with the wages which should be noted :—

- (1) That the audit of the Wages Sheets is, in the majority of cases, of little value unless a sound internal check is in operation.
- (2) That, however perfect the internal check may be, a great moral responsibility rests with the employers or chief officers of the business to see that the system is properly carried out in all its details.

The following system embodies the various points enumerated above :—

(1) *Time-Workers.*

There should be either a gate-keeper or time-recording clock to record the exact times of workpeople entering and leaving the business. The foreman of each department should also record the time of workpeople entering and leaving the shops. The work performed by each workman should be entered up daily by him on a card, and this card should be initialled by his particular foreman.

The time records of each foreman, together with the gate record, should be sent to the counting-house daily.

There are a number of time-recording clocks upon the market. Most of these are fitted with records not accessible to the workman, except to the limited extent which enables him to enter his times. Such machines, therefore, fall within the category of “physical” checks.

(2) *Piece-Workers.*

Times should be recorded as above, in order to ensure punctuality. The work performed by each workman should be entered by him on a card, as in the case of time-workers, and this should be initialled by the foreman or viewer for piece-work, and will form the basis of the wages. All the cards, both for time- and piece-workers, should be passed through the Work in Progress Office, so that the wages can be properly allocated over the various accounts in the Cost Ledger.

The particulars contained on the piece-workers’ cards, having been checked in the Work in Progress Office, should be summarised, and the summary sent to the counting-house daily

There should be a separate Wages Sheet for both time- and piece-workers, and the procedure for compiling these, after the

above-mentioned records have been received in the counting-house, should be as follows :—

(3) *Time-Workers' Wages Sheets.*

- (1) Two clerks should compare each foreman's Time Sheets with the record obtained at the gate. This work should be performed daily.
- (2) Another clerk should enter upon the Wages Sheets the names, rates of pay, particulars of any deductions, and the number of hours worked by each man daily. These particulars should agree with the foreman's Daily Time Sheets.
- (3) A Time Summary Book should be kept, showing the total amount of time worked by each man employed during the week. This book should be sent to the counting-house at the end of each week, and each man's time agreed in total with the Wages Sheets as to the number of hours worked. If the two cannot be reconciled, it may be necessary to check in detail the time of each man in order to effect an agreement.
- (4) A separate clerk should work out and enter up the net amount due to each man, and cast the sheets.
- (5) Another clerk should check these calculations.

(4) *Piece-Workers' Wages Sheets.*

- (1) The cards allotted to piece-workers should be readily distinguished from those of time-workers.
- (2) As each piece-worker completes his portion of the work upon a certain number of articles, the same should, where possible, be taken to the storekeeper, who should record particulars thereof and give out to the next workman concerned. If the articles are completely finished, they should be taken into store.
- (3) The cards (which should contain full details of the work done and bear the initial of the foreman or viewer) should be summarised by the clerks in the Work in Progress Office, as already stated.

The summary should be sent to the counting-house, signed as correct by the persons responsible for its compilation, and countersigned by the manager of the Work in Progress Office. A counting-house clerk should check the summary with the storekeeper's record of goods taken in, and should initial the same as correct, if found to be in order.

- (4) The Wages Sheets should then be prepared from the summary, the procedure in entering up, checking calculations and re-checking being carried out upon the same lines as those already described in the case of Time-Workers' Wages Sheets.

(5) *Payment of Wages.*

Each man concerned in the preparation of the Wages Sheets should sign for the work he has done, and finally they should be countersigned as a whole by the manager, a partner, or a director.

The payment of the wages should be made by the cashier, who should have had no connection with the work described above. He should check the additions of the sheets, and should analyse the total amount into sovereigns, half-sovereigns, silver and copper, and should then draw a cheque for the exact amount required. The wages should be paid by the cashier, in the presence of a responsible person able to identify the men. Each man should attend personally to receive his money, special arrangements, which should be rigidly adhered to, being made for absentees.

As a general rule it is not possible to obtain receipts for wages, but the signatures of the cashier and the responsible person in whose presence the wages are paid are usually considered sufficient evidence of payment.

(f) *Petty Cash.*

In every manufacturing business the amount of cash passing through the petty cashier's hands should be reduced to a minimum, and confined entirely to those cases where the payment cannot conveniently be made by cheque. The Petty Cash Book should be ruled in columnar form, and the columns headed according to the particular requirements of each case. There should always be a Ledger column, however, which should

be used for special items for which there is no specific subsidiary column, and this should have a folio column attached, so that the entries of a special nature can be posted in detail to the debit of the particular accounts to which they refer.

The totals of the other columns should be posted monthly or quarterly, after the entries in the book have been thoroughly checked. The Petty Cash Book thus becomes in effect a Ledger Account as well as a book of prime entry, and the balance representing cash in hand should be taken into the General Trial Balance.

The following points should be noted and carried out, so as to include the petty cash in the general system of internal check :—

- (1) The petty cashier should be a responsible clerk.
- (2) No payments should be made unless the demand is accompanied by a proper voucher signed by the payee, and duly approved by a responsible official.
- (3) Each week the Petty Cash Book should be checked, and the cash in hand counted by a responsible official.
- (4) The only items of Petty Cash Receipt should be those drawn from the General Bank Account for that purpose, all other sums received by the business, however small, being paid direct into the Bank, and dealt with through the General Cash Book.
- (5) No clerk should be allowed to borrow cash from the Petty Cashier under any circumstances.

§ 5.—The Ledgers.

The general system of Internal Check is brought to bear upon the various Ledgers as follows :—

(a) General Index to Ledgers.

Each Ledger should, of course, contain a comprehensive index, which should be kept strictly up to date, and each Ledger clerk should be held responsible for this being carried out, so far as the Ledgers under his control are concerned.

It is, however, of very great convenience to have a General Index for all the Ledgers, showing clearly in which Ledger any particular account is open, and the folio in that Ledger. This general index should also contain the correct postal address of each customer of the firm. It should be kept absolutely up to date, and if this is done the advantages gained will more than counterbalance the trouble and labour involved.

(b) Distinguishing Labels.

All Ledgers should have some distinguishing letter, number, or name, so as to render them readily recognisable, and to save any waste of time in looking for accounts.

In order to further facilitate this, some firms adopt the plan of having the different groups of Ledgers bound in different coloured bindings, and with very satisfactory results.

The Ledgers should be of moderate size ; for although the labour of opening and spacing Ledgers is considerable, the inconvenience and weight of bulky books of account is to be avoided wherever possible.

(c) The Subdivision of Ledgers.

No general rule can be given for the subdivision of Ledgers, as this in every case must depend on the circumstances and the convenience of the firm in question.

The following, however, are a few of the points which should be taken into consideration :—

- (1) The Town Accounts should be kept distinct from the Country Accounts.
- (2) Both the Town and the Country Ledgers should be again subdivided to a certain extent over the districts covered by the various travellers.
- (3) The Accounts with foreign firms should be collected into a special Foreign Ledger, and if these transactions are very numerous, and extend to several different foreign countries, it may be wise to have a separate Ledger for each country.

- (4) All Impersonal Accounts should be collected into an Impersonal Ledger, and the Private Ledger should only contain accounts of a strictly private nature. This is important, as only certain responsible officials will have access to the Private Ledger, and it will be their duty to write up the same ; and it is, of course, absurd to burden such persons with detail which can be quite properly allocated to others.
- (5) The convenience of the counting-house in the matter of the posting up and checking of the Ledgers should be given the fullest consideration.

(d) Loose-leaf Ledgers.

Loose-leaf Ledgers are now being used by a very large number of firms, and it is impossible to overlook the advantages which they have over ordinary Ledgers. The system carries with it certain disadvantages, however, but with careful management these can be minimised. It should be noted that each page in these Loose-leaf Ledgers must contain both the debit and credit sides, and consequently it is not always possible to bring such Ledgers into use.

The following rules should be rigidly enforced to enable the system to be introduced with comparative safety :—

- (1) The keys should be under the sole control of the Secretary, or some other responsible official, and he should never, under any circumstances whatsoever, hand over such keys, even temporarily, to any Ledger clerk.
- (2) The stock of loose sheets should be kept by the clerk in charge of the stationery store cupboard, and no sheets should be given out by him except in exchange for a requisition order, properly made out and approved by the Secretary or other responsible official.
- (3) The sheets should be ruled and printed in some way to render them different from the stock article supplied by stationers.
- (4) Each Ledger clerk requiring new sheets should, after having filled in a properly approved requisition order, bring the sheets thus

obtained to the Secretary, who should unlock the Ledger and see that the sheets are properly inserted, and also that the Ledger is re-locked.

- (5) No sheets should be taken out of any Ledger until after the matter contained in such sheets has been proved and passed by the Auditor.
- (6) The Secretary or other responsible official, in addition to the particular Ledger clerk, should initial all sheets taken out of the Ledgers.
- (7) All sheets so taken out should be filed away in proper order.

(e) **Sectional Balancing.**

This subject has been fully dealt with in Chapter IX.

(f) **Statements.**

Statements should be sent out periodically to customers, and it is desirable that these should be made out and checked, where possible, by clerks not concerned in writing up the Ledgers. The importance of these Statements will be readily conceded when it is remembered that, in addition to acting as an intimation that a remittance is required, they will also bring forward an immediate protest from customers who have not been given credit for cash already paid.

(g) **Press Cuttings Index.**

All cuttings from trade papers and journals, likely to be of interest and value, should be collected and pasted into an index, arranged so as to enable any required information to be ascertained at a moment's notice.

Should the index contain any notices affecting open accounts in the Ledger, particular attention should be paid to the same, and if the credit of any such firm is on that account questioned, a copy of the cutting should be made and pinned to the account in the Ledger, to prevent the matter being overlooked. By this means Bad Debts are often avoided.

(h) Bad Debts.

No amounts should be written off to Bad Debts Account without being first sanctioned by some responsible official, who should initial the journal entry dealing with the matter.

Many firms adopt the principle of opening a Bad Debt Ledger, and as each bad debt is written off an account for the same is opened in the Bad Debt Ledger. This Ledger need not form part of the double entry, being purely a memorandum book, but is useful to show the business the ultimate loss incurred in respect of each bad debt.

All bad debt dividends received should be credited to a Bad Debt Dividend Account, and taken to the credit of the period in which they are received. These amounts should also be entered on the credit side of the particular account in the Bad Debt Ledger, and the ultimate balance of each account will then show the exact loss which the firm has sustained in each case.

§ 6.—Purchases.

A complete system of internal check should ensure the inclusion and accuracy of all the prime entries. The following procedure dealing with Purchases from the issue of the order to the entry in the Day Book, if carried out, will guarantee this result :—

- (1) Only certain responsible officials should be authorized to sanction the ordering of goods.
- (2) The official order should be initialled by the responsible official authorizing the same before it is sent out.
- (3) All goods coming in should be entered in a Goods Inwards Book kept for this purpose by the gate office foreman.
- (4) As soon as the invoices for the goods purchased are received, they should be handed to the invoice clerk.
- (5) The invoice clerk should check the details of each invoice with the Order Book, and see that it is correct, and should also ascertain that the number of the order is clearly shown on such invoice.

- (6) The invoice clerk should enter on each invoice the reference to the Goods Inwards Book, and should mark in red in this book the number of the particular Day Book, full reference thereto being entered subsequently. This procedure should prevent duplicate invoices being dealt with as originals.
- (7) The invoice clerk should thoroughly check each invoice, and initial therefor.
- (8) The invoice should be sent to the particular department from which the goods were ordered, and the manager of this department should initial same, thereby signifying approval as to quality, price, &c.
- (9) The invoice clerk should enter each invoice in the Purchase Day Book, and extend the item to the proper departmental column.
- (10) The invoices should be called over to the Purchase Day Book, and filed until required by the cashier.

§ 7.—Purchase Returns.

Upon the return of goods purchased, the departmental manager should send an Advice Note and Pass Requisition to the counting-house, the Advice Note containing full details concerning such goods.

The Secretary should issue the Pass and hand the Advice Note to the invoice clerk, who should check same with the original invoice, and make an entry in the Bought Returns Book. This entry should be checked, and the Advice Note, attached to the invoice, filed so that the cashier must deal with both simultaneously.

If the original invoice is already paid, the invoice clerk should pass the entry through the Bought Returns Book, and should obtain a credit note therefor, which should be placed with the invoices not paid, so that a deduction can be made from any subsequent payment.

It should be noted that no goods can leave the premises (apart from those in the Sales Order Book) without a Pass from the counting-house.

§ 8.—Sales.

Following the general scheme, the procedure for dealing with Sales from the receipt of the order to the entry in the Day Book should be as follows :—

- (1) Immediately the order is received, particulars thereof should be entered in a Diary.
- (2) Full details of the order should be entered in a manifold Order Book, the one sheet being retained in the book, and the other being sent to the gate office foreman.
- (3) The gate office foreman should enter up the particulars of each order in the Warehouse Memoranda Books, and the warehouseman should send out the goods accordingly.
- (4) The gate office foreman should keep a special Gate Book, in which he should enter details of all goods going out of the factory, and he should check the entries in this book with the duplicate sheets from the Order Book.
- (5) The gate office foreman should attend each morning at the counting-house, and should call over the orders fulfilled during the previous day with the invoice clerk, who should mark off the same in the Order Book. As these are re-checked, the gate office foreman should cancel the duplicate sheet of the Order Book.
- (6) The invoice clerk should extend the prices in the case of orders marked off in the Order Book, and these should be independently checked, both parties initialling for such work. The orders not checked off will represent the orders unfulfilled, and the invoice clerk should not allow these to remain open for more than two days without calling attention to the same.
- (7) The invoice clerk should type the invoice and entry in the Day Book simultaneously. A typewriting machine is now on the market which enables this to be done, and which also automatically adds up the total of each page of the Day Book. Consequently, all that is necessary to do is to check the casts of

the Day Book, and once more a mechanical check is successfully introduced into the general system of internal check.

- (8) The invoices should be called over with the Order Book, and, as each one is verified, the entry in the Order Book should be distinctly marked through, so that any orders not invoiced will remain open and be readily distinguished.
- (9) The correctness of the details in the Sales Day Book are thus, *ipso facto*, proved.

§ 9.—Sales Returns.

Goods returned by customers should be entered by the gate office foreman in a special Returns Inwards Book upon receipt. He should enter particulars thereof in a counterfoil Receipt Book, which should be sent daily to the counting-house to be checked. Where credit has to be given for these goods, the detachable part of the counterfoil Receipt Book should be filled in, checked, and sent to the customer. The counterfoil Receipt Book should then be passed on to the clerk, who makes the entry in the Sales Returns Day Book.

All credit notes should be approved and initialled by a responsible official before despatch.

§ 10.—Packages and Empties.

The method of dealing with packages depends on whether they have been charged out to the customers or not, and whether they are returnable or not.

A Packages Account should be in existence which should be debited with the opening stock of packages at stock value, and with all purchases of packages.

Where the empties are not returnable, the charge for the package should be included in the price of the goods, and consequently any profit made on the package will be included in the sales. Where, however, empties are returnable, they should be charged up to the various accounts

whenever possible, but it sometimes happens that customers are in a position to object, and absolutely refuse to allow this procedure to be adopted, and in consequence some other scheme has to be devised.

The following is a suggestion for the treatment of packages in both cases, on the assumption that the empties are returnable :—

(a) Packages charged up.

There should be a special column in the Sales Day Book, to record the amount to be charged up in respect of packages. The account of each customer will thus be debited with the value placed on the packages, and the total of the packages column in the Day Book should be posted, not to the credit of Sales Account, but to the credit of a Packages Reserve Account. As the empties are received back, particulars thereof should be entered in an Empties Journal, which should be posted in detail to the credit of the particular customers, and in total at the end of each month to the debit of the Packages Reserve Account.

If credit is allowed on the empties returned to the full extent of the amount charged up therefor, the credit balance on the Packages ^{HCS}Account should represent the amount charged up for packages outstanding, and this figure should be deducted from the debtors in the Balance Sheet.

It should be remembered that these packages are usually charged up at a higher rate than cost price, and in many instances when they are returned credit is only given for the cost price. In this latter case, an actual profit is made on the empties, which should be transferred from the Packages Reserve Account to Packages Account. Where customers retain packages and pay for the same, an adjusting entry should be made, debiting the Packages Reserve Account and crediting Packages Account.

Full particulars of the returned empties should be made by the gate office foreman, and recorded in a counterfoil Credit Note Book. This book should be sent daily to the counting-house, and called over with the Ledger Accounts. Immediately the items are proved a credit note should be made out, and after this has been checked and initialled it should be sent to the customer concerned.

The counterfoil portion of the book should then be handed to the empties clerk, who should write up the Empties Journal therefrom.

Empties on hand and in the hands of customers should be valued at cost less adequate depreciation, this stock figure being credited to the Packages Account and brought down as a debit balance; any difference on this account being then written off to Profit and Loss Account in the usual manner.

(b) Packages not charged up.

There should be special columns ruled in the Ledger to record the identification number of each package sent out but not charged up. The number should be entered on the invoice and in the Day Book, and reference thereto made in the Package Number column on the debit side of the particular account in the Ledger at the time when the posting of the sale is made.

As the empties are returned, full particulars thereof should be recorded by the gate office foreman, as explained previously. It will not be necessary, however, to send out credit notes, nor will any entries be made in the Empties Journal. The gate office foreman's book should be called over with the various accounts in the Ledger, and as each entry is checked the particular number of the package should be entered in the Package Number column on the credit side of the Ledger Account.

The Ledger clerk should periodically examine the Package Number columns in the Ledger, and cross out the numbers corresponding on the debit and credit sides. The remaining numbers should then represent the packages still in the hands of customers.

Proper Stock Accounts should be kept for the packages, and the balances of these accounts should show at a glance particulars of the packages in the factory, in the hands of customers charged up, and in the hands of customers not charged up. The stocktaking should be carried out without reference to these Stock Accounts, and compared with the balances on the Stock Accounts, any discrepancy being enquired into.

A Packages Account will be kept in the Ledger, and any difference thereon after adjusting the actual stock brought in at cost less adequate depreciation will be written off to Profit and Loss Account in the usual way.

§ 11.—Cost Accounts.

It is essential that proper Cost Accounts should be kept and agreed with the financial books. These show the exact cost of goods manufactured, and the management is enabled thereby to effect a strict control over expenditure, particularly in the case of wages.

A discussion of Cost Accounts in detail will be found in Chapter XI.

§ 12.—Stock.

Stocktaking is one of the most vital proceedings of a manufacturer's business, because an erroneous stock value directly affects the profits. This fact has been fraudulently acted upon in many instances, and was the method adopted to inflate the profits in the well-known case of the *Kingston Cotton Mills*.

The most important check that can be brought to bear upon such inflation, so far as an Auditor is concerned, is for him to ascertain the ratio between the gross profit shown by the Trading Account and the Sales for the period, after charging only such items of prime cost as vary directly with the turnover, and to compare with that of previous periods, inquiring into any fluctuation which cannot be readily accounted for. Where the manufacturer works for, and maintains, a fixed percentage of profit on cost, this is a perfectly reliable check, and in any case it is of considerable utility.

(a) Valuation.

Where complete Cost Accounts are kept and agreed with the financial books, it is necessary in taking stock to discriminate between:—

(1) Raw Materials.

(2) Goods in course of manufacture for Stock and Contract Accounts.

(3) Finished Goods.

(1) *Raw Materials.*

The cost of goods utilised in manufacture will have been passed through the financial books, so that the value of the stock of raw materials on hand should agree approximately with the balance shown on the Materials Account in the financial books; and after an independent valuation of the raw material has been made, a reconciliation between such value and the balance on the Materials Account should be effected. If the market value has gone down, an entry should be put through the books to adjust the balance on the Materials Account. The invoices for purchases will form a ready check as to the cost price of the goods.

(2) *Goods in course of Manufacture.*

The correct valuation of goods in the course of manufacture is essential in order to show the exact value of the work in progress upon each of the Manufacturing Cost Accounts.

It is impossible to lay down any hard-and-fast rules as to the method to be adopted in valuing these partly manufactured goods; but where a complete system of Cost Accounts is in operation, the various Cost Sheets, showing the exact cost of manufacturing goods at various stages, should form a satisfactory test of the value arrived at. The value put upon these goods should approximately agree with the balances on the various Manufacturing and Contract Accounts, and a reconciliation between the two should be made.

(3) *Finished Goods.*

The stock of these should be taken, and the total value should agree with the Stock Accounts. The various Cost Sheets will furnish particulars which will form a very satisfactory check on the valuation placed upon these goods.

(b) **Method of Stocktaking.**

The procedure for stocktaking should be as follows :—

- (1) The stock should be taken immediately after the close of the last day of the period, and the basis of valuation should be cost or market price, whichever is lower.
- (2) The work of stocktaking should be apportioned by allocating one person to call out the quantities and descriptions of the goods ; another to enter these particulars on the Stock Sheets ; another (who should be a responsible official) to enter the prices ; another to make the calculations and to cast the sheets ; and another to check these calculations and casts.

Each person should initial for the work done by him in connection with the Stock Sheets ; and, finally, the sheets should be signed as a whole by the chief manager, a director, or a partner.

All invoices referring to the period under review should be brought into account, particular care being taken to see that no stock is included unless the invoice referring to it has been actually passed through the financial books. On the other hand, where invoices properly referring to the period under review are received, but the goods in respect thereof are not received, such goods should be valued and brought into account as stock in transit. Goods sold but not despatched must, of course, be eliminated, and great care should be exercised to see that this is done. It will be necessary, however, to see that the sale in each case is properly recorded.

As regards stock at the docks, or in bonded warehouse at the date of stocktaking, it must be seen that the invoices in respect thereof are passed through the books, and that any charges paid out on such goods are properly dealt with, so that the correct valuation can be placed upon them.

No scheme of internal check can prove a success unless the chief officials of the business take an intelligent interest in its operation, and see that each step is systematically carried out.

In consequence a considerable moral responsibility rests with the heads of the firm, and it is their duty occasionally to supervise the cash and examine the balances, to be present at the payment of wages, and to examine carefully the main branches of the system in operation, in order that they may be in a position to introduce improvements wherever possible.

No system can ever remain sound unless it is constantly subjected to severe scrutiny, and, where necessary, adjusted to meet present-day needs.

INDEX.

A.

ABSORPTION

- of one limited company by another, 202.
- treatment of revenue balances, 204.
- treatment of shares partly paid up, 208.

ACCIDENT COMPENSATION FUND, 207.

ACCOMMODATION BILLS, 90, 320.

ACCOUNT CURRENT

- definition of, 73.
- form of, 73.

ACCOUNT SALES

- definition of, 69.
- form of, 70.

ACREAGE RENT

- definition of, 346.

ADJUSTMENTS

- in partnership accounts, 103.
- under single entry, 109.
- where interest on capital has been omitted, 147.

AD VALOREM STAMP DUTIES

- on bills of exchange, 82.
- on promissory notes, 82.

AGENTS

- accounts with, 77.
- del credere*, 69.

ALLOTMENT LETTER

- explanation of, 167.
- form of, 168.

ALLOTMENTS

- return to Registrar, 170.

AMALGAMATION

- of companies, 200.

ANNUAL LIST

of members and summary book, 157.

ANNUITY

repayment of capital by way of, 122.

ANNUITY SYSTEM

explanation of, 47.

provision for depreciation under, 47.

APPLICATION LETTERS

explanation of, 165.

form of, 166.

APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT BOOK, 167.**APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT OF SHARES, 165.**

application letters, 165.

calls, 169.

form of allotment letter, 168.

form of application letter, 166.

form of application and allotment book, 167.

journal entries relating thereto, 170, 172.

letters of allotment, 167, 168.

letters of regret, 167.

return of allotments, 170.

shares issued at a premium, 171.

vendors' and signatories' shares, 169.

APPORTIONMENT OF PROFIT

prior to incorporation, 188.

APPROPRIATION ACCOUNT

definition of, 18.

ARREARS OF CUMULATIVE PREFERENCE DIVIDEND, 199.**ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION**

contents of, 155.

definition of, 155.

ASCERTAINMENT OF PROFIT

under single entry, 5, 109.

ASSETS

various kinds of, 21.

ASSURANCE COMPANIES ACT, 1909

prescribed forms of accounts under, 373.

AUDIT

preparation for, of company's books, 194.

AUTHORITY FOR PAYMENTS, 396.**AVERAGE DATE**

definition of, 74.

illustration of, 74, 120.

B.**BAD DEBTS**

dividends in respect of, 404.
ledger for, 404.
reserve account for, 54.
reserve for, 54.

BALANCE SHEET

definition of, 3.
form of, 21.
of a company, 195.
valuation, 377.

BALANCING, ERRORS IN, 229.**BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT, 31.****BANKRUPTCY ACCOUNTS.**

book debts, 321.
deficiency account, 322.
fully secured creditors, 319.
liabilities on bills discounted, 320.
partly secured creditors, 319.
preferential creditors, 321.
statement of affairs, 318.
unsecured creditors, 319.
valuation of assets, 321.

BANKRUPTCY OF FIRMS, 323.**BILL DIARY**

use of, 90.

BILL OF LADING, DEFINITION OF, 97.**BILL PAYABLE BOOK**

form of, 86.

BILL PAYABLE LEDGER, 88.**BILL RECEIVABLE BOOK**

form of, 86.

BILL RECEIVABLE LEDGER

form of, 89.
use of, 88.

BILLS DISCOUNTED

contingent liability on, 97, 199, 320.

BILLS OF EXCHANGE

accommodation bill, 90, 320.
definition of, 80.
specimen forms of, 82.
stamp duties on, 82.

BONUS

application of, to payment of calls, 192.

BONUS SHARES

- issued at par, 191.
- issued at a premium, 191.

BOUGHT DAY BOOK, 38.**BOUGHT LEDGER ANALYSIS BOOK**

- form of, 12.
- use of, 9.

BRANCH ACCOUNTS,

- foreign branches, 257.
- retail branches, 237.
 - goods charged at cost price, 241.
 - goods charged at cost price plus percentage, 243.
 - goods charged at selling price, 237.
- systems in use, 235.
- wholesale branches, 235.

BRANCH BOOKS

- when all detail is recorded, 245.

BRANCH CURRENT ACCOUNTS, 245, 251.**BROKERAGE ON PLACING SHARES, 176.****C.****CALLS**

- call books, 169.
- call letters, 169.
- calls in arrear, 189.
- journal entries relating to, 170, 172.

CAPITAL

- conversion of, 299.
- definition of, 5.
- payment of interest out of, 193.
- receipts and payments accounts, 18.

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

- partners of, 102, 107.
- sole trader of, 22.

CAPITAL OF OUTGOING PARTNERS

- repayment of by instalments, 119.
- repayment of by way of annuity, 122.
- repayment of from date of realization of assets, 120.

CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

- definition of, 22.
- distinguished from revenue expenditure, 22.

CAPITAL LOSSES

- under double account system, 297.

CARD LEDGERS

description of, 366.

CASH

necessity for internal check with regard to, 391.
authority for payments, 396.
general cash payments, 394.
general cash receipts, 391.
petty cash, 399.
travellers' remittances, 392.
wages, 396.

CASH BOOK

for charitable institutions, 384.
reconciliation with bank pass book, 31.
total accounts, 225.
where all receipts are banked, 30.
where there are mixed cash and bank transactions, 29.

CASH DISCOUNT

definition of, 31.

CHARITABLE INSTITUTIONS

accounts of, 380.
form of cash book for, 384.
form of purchase journal for, 385.
specified forms of accounts for, 380.
subscription register for, 385.

CLAIMS

for compensation, 349.
destruction of business, 349.
disturbance of business, 349.
personal injuries, 349.
for stock destroyed by fire, 348.

COLLIERY COST SHEET

form of, 283.

COLUMNAR JOURNALS, 39.

form of bought journal, 40, 233.

COLUMNAR PETTY CASH BOOK, 32, 33.**COMBINED PURCHASE DAY BOOK AND LEDGER**

explanation of, 361.
form of, 362.

COMMISSION

on debentures, 157, 158.
on placing shares, 157, 158, 176.
underwriting, 175.

COMPANIES

absorption of one company by another, 202.
accounts of, 152, 195.
amalgamation of, 200.
balance-sheet of, 195.
distinction between partnerships, 151.
private, 153.
purchase of private firm by, 182.

COMPANIES (CONSOLIDATION) ACT, 1908

- annual general meeting, 157.
- annual list of members and summary book, 157.
- auditors' report, 196.
- balance-sheet to be signed by directors, 196.
- commission on placing shares, 176.
- discount on issue of debentures, 176, 179.
- filing allotments with the Registrar, 170.
- filing of summary with the Registrar, 158.
- issue of debentures as collateral security, 184.
- limitation of number of partners, 151.
- minute book, 160.
- payment of interest out of capital, 193.
- private companies, 153.
- reduction of capital, 209.
- register of directors and managers, 160.
- register of members, 156.
- register of mortgages, 156.
- registration of mortgages, 156, 179.
- re-issue of redeemed debentures, 181.
- return of capital out of profits, 211.
- returns to Registrar in Liquidation under, 334, 335.
- statement in form of balance-sheet, 157.
- statement in lieu of prospectus, 154.
- statutory report, 154, 161.

COMPENSATING ERRORS, 3.**CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNTS.**

- account current, 73.
- account sales, 69.
- consignee, entries in books of, 71.
- consignor, entries in books of, 79.
- contrasted with sale or return, 69.
- joint consignments, 75.
- stock book, 71.

CONTANGO

- definition of, 369.

CONTINGENT LIABILITIES.

- on bills discounted, 97.
- treatment of, 199, 371.

CONTRACT COST ACCOUNTS, 267, 268.**CONTRACTS**

- ledger, 273.
- ledger, form of, 275.
- materials for, 269.
- materials returned from, 270.
- plant used on, 271.
- purchase journal for, 269.
- summary ledger for, 274.
- taking profit on uncompleted, 275.

CONTRIBUTORIES

- returns to, 336.
- statement regarding, 332.

CONVERSION OF CAPITAL,

double account system, under, 299.

CONVERSION OF PRIVATE FIRM INTO LIMITED COMPANY, 136.

CONVERSION OF SINGLE ENTRY INTO DOUBLE ENTRY

at a given date, 7.

from one period to another, 7, 14.

COST ACCOUNTS

contract or terminal, 267, 268.

departmental, 267, 289.

establishment charges in, 272.

factory, 267, 289.

output or single, 267, 282.

multiple, 268, 290.

principle of, 267.

process, 268, 290.

reconciliation with financial books, 279.

unit system of, 290.

wages in, 271.

working, 268, 286.

COST SHEET

advantages of, 282.

definition of, 282.

COST SHEET FOR COLLIERY

form of, 283.

COST SHEET FOR IRON AND STEEL WORKS

form of, 284.

CUMULATIVE PREFERENCE SHARES,

arrears of dividend, 199.

description of, 164.

CURRENT ACCOUNTS

of branches, 245, 251.

of partners, 107.

D.

DAY BOOKS, 33.

DAYS OF GRACE

explanation of, 81.

DEAD RENT

definition of, 345.

DEBENTURE LEDGER, 178.

DEBENTURES

- definition of, 178.
- issued as collateral security for a loan, 181.
- issued at a discount, 179.
- issued at a premium, 179.
- mortgage, 178.
- redemption of, 181.
- registration of, 178.
- repayable at a premium, 180.
- simple or naked, 178.

DEEDS OF ARRANGEMENT

- accounts in connection with, 327.

DEEDS OF PARTNERSHIP, 101.**DEFERRED ORDINARY SHARES AND STOCK, 165, 299.****DEFERRED SHARES, 165.****DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT**

- in bankruptcy, 322.
- in bankruptcy, form of, 325.
- in compulsory liquidation, 330.
- in liquidation, form of, 332.

DEFINITIONS

- accommodation bill, 90.
- account current, 73.
- account sales, 69.
- acreage rent, 346.
- allotment letters, 167.
- application letters, 165.
- appropriation account, 18.
- articles of association, 155.
- average date, 74.
- balance-sheet, 3.
- bill of exchange, 80.
- bonus shares, 191.
- capital, 5.
- capital expenditure, 22.
- cash discount, 31.
- contango, 369.
- contingent liability, 199.
- days of grace, 81.
- dead rent, 345.
- debentures, 178.
- deferred shares, 165.
- depreciation, 43.
- depreciation fund, 48.
- discounted bills, 97.
- dishonoured bills, 95.
- double account system, 296.
- double entry, 2.
- fictitious assets, 21.
- fixed assets, 21.
- floating assets, 21.
- forfeited shares, 189.
- founders' shares, 165.

DEFINITIONS (*continued*)

goodwill, 112.
 impersonal accounts, 4.
 imprest system, 33.
 income and expenditure account, 19.
 insurance fund, 53.
 internal check, 388.
 joint and several promissory notes, 81.
 joint trade, 140.
 joint venture, 140.
 letter of allotment, 167.
 letter of regret, 167.
 limited partnership, 123.
 memorandum of association, 154.
 minimum rent, 345.
 mortgage, 177.
 negotiable instrument, 81.
 nominal accounts, 4.
 ordinary shares, 164.
 partnership, 101.
 personal accounts, 4.
 preference shares—
 simple, 164.
 cumulative, 164.
 private companies, 153.
 profit and loss account, 18.
 promissory note, 80.
 quasi partners, 123.
 real accounts, 4.
 receipts and payments account, 18.
 redeemable dead rent, 345.
 reserve, 53.
 reserve fund, 53.
 retired bills, 96.
 revenue expenditure, 22.
 royalty rent, 345.
 secret reserves, 59.
 short bills, 96.
 short workings, 345.
 single entry, 2.
 sinking fund, 53.
 sleeping partners, 123.
 table "A", 155.
 tentail rent, 345.
 trade discount, 31.
 trading account, 16.
 trial balance, 3.
 underwriting commission, 175.
 wasting assets, 21.

DEL CREDERE AGENT

definition of, 69.

DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS, 232.

DEPARTMENTAL BOUGHT DAY BOOK, 233.

DEPARTMENTAL COST ACCOUNTS, 267, 289.

DEPRECIATION

- considerations to determine rate of, 43.
- definition of, 43.
- fund, definition of, 53.
- fund, under double account system, 296.
- necessity of providing for, 44.
- principal methods of providing for—
 - annuity system, 47.
 - depreciation fund system, 48.
 - fixed instalment system, 44.
 - insurance policy system, 50.
 - reducing instalment system, 46.
 - revaluation, 51.

DILAPIDATIONS

- arising under lease, 53.

DIRECTORS' REPORT FOR STATUTORY MEETING, 161.

DISCOUNT

- bills of exchange, on, 90 *et seq.*
- cash, 31.
- debenture issued at a, 179.
- reserve account, 55.
- reserve for, 55.
- trade, 31.

DISCOUNTED BILLS, 90 *et seq.*, 199, 320.

DISHONoured BILLS, 95.

DISSOLUTION OF PARTNERSHIP

- by bankruptcy, 134.
- by death, 134.
- capital account permanently in debit on, 130.
- capital account temporarily in debit on, 129.
- formula for closing books on, 126.
- Garner v. Murray*, 130.
- loss on realization of assets on, 128.
- on agreed terms, 132.
- Partnership Act, 1890, and, 124.
- profit on realization of assets on, 127.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN PARTNERSHIPS AND LIMITED COMPANIES, 151.

DISTINGUISHING LABELS FOR LEDGERS, 401.

DISTURBANCE OF BUSINESS

- claims for compensation arising through, 349.

DOCUMENTARY BILLS, 97.

DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM

- conversion of capital under, 299.
- definition of the, 296.
- renewal and depreciation funds under, 297.
- statutory forms under, 301 *et seq.*
- treatment of capital losses under, 297.

DOUBLE ENTRY, 2

- advantages of over single entry, 3.
- conversion from single entry to, 7.
- definition of, 2.
- theory of, 2.

DOUBTFUL DEBTS

- reserves for, 54.

E.**ELECTRIC LIGHTING ACT, 1882**

- statutory forms of accounts under, 310.

ELECTRIC LIGHTING COMPANIES' ACCOUNTS

- statutory form of, 310

EMPTYES AND PACKAGES, 407.

- charged up, 408.
- not charged up, 409.

EQUALIZATION OF DIVIDENDS

- reserve account to provide for, 276.

ERRORS

- balancing, in, 229.
- compensating, 3, 4.
- of omission, 4.
- of principle, 4.
- rectification of, 40.

ESTABLISHMENT CHARGES,

- administration expenses, 272.
- cost accounts, in, 272.
- works expenses, 272.

EXCHANGE

- branches working on a fixed rate of, 257.
- branches working on a fluctuating rate of, 259.

F.**FACTORY COST ACCOUNTS, 267, 289.****FICTITIOUS ASSETS**

- definition of, 20.

FINANCE COMPANIES, 370.**FINANCIAL BOOKS**

- reconciliation of cost accounts with, 279.

FIRE CLAIMS FOR LOSS OF STOCK, 348.

FIXED ASSETS

definition of, 20.

FIXED CAPITAL AND CURRENT ACCOUNTS OF PARTNERS, 107.

FIXED INSTALMENT SYSTEM OF DEPRECIATION, 44.

FLOATING ASSETS

definition of, 20.

FOREIGN BRANCHES

working on a fixed rate of exchange, 257.

working on a fluctuating rate of exchange, 259.

FOREIGN EXCHANGE, 256.

FOREIGN MINE ACCOUNTS, 263.

FORFEITED SHARES

entries in books relating to, 189.

FORMATION EXPENSES, 175.

FORMS

account current, 73.

account sales, 70.

allotment letter, 168.

annual list of members and summary, 157.

application and allotment book, 167.

application letter, 166.

bill of exchange, 82.

bill payable book, 86.

bill receivable book, 86.

bill receivable ledger, 89.

cash book of mixed cash and bank transactions, 29.

cash book where all moneys are banked, 30.

charitable institutions cash book, 384.

columnar books, for sectional balancing, 225.

columnar bought journal, 40.

contract ledger, 275.

cost sheet for colliery, 283.

cost sheet for iron and steel works, 284.

deeds of arrangement, account in connection with, 328.

deficiency account in bankruptcy, 325.

deficiency account in liquidation, 332.

departmental bought day book, 233.

electric lighting company's accounts, 310.

gas company's accounts, 308.

income and expenditure account, 20.

invoice, 39.

life insurance company's accounts, 373.

liquidator's cash book, 333.

petty cash book, 33.

plant ledger, 366.

promissory notes, 84.

purchase day book and ledger combined, 362.

purchase journal of contractor, 269.

FORMS (*continued*)

purchase journal for hospital, 385.
 railway company's accounts, 301.
 receipts and payments accounts, 20.
 receiver's accounts, 338.
 register of mortgages, 156.
 register of transfers, 174.
 rental ledger, 363.
 sales ledger summary book, 228.
 sale or return day book, 65, 67.
 sale or return journal, 68.
 share ledger, 173.
 statement of affairs in bankruptcy, 324.
 statement of affairs in liquidation, 331.
 statutory report, 162.
 subscription register, 385.
 total accounts, 224.
 transfer journal, 223.
 trustees' cash book, 326.
 visitors' ledger, 365.
 water rental ledger, 364.

FORMULA FOR CLOSING PARTNERSHIP BOOKS ON DISSOLUTION, 126.

FOUNDER'S SHARES, 165.

G.

GARNER *v.* MURRAY

ruling in, 125, 130.

GAS COMPANY'S ACCOUNTS

statutory forms of, 308.

GAS WORKS CLAUSES ACT, 1871

prescribed forms of account under, 308.

GATE BOOK, 406.

GENERAL RESERVES, 53

GOODS INWARDS BOOK, 404.

GOODS ON SALE OR RETURN

distinction between consignments and, 69.
 sale or return day book, 65, 67.
 sale or return journal, 68.
 treatment of, where number of goods sent is considerable, 66.
 treatment of, where number and value of goods sent are considerable, 67.
 treatment of, where number of goods sent is small, 65.

GOODWILL

- affecting incoming partner, 112.
- affecting outgoing partner, 116.
- definition of, 112.
- in books of a partnership, 118.
- life policies to provide for part payment of, 116.
- on sale of business to a company, 118, 182 *et seq.*

GUARANTEES

- contingent liabilities under, 199.

H.

HIRE-PURCHASE AGREEMENT

- entries in buyer's books, 340.
- entries in seller's books, 342.

HOSPITALS

- accounts of, 380.
- columnar cash book for, 384.
- purchase journal for, 385.
- specified forms of accounts for, 381.
- subscription register for, 385.

HOSPITAL SATURDAY FUND

- prescribed forms of accounts under, 381.

HOTEL VISITORS' LEDGER, 365.

I.

IMPERSONAL ACCOUNTS

- definition of, 4.

IMPREST SYSTEM

- explanation of, 33.

INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT

- definition of, 19.
- distinguished from receipts and payments account, 19.

INCOMING PARTNER

- goodwill affecting, 112.

INCORPORATION OF COMPANY

- apportionment of profit prior to, 188.

INDEX

- general index for ledgers, 400.
- press cuttings index, 403.

INSTALMENTS

- agreements to pay by, 340, 343.
- repayment of outgoing partner's capital by, 119.

INSURANCE ACCOUNTS

fire, 375.
life, 374.
marine, 357.

INSURANCE FUND

definition of, 53.
operation of in steamship company's accounts 58.

INSURANCE POLICY

provision of depreciation by, 50.

INTEREST ON CAPITAL

adjustment of in partnership accounts, 147.
definition of, 103.
necessity of providing, 102.

INTEREST ON DRAWINGS, 104.**INTEREST PAYABLE OUT OF CAPITAL, 193.****INTERNAL CHECKS**

classification of, 389.
 mechanical checks, 389.
 physical checks, 389.
 theoretical or intellectual checks, 390.
definition of, 388.
necessity for sound system of, 388.

INVESTMENT ACCOUNTS

cum. and ex dividend, treatment of, 360.
passing income received through, 359.

INVOICE

form of, 39.

IRON AND STEEL WORKS

cost sheet of, 284.

ISSUE OF DEBENTURES

as collateral security for a loan, 181.
at a discount, 179.
at a premium, 180.

ISSUE OF SHARES

at a premium, 171.
at a premium and valuation, 203.
journal entries relating to, 170.

J.**JOINT CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNTS, 75.****JOINT ESTATE**

in bankruptcy, 323.

JOINT PROMISSORY NOTES

definition of, 81.
form of, 84.

JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNTS

definition of, 140.
entries in books relating to, 140.

JOINT AND SEVERAL PROMISSORY NOTE

definition of, 81.
form of, 84.

JOURNAL

columnar, 40.
form of entries, 36.
legally necessary in some countries, 36.
rectification of errors, through, 40.
use of the, 36.

JOURNAL ENTRIES

narrative in, 36.
relating to issue of shares, 170.
specimen forms of, 37.

K.**KING EDWARD'S HOSPITAL FUND**

specified forms of account for, 381.

L.**LEASE**

depreciation of, 44, 47.
dilapidations arising under, 53.

LEDGERS

card, 366.
distinguishing labels for, 401.
general index to, 400.
internal check with regard to, 400.
loose-leaf, 366, 371, 402.
plant, 366.
rental, 363.
sectional balancing for, 219, 403.
subdivision of, 401.
tabular, 361.
visitors', 365.
water rental, 364.

LEDGER ACCOUNTS

investments, 359.
various kinds of, 4.

- LETTERS OF ALLOTMENT, 167.
- LETTERS OF CALL, 169.
- LETTERS OF REGRET, 167.
- LIFE INSURANCE ACCOUNTS
forms of, 374.
- LIFE POLICY
taken over in satisfaction of a debt, 350.
to provide for part payment of goodwill, 116.
- LIMITED COMPANY
purchase of private business by, 182.
- LIMITED PARTNERS
definition of, 123.
- LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS ACT, 1907, 123.
- LIQUIDATION ACCOUNTS
compulsory liquidation, 329.
voluntary liquidation, 334.
- LIQUIDATOR'S CASH BOOK
form of, 333.
- LOAN ACCOUNTS OF PARTNERS, 107.
- LOANS
repayment of, by sinking fund, 55.
- LOOSE-LEAF LEDGERS, 366, 402.
- LOOSE PLANT AND TOOLS
treatment on re-valuation of, 352.

M.

- MAINTENANCE RESERVE ACCOUNT, 52.
- MANUFACTURING ACCOUNT, 18, 286.
- MARINE INSURANCE ACCOUNTS, 357.
- MARINE INSURANCE FUND, 58.
- MATERIALS
carriage of, 271.
for contracts, 270.
for store, 270.
returned from contracts, 270.

MECHANICAL CHECKS

explanation of, 389.

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION

contents of, 154.

definition of, 154.

METHOD OF STOCKTAKING, 412.**METROPOLITAN HOSPITAL SUNDAY FUND**

specified forms of accounts for, 381.

MINE ACCOUNTS, 263.**MINIMUM RENT**

definition of, 345.

MINIMUM RENTS AND ROYALTIES

where minimum rent exceeds royalty rent, 346.

where royalty rent exceeds minimum rent, 346.

MINUTE BOOK, 160.**MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS, 340.****MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS**

in partnership accounts, 144.

MORTGAGES

definition of, 177.

entries in register of, 177.

register of, 156.

registration of, 156, 177.

MORTGAGE DEBENTURES, 178.**MULTIPLE COST ACCOUNTS, 268, 290.****N.****NARRATIVE**

for journal entries, 36.

NEGOTIABLE INSTRUMENT

definition of, 81.

NOMINAL ACCOUNT

definition of, 4.

O.**ORDINARY SHARES, 164.****OPERATION OF INSURANCE FUNDS, 58.****OPERATION OF SINKING FUNDS, 55.**

OUTGOING PARTNERS

- capital repaid by instalments, 119.
- capital repaid by instalments, with interest from date of realisation, 120.
- capital repaid by way of annuity, 122.
- goodwill affecting, 116.

OUTPUT COST ACCOUNTS, 267, 282.

OUTSTANDING COSTS

- of professional men, 371.

OUTSTANDING LIABILITIES, 60.

P.

PACKAGES AND EMPTIES

- charged up, 408.
- not charged up, 409.

PARTNER

- limited, 123.
- quasi, 123.
- sleeping, 123.

PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS

- goodwill in, 112.
- interest on capital, 102, 103.
- interest on drawings, 102, 104.
- partners' current accounts, 102, 107.
- partners' fixed capitals, 102, 107.
- partners' loan accounts, 107.
- partners' salaries, 102, 104.
- repayment of capitals in, 119.
- rules relating to, in absence of agreement, 103.
- under single entry, 109.
- usual adjustments necessary in, 103.
- clauses in deeds, of, 101.
- deeds of, 101.
- definition of, 101.
- dissolution of, 124.
- distinction between limited company and, 151.
- life policies, treatment of in, 116.
- limited, 123.
- number of partners limited, 151.
- partners' share of profits in, 102.
 - adjustment where interest has been omitted, 147.
 - guaranteed at a fixed minimum, 147.
 - proportion of, borne by another, 144.
 - re-adjustment of, over period of years, 145.

PARTNERSHIP ACT, 1890

- application of section 24.
- definition of partnership, 101.
- division of capital, profits, and losses, 103.
- loans from partners under, 103, 107, 123.
- quasi partners, 123.
- rules in absence of agreement, 103.

PAYMENT OF INTEREST

out of capital, 193.

PAYMENT OF WAGES, 399.

PAYMENTS IN ADVANCE, 62.

PERCENTAGES IN TRADING ACCOUNTS, 292.

PERSONAL ACCOUNT

definition of, 4.

PETTY CASH

columnar, 32.

form of book, 33.

imprest system, 33.

internal check relating to, 399.

PIECE-WORKERS' WAGES, 398.

PLACING SHARES

brokerage on, 176.

commission on, 176.

PLANT AND LOOSE TOOLS

treatment on re-valuation of, 352.

PLANT LEDGER, 366.

PLANT REGISTER, 271.

PLANT USED ON CONTRACTS, 271.

POLICY OF INSURANCE

provision for replacement of asset by, 50.

POLICY, LIFE

taken over in satisfaction of debt, 350.

to provide for part payment of goodwill, 116.

PREFERENCE SHARES, 164.

PREFERENTIAL CREDITORS, 321.

PREFERRED ORDINARY SHARES AND STOCK, 165, 299.

PRELIMINARY EXPENSES 175.

PREMIUM

debentures issued at a, 179.

debentures repayable at a, 180.

issue of bonus shares at a, 191.

shares issued at a, 171, 203.

PRESS CUTTINGS INDEX, 403.

PRINCIPLE OF COST ACCOUNTS, 267.

PRIVATE COMPANIES

definition of, 153.

PRIVATE FIRM

conversion into limited company of, 136, 182.

PROCESS COST ACCOUNTS, 263, 290.**PRODUCTION ACCOUNTS**, 284.**PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT**

definition of, 18.

distinction between trading account and, 18.

PROFIT ON UNCOMPLETED CONTRACTS, 275.**PROFITS**

apportionment of, prior to incorporation, 188.

ascertainment of, under single entry, 5.

PROMISSORY NOTES

definition of, 80.

forms of, 84.

joint, 81, 85.

joint and several, 81, 85.

stamp duties on, 82.

PROSPECTUS

filing with Registrar, 154.

PURCHASE JOURNAL

columnar, 40, 269.

combined with ledger, 362.

departmental, 233.

for contracts, 269.

for hospitals, 385.

PURCHASE OF PRIVATE FIRM

by limited company, 136, 182.

PURCHASE RETURNS, 405.**PURCHASES**, 404.**Q.****QUASI PARTNERS**

definition of, 123.

QUANTITY ACCOUNTS, 18.**R.****RAILWAY COMPANIES (ACCOUNTS AND RETURNS) ACT, 1911**

forms of account under, 301.

RAILWAY COMPANY'S ACCOUNTS

conversion of capital in, 299.

form of, 301.

RATE OF EXCHANGE

fixed rate, 257.

fluctuating rate, 259.

READJUSTMENT OF PARTNERS' SHARES

over a period of years, 145.

REAL ACCOUNT

definition of, 4.

REBATED BILLS, 98.

RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNT

capital, 20.

definition of, 18.

distinguished from an income and expenditure account, 19.

usual form of, 19.

RECEIVERSHIP ACCOUNTS, 337.

RECONCILIATION STATEMENT

bank book with cash book, 31.

cost accounts with financial books, 279.

RECONSTRUCTIONS, 213.

REDEEMABLE DEAD RENTS

definition of, 345.

REDEMPTION OF DEBENTURES, 180.

REDEMPTION FUND, 50.

REDUCTION OF CAPITAL

cancelling unissued shares, 209.

in excess of company's requirements, 209.

other modes of, 209.

out of profits, 211.

unrepresented by available assets, 209.

REDUCING INSTALMENT SYSTEM FOR DEPRECIATION, 46.

REGISTER

of directors and managers, 160.

of members, 156.

of mortgages, 156.

of share warrants, 175.

of transfers, 174.

REGULATION OF RAILWAYS ACT, 1868

conversion of capital under, 299.

RE-ISSUE OF FORFEITED SHARES, 189.

RENEWAL FUND

under double account system, 297.

RENTAL LEDGER, 363.

REPAIRS, RENEWALS, AND REPLACEMENTS, 51.

REPAYMENT OF LOANS BY SINKING FUND, 55.

RESERVE

- bad and doubtful debts, 54.
- for discounts, 55.
- general, 53.
- secret, 59.
- specific, 53.

RESERVE FUND

- definition of, 53.

RETAIL BRANCHES

- goods charged at cost price, 241.
- goods charged at cost price plus percentage, 243.
- goods charged at selling price, 237.

RETIRED BILLS

- definition of, 96.

RETURN OF ALLOTMENTS, 170.**RETURN TO SHAREHOLDERS IN LIQUIDATION ACCOUNTS, 336.****RETURNS**

- purchases, 405.
- sales, 407.

REVALUATION

- depreciation by, 51, 352.

REVENUE ACCOUNT, 19, 301, 309, 312.**REVENUE BALANCES**

- treatment of, on absorption by a company, 204.

REVENUE EXPENDITURE

- definition of, 22.
- distinguished from capital expenditure, 22.

ROYALTY RENT

- definition of, 345.

S.**SALARIES OF PARTNERS, 102, 104.****SALE OF BUSINESS**

- treatment of goodwill on, 118.

SALE OR RETURN

- goods sent on, 65.

SALES, 406.**SALES DAY BOOK, 39.****SALES LEDGER**

- analysis of, 8, 11.

SALES LEDGER SUMMARY BOOK, 228.

SALES RETURNS, 407.

SECRET RESERVES

explanation of, 59.
formation of, 59.

SECTIONAL BALANCING, 226.

SELF-BALANCING LEDGERS, 226.

SEPARATE ESTATES OF PARTNERS IN BANKRUPTCY, 323.

SHARE BOOKS

register of transfers, 174.
share ledger, 173.
share warrant register, 175.

SHARE CAPITAL

application and allotment of, 165, 172.
calls on, 169, 172.
distinction between stock and shares, 165.
reduction of, 209.
various classes of, 164.

SHARE LEDGER

form of, 173.

SHARE OF PARTNER GUARANTEED AT FIXED MINIMUM, 147.

SHARE PROFITS

treatment of, 386.

SHARES

bonus, 191.
brokerage on placing, 176.
commission on placing, 176.
deferred, 165.
deferred ordinary, 164.
forfeiture of, 189.
founders', 165.
ordinary, 164.
partly paid-up, treatment of, on absorption, 208.
preference, 164.
preferred ordinary, 164.
underwriting, commission on, 175.

SHARES ISSUED AT A PREMIUM, 171, 203.

SHARE WARRANT REGISTER, 175.

SHARE WARRANTS TO BEARER, 175.

SHIPPING ACCOUNTS, 355.

SHORT BILLS

definition of, 96.

SHORT WORKINGS

definition of, 345.

SIGNATORIES SHARES, 169.

SIMPLE DEBENTURE, 178.

SINGLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM

compared with double account system, 296.

SINGLE COST ACCOUNTS, 267, 282.

SINGLE ENTRY

adjustment of partnership accounts under, 109.

ascertainment of profits under, 5, 109.

conversion into double entry of, 7.

definition of, 3.

preparation of statement of affairs under, 5, *et seq.*

theory of, 3.

SINKING FUND

definition of, 53.

operation of, 55.

SLEEPING PARTNERS

definition of, 123.

SOLE TRADER, ACCOUNTS OF, 22.

SPECIFIC RESERVE, 53.

STAMP DUTIES ON

bills of exchange, 82.

promissory notes, 82.

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS

bankruptcy, form of, 324.

bankruptcy, preparation of, 318.

compulsory liquidation, preparation of, 329.

in liquidation, form of, 331.

under single entry, 5, 6, 7, 109.

voluntary liquidation, preparation of, 334.

STATEMENTS TO CUSTOMERS, 403.

STATUTORY BOOKS AND RETURNS OF COMPANIES

annual list of members and summary book, 157.

minute book, 160.

register of directors and managers, 160.

register of members, 156.

register of mortgages, 156.

statutory report, 161.

STATUTORY FORMS

electric light companies, 310.

gas companies, 308.

life insurance companies, 373.

railway companies, 301.

STEAMSHIP COMPANIES ACCOUNTS

operation of insurance fund in, 58.

STEEL WORKS

cost sheet of, 284.

STOCK

distinction between shares and, 165.
finished goods, 411.
goods in course of manufacture, 411.
method of stock-taking, 412.
raw materials, 411.
trading accounts, in, 17.
valuation of, 410.

STOCK ACCOUNTS, 17.

STOCK EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS, 368.

STORE LEDGER, 270, 280.

SUBDIVISION OF LEDGERS, 401.

SUBSCRIPTION REGISTER

form of, 385.

SUMMARY BOOK, ANNUAL LIST OF MEMBERS, 157.

SUMMARY LEDGER FOR CONTRACTS, 274.

SUSPENSE ACCOUNTS, 63.

T.

TABLE "A"

application of, 155.
clauses in, 155, 189.
definition of, 155.

TABULAR LEDGERS, 361.

TENTAIL RENT

definition of, 346.

TERMINAL COST ACCOUNTS, 267, 268.

TILL MONEY, 29.

TIME-WORKERS' WAGES, 398.

TOOLS AND LOOSE PLANT

treatment on revaluation of, 352.

TOTAL ACCOUNTS

cash account, 12, 15.
columnar books in connection with, 225.
total creditors' account, 13, 222.
total debtors' account, 9, 12, 219.

TRADE DISCOUNT

definition of, 31.

TRADING ACCOUNT

- compilation of, 16.
- definition of, 16.
- distinction between profit and loss account and, 18.
- quantities in connection with, 17.

TRANSFER JOURNAL

- form of, 223.
- use of, 223.

TRANSFER REGISTER, 174.**TRAVELLERS' REMITTANCES, 392.****TREATMENT OF RENEWALS, REPAIRS, AND REPLACEMENTS, 51.****TRIAL BALANCE, 3.****TRUSTEE IN BANKRUPTCY**

- accounts of 326.

TRUSTEES' CASH BOOK

- form of, 326.

U.**UNCOMPLETED CONTRACTS**

- estimated profit on, 275.

UNCOMPLETED WORK

- accounts of professional men, 371.

UNDERWRITERS' ACCOUNTS, 357.**UNDERWRITING COMMISSION, 175.****UNIT SYSTEM**

- of cost accounts, 291.

V.**VALUATION BALANCE SHEET, 378****VALUATION OF ASSETS**

- in statement of affairs, 321.

VALUATION OF STOCK

- goods in course of manufacture, 411.
- finished goods, 411.
- raw materials, 410.
- rule for, 17.

VENDORS' SHARES, 169.

VENTURE, JOINT, 75, 140.

VOLUNTARY LIQUIDATION
liquidator's accounts in, 334.

VOYAGE ACCOUNTS, 355.

W.

WAGES

analysis book, 271.
payment of, 399.
piece-workers, 397.
piece-workers' sheets, 398.
time-workers, 397.
time-workers' sheets, 398.
treatment in cost accounts, 271.

WASTING ASSETS
definition of, 20.

WATER RENTAL LEDGER, 364.

WHOLESALE BRANCHES, 235.

WINDING-UP ORDER, 329.

WORKING ACCOUNT, 18, 286.

WORKING COST ACCOUNTS, 268, 291.

WORK IN PROGRESS, 275, 278, 371.

WORKMEN'S PROFIT-SHARING FUND, 207.

WORKS EXPENSES, 272.

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA



3 0112 068872891